MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES · VOLUME 24

Willehalm

Wolfram von Eschenbach

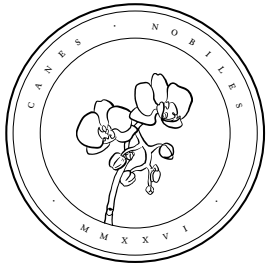
Willehalm

Part One: Books I–V

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

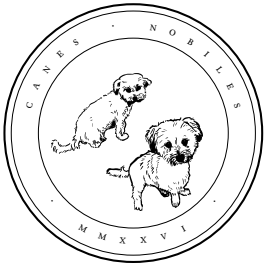


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 24 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Wolfram von Eschenbach, herausgegeben von Karl Lachmann, fünfte Ausgabe (Berlin: Georg Reimer, 1891), Willehalm, Books I–V

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are cited as Lachmann cites them, by his thirty-verse sections and the line within each, in the outer margin. The five books are Lachmann's; the paragraphs are his indented breaks; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

BOOK I

I · The Invocation 9
II · The Disinherited Sons, and Terramer's Fleet 18
III · Terramer's Host Lands at Alischanz 26
IV · The Christian Host 32
V · Halzebier's Charge 40
VI · Pinel's Death, and Vivianz Against Noupatris 48
VII · Vivianz's Wound 56
VIII · Arofel, and the Lament for Gyburc's Love 64
IX · Josweiz, Margot, and Gorhant 71
X · Terramer's Charge, and Willalm's First Lament 79
XI · Bertram at the River 87
XII · Halzebier Takes the Eight Princes 94
XIII · Vivianz Under the Linden, and the Margrave's Council 102
XIV · The Retreat, Poufameiz, and Willalm Alone 110

BOOK II

XV · Willalm Finds Vivianz 121
XVI · The Lament and the Confession 129

BOOK II

(continued)

XVII · Vivianz's Death and the Night Watch 140
XVIII · The Fifteen Kings, and Ehmereiz 149
XIX · Arofel's Death 157
XX · Willalm in Arofel's Armor 167
XXI · Thesereiz 173
XXII · Gyburc at the Gate 181
XXIII · The Siege of Orange 189
XXIV · Gyburc's Prayer 198
XXV · The Decision to Ride for Help 206

BOOK III

XXVI · Terramer's Vow 215
XXVII · Gyburc's Defiance, and the Toll at Orleans 221
XXVIII · Arnalt 233
XXIX · The News of the Court at Munleun 241
XXX · Willalm Shunned at Court 253
XXXI · Wimar the Merchant 261
XXXII · Willalm Enters the Hall 273
XXXIII · Heimrich and Irmschart Arrive 281
XXXIV · Willalm and the Queen 289
XXXV · Heimrich's Promise 296
XXXVI · Alyze 306
XXXVII · Alyze Makes Peace 312

BOOK IV

XXXVIII · The Queen Repents 323
XXXIX · The Queen's Lament 331

BOOK IV

(continued)

XL · The Brothers' Vows 337
XLI · The Feast 344
XLII · The Plea Before the King 352
XLIII · The Muster 363
XLIV · Rennewart 371
XLV · Willalm Asks for Rennewart 378
XLVI · The Pole 386
XLVII · The March from Munleun 392
XLVIII · The Shield in the Fire 401
XLIX · The King's Charge to the Princes 408
L · Rennewart Takes Leave of Alyze 419

BOOK V

LI · Gyburc and Terramer 425
LII · The Heathens Withdraw 436
LIII · The Relief of Orange 442
LIV · Willalm Returns 450
LV · The French Arrive 457
LVI · The Kinsmen Arrive 465
LVII · Heimrich the Schetis 473
LVIII · The Princes Invited to Glorjet 480
LIX · Heimrich's Greeting 490
LX · Gyburc's Dead Kinsmen 499
LXI · The Captive Princes 506
LXII · Heimrich Seats the Princes 512
LXIII · The Feast at Glorjet 519

BOOK I

The Invocation

I

The poet prays to the Trinity, who rules stars and elements and knows the powers of stones and herbs, and confesses he has no book learning. He asks for wisdom to praise a knight who never forgot God, and prays to that knight, now Saint Willehalm, for protection. Landgrave Herman of Thuringia brought him the tale; in French its hero is Count Gwillams de Orangis. Wolfram names himself, recalls that some praised his Parzival and others scorned it, and vows to tell this tale.

Âne valsch du reiner, 1,1
Without falseness thou pure-one,

du drî unt doch einer,
thou three and yet one,

schepfære über alle geschaft,
creator over all creation,

âne urhap dîn stætiu kraft
without beginning thy steadfast power

ân ende ouch belîbet. 1,5
without end also remains.

ob diu von mir vertrîbet
if that from me drives-away

gedanc die gar flüstic sint,
thoughts which wholly ruinous are,

sô bistu vater unt bin ich kint.
so art-thou father and am I child.

hôch edel ob aller edelkeit,
high noble above all nobility,

lâ dîner tugende wesen leit, 1,10
let to-thy virtue be grievous,

dâ kêre dîne erbarme zuo,
there turn thy pity to,

swa ich, hêrre, an dir missetuo.
wherever I, lord, against thee misdo.

lâz, hêrre, mich niht übersehen
let, lord, me not overlook

swaz mir sælden ist geschehen,
whatever to-me of-fortune is happened,

1,15 und endelôser wünne.
and of-endless bliss.

dîn kint und dîn künne
thy child and thy kin

bin ich bescheidenlîche,
am I rightly,

ich arm und du vil rîche.
I poor and thou very rich.

dîn mennischeit mir sippe gît
thy humanity to-me kinship gives

1,20 dîner gotheit mich âne strît
of-thy godhead me without dispute

der pâter noster nennet
the pater noster names

zeinem kinde erkennet.
as-a child acknowledges.

sô gît der touf mir einen trôst
so gives the baptism me a comfort

der mich zwîvels hât erlôst:
which me of-doubt has released:

1,25 ich hân gelouphaften sin,
I have believing mind,

daz ich dîn genanne bin:
that I thy namesake am:

wîsheit ob allen listen,
wisdom above all arts,

du bist Krist, sô bin ich kristen.
thou art Christ, so am I Christian.

dîner hœhe und dîner breite,
of-thy height and of-thy breadth,

dîner tiefen antreite
of-thy depth compass

wart nie gezilt anz ende.
was never measured to-the end.

ouch louft in dîner hende
also runs in thy hand

der siben sterne gâhen,
of-the seven stars hastening,

daz sin himel wider vâhen.
that they-the heaven back seize.

luft wazzer fiur und erde
air water fire and earth

wont gar in dînem werde.
dwell wholly in thy worth.

ze dîme gebot ez allez stêt,
at thy command it all stands,

dâ wilt unt zam mit umbe gêt.
where wild and tame with about goes.

ouch hât dîn götlîchiu maht
also has thy divine might

den liehten tac, die trüeben naht
the bright day, the dim night

gezilt und underscheiden
measured and distinguished

mit der sunnen louften beiden.
with the sun's courses both.

niemer wirt, nie wart dîn ebenmâz.
never will-be, never was thy equal.

al der steine kraft, der würze wâz
all of-the stones power, of-the herbs scent

2,15 hâstu bekant unz an daz ort.
hast-thou known until to the end.

der rehten schrift dôn unde wort
of-the right scripture tune and word

dîn geist hât gesterket.
thy spirit has strengthened.

mîn sin dich kreftec merket:
my mind thee mightily marks:

swaz an den buochen stêt geschriben,
whatever in the books stands written,

2,20 des bin ich künstelôs beliben.
of-that am I artless remained.

niht anders ich gelêret bin:
not otherwise I taught am:

wan hân ich kunst, die gît mir sin.
but (if)-have I art, that gives me mind.

diu helfe dîner güete
the help of-thy goodness

sende in mîn gemüete
send into my spirit

2,25 unlôsen sin sô wîse,
guileless mind so wise,

der in dînen namen geprîse
which in thy name may-praise

einen rîter der dîn nie vergaz.
a knight who thee never forgot.

swenn er gediende dînen haz
whenever he earned thy hatred

mit sündehaften dingen,
with sinful things,

dîn erbarme kunde in bringen
thy pity could him bring

an diu werc daz sîn manheit 3,1
to the works that his manhood

dînen hulden wandels was bereit.
to-thy goodwill of-amends was ready.

dîn helfe in dicke brâhte ûz nôt.
thy help him often brought out-of distress.

er liez en wâge iewedern tôt,
he left in balance either death,

der sêle und des lîbes, 3,5
of-the soul and of-the body,

durch minne eines wîbes
for love of-a woman

er dicke herzenôt gewan.
he often heart's-distress gained.

lantgrâf von Dürngen Herman
landgrave of Thuringia Herman

tet mir diz mær von im bekant.
made to-me this tale of him known.

er ist en franzoys genant 3,10
he is in French named

kuns Gwillâms de Orangis.
count Gwillams de Orangis.

ein ieslîch rîter sî gewis,
an each knight be certain,

der sîner helfe in angest gert,
who his help in fear desires,

daz er der niemer wirt entwert,
that he of-it never is denied,

ern sage die selben nôt vor gote. 3,15
unless-he tell the same distress before God.

der unverzagete werde bote
the undaunted worthy messenger

derkennet rîter kumber gar.
he-knows knights' affliction wholly.

er wart selbe dicke harnaschvar.
he became himself often armor-colored.

den stric bekante wol sîn hant,
the cord knew well his hand,

3,20 die den helm ûfz houbet bant
which the helm onto-the head bound

gein sîns verhes koste.
at his life's cost.

er was ein zil der tjoste:
he was a target of-the joust:

bî vînden man in dicke sach.
by enemies one him often saw.

der schilt von arde was sîn dach.
the shield by nature was his roof.

3,25 man hœrt in Francrîche jehen
one hears in France declare

swer sîn geslähte kunde spehen,
whoever his lineage could examine,

daz stüende übr al ir rîche
that should-stand over all their realm

der fürsten kraft gelîche.
of-the princes power alike.

sîne mâge wârn die hœhsten ie.
his kinsmen were the highest ever.

âne den keiser Karlen nie
except the emperor Charles never

4,1 sô werder Franzoys wart erborn:
so worthy Frenchman was born:

dâ für was und ist sîn prîs erkorn.
there before was and is his prize chosen.

du hâst und hetest werdekeit,
thou hast and hadst worthiness,

helfære, dô dîn kiusche erstreit
helper, when thy chastity won

mit diemuot vor der hœhsten hant
with humility before the highest hand

daz si dir helfe tet erkant.
that it to-thee help made known.

helfære, hilf in unde ouch mir,
helper, help him and also me,

die helfe wol getrûwent dir,
who for-help well trust thee,

sît uns diu wâren mære
since to-us the true tidings

sagent daz du fürste wære
say that thou prince wast

hien erde: als bist ouch dort.
here-on earth: so art also there.

dîn güete enphâhe mîniu wort,
thy goodness receive my words,

hêrre sanct Willehalm.
lord saint Willehalm.

mîns sündehaften mundes galm
my sinful mouth's cry

dîn heilikeit an schrîet:
thy holiness on cries:

sît daz du bist gefrîet
since that thou art freed

vor allen hellebanden,
from all hell-bonds,

so bevoget ouch mich vor schanden.
so protect also me from disgrace.

ich Wolfram von Eschenbach,
I Wolfram von Eschenbach,

4,20 swaz ich von Parzivâl gesprach,
whatever I of Parzival spoke,

des sîn âventiur mich wîste,
of-that his adventure me directed,

etslîch man daz prîste:
some man that praised:

ir was ouch vil, diez smæhten
of-them was also many, who-it reviled

und baz ir rede wæhten.
and better their speech adorned.

4,25 gan mir got sô vil der tage,
(if)-grants me God so many of-the days,

sô sag ich mîne und ander klage,
so tell I my and other lament,

der mit triwen pflac wîp unde man
of-which with faithfulness cared woman and man

sît Jêsus in den Jordân
since Jesus in the Jordan

durch toufe wart gestôzen.
for baptism was thrust.

unsanfte mac genôzen
hardly may equal

5,1 diutscher rede decheine
German speech any

dirre diech nu meine,
to-this which-I now mean,

ir letze und ir beginnen.
its end and its beginning.

swer werdekeit wil minnen,
whoever worthiness will love,

der lat dise âventiure
he lets this adventure

in sînem hûs ze fiure:
in his house by fire:

diu vert hie mit den gesten.
it goes here with the guests.

Franzoyser die besten
Frenchmen the best

hânt ir des die volge lân,
have to-it of-that the assent granted,

daz süezer rede wart nie getân
that sweeter speech was never made

mit wirde und ouch mit wârheit.
with dignity and also with truth.

underswanc noch underreit
swerving nor deviation

gevalschte dise rede nie:
falsified this speech never:

des jehent si dort, nu hœrt se ouch hie.
of-that declare they there, now hear it also here.

The Disinherited Sons, and Terramer's Fleet

II

Count Heimrich of Narbonne disinherits his sons in favor of the son of a vassal who died fighting at his side, his godson, and sends them to win their fortune in women's and the emperor Charles's service. One of them, Willalm, won Arabel, who was baptized Gyburc; her husband Tybalt lost wife and land. Her father Terramer, who lamented her baptism to his gods, now crosses the sea with a host beyond counting, with his brother Arofel and the strong Halzebier.

diz mære ist wâr, doch wunderlîch.
this tale is true, yet wondrous.

von Narbôn grâf Heimrîch
of Narbonne count Heimrich

alle sîne süne verstiez,
all his sons cast-out,

daz er in bürg noch huobe liez,
that he to-them castle nor hide left,

noch der erde dechein sîn rîcheit.
nor of-the earth any his wealth.

ein sîn man sô vil bî im gestreit,
a his man so much by him fought,

unz er den lîp bî im verlôs:
until he the life by him lost:

des kint er zeime sune erkôs.
whose child he as-a son chose.

er het ouch den selben knaben
he had also the same boy

durch triwe ûz der toufe erhaben.
for faithfulness out-of the font raised.

er bat sîn süne kêren,
he bade his sons turn,

und selbe ir rîcheit mêren,
and themselves their wealth increase,

in diu lant swâ si möhten:
into the lands wherever they might:

ob si ze dienste iht töhten,
if they for service anything were-worth,

stieze in diu sælde rehtiu zil,
should-thrust to-them the fortune right goal,

si erwurben rîches lônes vil.
they would-win of-rich reward much.

'Welt ir urborn den lîp, 6,1
'(If)-will you earn the body,

hôhen lôn hânt werdiu wîp:
high reward have worthy women:

ir vindet ouch etswâ den man
you find also somewhere the man

der wol dienstes lônen kan
who well service reward can

mit lêhen und mit anderm guote. 6,5
with fief and with other goods.

hin ze wîbn nâch hôhem muote
away to women after high spirit

sult ir die sinne rihten
shall you the senses direct

und an ir helfe phlihten.
and to their help pledge-yourselves.

der keiser Karl hât vil tugent:
the emperor Charles has much virtue:

iur starken lîbe, iur schœne jugent, 6,10
your strong bodies, your fair youth,

die antwurt in sîn gebot.
those deliver into his command.

des muoz in wenden hôhiu nôt,
from-that must him turn high distress,

ern rîche iuch immer mêre:
unless-he enrich you ever more:

sîn hof hât iwer êre.
his court has your honor.

6,15 dem sult ir diens sîn bereit:
to-him shall you of-service be ready:

er erkennet wol iur edelkeit.'
he knows well your nobility.'

diz was sîn wille und des bater:
this was his will and of-that bade-he:

sus schieden si sich von ir vater.
thus parted they themselves from their father.

lât mich iu die helde nennen,
let me to-you the heroes name,

6,20 daz ir geruochet si erkennen.
that you deign them to-know.

daz eine was Gwillâms,
the one was Gwillams,

daz ander Bertrams.
the other Bertrams.

sus was genant sîn dritter sun,
thus was named his third son,

der clâre süeze Buovûn.
the bright sweet Buovun.

6,25 Heimrîch hiez der vierde,
Heimrich was-called the fourth,

des tugent vil lande zierde.
whose virtue many lands adorned.

Arnalt und Bernart
Arnalt and Bernart

die muosen an die selben vart.
they must on the same journey.

der sibende der hiez Gybert:
the seventh he was-called Gybert:

der was ouch höfsch unde wert.
he was also courtly and worthy.

Wie vil si sorgen dolten, 7,1
How much they of-cares suffered,

und wass ouch freude erholten,
and what-they also joy recovered,

und wie ir manlîchiu kunst
and how their manly skill

wîbe minne unde ir herzen gunst
women's love and their hearts' favor

mit ritterschaft bejageten, 7,5
with knighthood won,

und dicke alsô betageten
and often so dawned

daz mans in hôhem prîse sach!
that one-them in high prize saw!

selten senftekeit, grôz ungemach
seldom ease, great discomfort

wart den helden sît bekant.
became to-the heroes later known.

durch prîs si wâren ûz gesant. 7,10
for prize they were out sent.

umb der andern dienst und umb ir varn
about the others' service and about their faring

wil ich nu mîne rede sparn,
will I now my speech spare,

und grîfen an den einen
and grasp at the one

den diu âventiur wil meinen.
whom the adventure will mean.

Willalm der selbe hiez. 7,15
Willalm the same was-called.

ouwê daz man den niht liez
alas that one him not let

bî sîns vater erbe!
by his father's inheritance!

swenn der nu verderbe,
whenever he now perish,

dâ lît doch mêr sünden an
there lies yet more of-sins on

7,20 denne almuosens dort gewan
than of-alms there gained

an sînem toten Heimrîch:
at his godson Heimrich:

ich wæne ez wiget ungelîch.
I think it weighs unequally.

ir habt ouch ê wol vernomen
you have also before well heard

(es endarf iu nu niht mære komen),
(it needs to-you now not tidings come),

7,25 wie daz mit dienste sich gezôch,
how that with service itself came-about,

des manec hôch herze freude vlôch.
of-which many-a high heart joy fled.

Arabeln Willalm erwarp,
Arabel Willalm won,

dar umbe unschuldic volc erstarp.
there for innocent people died.

diu minne im leiste und ê gehiez,
the love to-him performed and law promised,

Gyburc si sich toufen liez.
Gyburc she herself baptize let.

8,1 Waz hers des mit tôde engalt!
What of-host of-it with death paid!

ir man, der künic Tybalt,
her husband, the king Tybalt,

minnen flust an ir klagete:
love's loss in her lamented:

ûz freude in sorge jagete
out-of joy into care drove

mit kraft daz herze sînen lîp.
with force the heart his body.

er klagete êre unde wîp,
he lamented honor and woman,

dar zuo bürge unde lant.
there to castles and land.

sîn klage mit jâmer wart bekant
his lament with misery became known

unz an die ûzern Indîâ.
until to the outer India.

Provenze her unde ouch dâ
Provence hither and also there

gewan sît jâmers künde.
gained later of-misery tidings.

des meres fluot der ünde
the sea's flood of-the waves

mac sô manege niht getragen,
may so many not carry,

als liute drumbe wart erslagen.
as people for-it were slain.

nu wuohs der sorge ir rîcheit,
now grew the care its wealth,

dâ vreude urbor ê was bereit:
where joy's yield before was ready:

diu wart mit rehten jâmers siten
it was with right misery's manner

alsô getrett und überriten:
so trodden and overridden:

von gelücke si daz nâmen,
from luck they that took,

8,20 hânt freude noch den sâmen
have of-joy still the seed

der Franzoyser künne.
the Frenchmen's kin.

der heidenschefte wünne
the heathendom's bliss

ouch von jâmers kraft verdarp.
also from misery's force perished.

der marcgrâf Willalm erwarp
the margrave Willalm won

8,25 des er für hôhe sælde jach:
of-what he for high fortune declared:

swaz dâ enzwischen sît geschach,
whatever there between later happened,

des geswîg ich von in beiden,
of-that keep-silent I of them both,

den getouften und den heiden,
the baptized and the heathens,

und sage des hers überkêr.
and tell of-the host's onslaught.

daz brâhte der künec Terramêr
that brought the king Terramer

9,1 ûf dem mer zeinen stunden
on the sea at-one time

in kieln und in treimunden,
in keels and in dromonds,

in urssiern unde in kocken.
in horse-ships and in cogs.

swer sich daz an wil zocken,
whoever himself that on will pull,

9,5 er habe grœzer her gesehen,
he have greater host seen,

daz ist im selten sît geschehen.
that is to-him seldom since happened.

mâge und man het er gebeten.
kinsmen and men had he summoned.

sîme liebsten got Mahmeten
to-his dearest god Mahmet

und andern goten sînen,
and to-other gods his,

den liez er dicke erschînen
to-them let he often appear

mit opfer mange êre,
with offering many-an honor,

und klagete in ouch vil sêre
and lamented to-them also very sorely

von Arabeln, diu sich Gyburc
of Arabel, who herself Gyburc

nande, und diu mit toufe kurc
named, and who with baptism manifest

was manegen ougen worden
was to-many eyes become

durch kristenlîchen orden.
for Christian order.

diu edel küniginne,
the noble queen,

durch liebes friwendes minne
for dear friend's love

und durch minne von der hœhsten hant
and for love of the highest hand

was kristen leben an ir bekant.
was Christian life in her known.

Terramêr was ir vatr:
Terramer was her father:

Arofeln sînen bruoder batr,
Arofel his brother bade-he,

und den starken Halzebier.
and the strong Halzebier.

die zwêne manec urssier
the two many-a horse-ship

9,25 in sîne helfe brâhten:
into his help brought:

wol si des gedâhten.
well they of-that thought.

Terramer's Host Lands at Alischanz

III

Terramer's host covers mountain and valley as it lands at Alischanz for Tybalt's sake, and the fighting there, rightly named, is called murder rather than knighthood. The poet faults Terramer for hating, without need, the man his daughter chose, a Frenchman any woman might still desire. The heathens' companies spread over the broad field, and the poet says a heart of flint would be moved by what follows, as trumpets and drums sound before the first blow.

Terramêrs rîcheit
Terramer's wealth

was kreftic wît unde breit,
was mighty wide and broad,

und daz ander künge ir krône
and that other kings their crown

durh manneschaft ze lône
for vassalage as reward

10,1 von sîner hende enpfiengen
from his hand received

und dienst gein im begiengen.
and service toward him performed.

die fürsten ûz sîm rîche
the princes out-of his realm

die fuoren krefteclîche,
they went mightily,

den erz gebieten wolde.
to-whom he-it command would.

ouch streich nâch sînem solde
also strode after his pay

vil manec werlîcher man.
very many-a warlike man.

wie manec tûsent er gewan
how many-a thousand he gained

der werden Sarrazîne!
of-the worthy Saracens!

die man hiez die sîne,
those-whom one called the his-ones,

die prüef ich alsus mit der zal:
those reckon I thus with the number:

er bedacte berge unt tal,
he covered mountains and valley,

dô man komen sach den werden
when one come saw the worthy-one

ûz den schiffen ûf die erden
out-of the ships onto the earth

durch den künec Tybalt,
for the king Tybalt,

des manec getoufter man engalt,
of-whom many-a baptized man paid,

ze Alitschanz ûf den plân.
at Alitschanz onto the meadow.

dâ wart sölch ritterschaft getân,
there was such knighthood done,

sol man ir geben rehtez wort,
(if)-shall one to-it give right word,

diu mac für wâr wol heizen mort.
it may for true well be-called murder.

swâ man sluoc ode stach,
wherever one struck or thrust,

swaz ich ê dâ von gesprach,
whatever I before there of spoke,

daz wart nâher wol gelendet
that was nearer well landed

denne mit dem tôde gendet:
than with the death ended:

10,25 diz engiltet niht wan sterben
this pays nothing but dying

und an freuden verderben.
and in joys perishing.

man nam dâ wênic sicherheit,
one took there little surety,

swer den andern überstreit,
whoever the other overcame,

den man doch tiure het erlôst:
whom one yet dearly would-have ransomed:

diz was ze bêder sîte ir trôst,
this was on both sides their comfort,

11,1 niht wan manlîchiu wer.
nothing but manly defense.

des künic Terramêres her
the king Terramer's host

und die Willalms mâge,
and the Willalm's kinsmen,

die liezen vaste en wâge
they let firmly in balance

11,5 beidiu vinden unde flust.
both finding and loss.

dô riet sîn menlîch gelust
then counseled his manly desire

dem werden künege Tybalt
to-the worthy king Tybalt

daz er reit mit gewalt
that he rode with might

nâch minne und nâch dem lande:
after love and after the land:

sîne flust und sîne schande 11,10
his loss and his disgrace

wold er gerne rechen.
would he gladly avenge.

waz mac ich mêr nu sprechen,
what may I more now speak,

wan daz sîn sweher Terramêr
except that his father-in-law Terramer

im brâhte manegen künec hêr,
to-him brought many-a king proud,

rîche und menlîch erkant? 11,15
rich and manly known?

Mahmet und Tervigant
Mahmet and Tervigant

wurden dicke an geschrît,
were often on cried,

ê daz ergienge dirre strît.
before that should-happen this battle.

Terramêr unfuoget,
Terramer misbehaves,

daz in des niht genuoget, 11,20
that him of-that not suffices,

des sîne tohter dûhte vil.
of-what his daughter seemed much.

bescheidenlîch ich sprechen wil,
rightly I speak will,

swen mîn kint ze friwende erkür,
whomever my child as friend should-choose,

ungerne ich den ze friwent verlür.
unwillingly I him as friend would-lose.

11,25 Willalm ehkurneis
Willalm short-nose

was sô wert ein Franzeis,
was so worthy a Frenchman,

des noch bedörfte wol ein wîp,
of-whom still would-need well a woman,

ob si alsô kürlîchen lîp
if she so choice body

durch minne bræhte in ir gebot:
for love should-bring into her command:

sîn sweher hazzet in ân nôt.
his father-in-law hates him without need.

12,1 Ez muoz nu walzen als ez mac:
It must now roll as it may:

etswenne ouch hôhes muotes tac
sometime also high spirit's day

mit freuden künfte sît erschein.
with joy's coming later appeared.

Terramêr wart des enein,
Terramer became of-that agreed,

12,5 ûf Alitschanz er kêrte,
onto Alitschanz he turned,

dâ strît sîn her gelêrte
where battle his host taught

des er nimmer mêr wart vrô.
of-which he never more became glad.

wie tet der wîse man alsô?
how did the wise man so?

si wârn im sippe al gelîche,
they were to-him kin all alike,

Willalm des lobes rîche 12,10
Willalm of-the praise rich

und Tybalt Arabeln man,
and Tybalt Arabel's husband,

durh den er herzesêre gewan
through whom he heart-sore gained

vor jâmer nâch dem bruoder sîn
for misery after the brother his

und mangen werden Sarrazîn
and many-a worthy Saracen

dem tôde ergap ze zinse. 12,15
to-the death gave-up as tribute.

ein herze daz von flinse
a heart which from flint

ime donre gewahsen wære,
in-the thunder grown were,

daz müeten disiu mære.
that would-trouble these tidings.

ûf daz velt Alyschanz
onto the field Alyschanz

kom manec niwer schilt al ganz, 12,20
came many-a new shield all whole,

der dürkel wart von strîte.
which pierced became from battle.

der breite und ouch der wîte
of-the breadth and also of-the width

bedorfte Terramêres her,
needed Terramer's host,

dô si ûz den schiffen von dem mer
when they out-of the ships from the sea

ieslîcher reit zuo sîner schar, 12,25
each rode to his company,

der er durch rîterschaft nam war.
to-which he for knighthood took heed.

ê man sluoc oder stach,
before one struck or thrust,

dâ was von busînen krach
there was of trumpets crash

und ouch von maneger tambûr.
and also of many-a drum.

Gyburge süeze wart in sûr,
Gyburc's sweet became to-them sour,

13,1 den heiden und der kristenheit.
to-the heathens and to-the Christendom.

nu muoz ich guoter liute leit
now must I good people's sorrow

künden mit der wâren sage,
proclaim with the true tale,

an ir urteillîchem tage.
on their judgment day.

The Christian Host

IV

Willalm's host is small, but his kin ride with him: Witschart and Gerart of Blavi, the count palatine Bertram, and bright young Vivianz, beardless and doomed. The poet names Gwigrimanz, the margrave's nephew Mile, Jozeranz, and Huwes of Milan, four now in paradise, and others, twenty thousand in all. The heathens' silk tents outnumber the stars. The margrave exhorts his kin to fight for God and the right, for women's reward on earth, and for the angels' song in heaven.

13,5 ûf Alischanz erzeiget wart
on Alischanz shown was

gein Terramêrs übervart,
against Terramer's crossing,

daz man sach mit manlîcher wer
that one saw with manly defense

des marcgrâven Willalmes her,
of-the margrave Willalm's host,

die hant vol als er mohte hân.
the hand full as he might have.

si hetenz ungerne lân: 13,10
they would-have-it unwillingly left:

ein teil sîns künnes was im komen,
a part of-his kin was to-him come,

und ouch die hêten genomen
and also those had taken

starkiu dienst von sîner hant,
strong services from his hand,

an den er niht wan triwe vant.
in whom he nothing but faithfulness found.

dô reit sînem vanen bî 13,15
then rode his banner by

Witschart und Gêrart von Blavî,
Witschart and Gerart of Blavi,

und der pfalnzgrâve Bertram,
and the count-palatine Bertram,

der nie zageheit genam
who never cowardice took

under brust inz herze sîn
under breast into-the heart his

(daz wart ûf Alitschanz wol schîn); 13,20
(that was on Alitschanz well seen);

und der clâre Vivîans:
and the bright Vivians:

ich wære immer mêr ein gans
I would-be ever more a goose

an wizzenlîchen triuwen,
in knowing faithfulness,

ob mich der niht solde riuwen.
if me he not should rue.

13,25 ouwê daz sîniu jungen jâr
alas that his young years

âne mundes granhâr
without mouth's beard-hair

mit tôde nâmen ende!
with death took end!

von hôher freude ellende
from high joy exiled

wart dar under sîn geslehte:
became there among his lineage:

daz tâten si mit rehte.
that did they with right.

14,1 Ey Heimrîch von Narbôn,
Ah Heimrich of Narbonne,

dîns sunes dienst jâmers lôn
thy son's service misery's reward

durh Gyburge minne enpfienc.
for Gyburc's love received.

swaz si genâde an im begienc,
whatever she grace on him performed,

14,5 diu wart vergolten tiure,
it was repaid dearly,

alsô daz diu gehiure
so that the gracious-one

ouch wîplîcher sorgen pflac.
also of-womanly cares took-care.

ûf erde ein flüsteclîcher tac
on earth a losing day

und himels niuwe sunderglast
and heaven's new special-radiance

14,10 erschein, dô manec werder gast
appeared, when many-a worthy guest

mit engelen in den himel flouc.
with angels into the heaven flew.

ir sælekeit si wênic trouc,
their blessedness them little deceived,

die durh Willalmen striten
who for Willalm fought

und die mit manlîchen siten
and who with manly manners

kômen. lât ir nennen mêr. 14,15
came. let of-them name more.

ist werdekeit von prîse hêr
(if)-is worthiness from prize proud

und ist der prîs diu werdekeit,
and (if)-is the prize the worthiness,

der zweir ist einez wol sô breit,
of-the two is one well so broad,

dâ von gelücke wirdet ganz.
there from luck becomes whole.

der Burgunjoys Gwigrimanz 14,20
the Burgundian Gwigrimanz

und des marcrâven swester kint
and the margrave's sister's child

Myle, die zwên fürsten sint
Myle, the two princes are

ze Oransche komen în.
to Orange come in.

der werden sol noch mêre sîn:
of-the worthy-ones shall still more be:

ich meine den clâren Jozeranz 14,25
I mean the bright Jozeranz

und Hûwesen von Meilanz.
and Huwes of Milan.

die viere heten hie den prîs
the four had here the prize

und sint nu dort en pardîs.
and are now there in paradise.

eyâ Gyburc, süeze wîp,
ah Gyburc, sweet woman,

mit schaden erarnet wart dîn lîp.
with harm earned was thy body.

15,1 Gaudîns der brûne kom ouch dar,
Gaudins the brown came also thither,

und Kyblîns mit dem blanken hâr,
and Kyblins with the white hair,

und ouch von Tolûs Gaudiers,
and also of Toulouse Gaudiers,

Hûnas von Sanctes. ob ir miers
Hunas of Saintes. if you me-it

15,5 geloubt, sô wil ich zieren
believe, so will I adorn

diz mære mit den vieren.
this tale with the four.

die heten ob dem wunsches zil
they had above the wish's goal

der hôhen werdekeit sô vil:
of-the high worthiness so much:

swer prîses dâ dez minre truoc
whoever of-prize there the less bore

15,10 under in, es hete iedoch genuoc
among them, of-it would-have yet enough

von drîn landen al diu diet.
of three lands all the people.

der tac diu wîp von freuden schiet,
the day the women from joys parted,

ob si minne erkanden:
if they love knew:

ich meine die dar sanden
I mean those-who thither sent

ir freuden schilt für riuwe.
their joys' shield for rue.

ist minne wâriu triuwe,
(if)-is love true faithfulness,

so erwarp dâ manges heldes tôt
so won there many-a hero's death

den wîbn dâ heime jâmers nôt.
to-the women there at-home misery's distress.

ich enmac niht gar benennen sie,
I can not wholly name them,

die dem marcrâven hie
who to-the margrave here

kômen werlîche.
came warlike.

der arme und der rîche
the poor and the rich

sint bêde in die zal benant:
are both in the number named:

für zweinzec tûsent si bekant
for twenty thousand they known

wârn, dô si sich scharten,
were, when they themselves ranked,

die heiden wênic sparten.
who heathens little spared.

Provenzâl und Burgunjoys
Provençals and Burgundians

und der rehten Franzoys
and of-the right Frenchmen

het er gehabt gerne mêr,
had he had gladly more,

dô reit der schadehaften kêr
when rode the harmful turn
16,1 der marcgrâve unverzagt.
the margrave undaunted.
sus wart mir von im gesagt,
thus was to-me of him told,
wie er die heiden ligen sach.
how he the heathens lie saw.
under manegem samîtes dach,
under many-a samite's roof,
16,5 under manegem phelle lieht gemâl:
under many-a silk brightly painted:
innerhalp von zindâl
within of sendal
wârn ir hütte und ir gezelt
were their huts and their tents
ze Alitschanz ûf daz velt
at Alitschanz onto the field
geslagen mit seilen sîdîn.
pitched with ropes silken.
16,10 ir banier gâben schîn
their banners gave appearance
von tiuren fremdeclîchen sniten
of costly foreign cuts
nâch der gâmâne siten.
after the gamane's manner.
der schein dâ sölh wunder,
of-them appeared there such wonder,
ach wênc, in kan besunder
ah little, I can separately
16,15 mit zal iz niht bereiten.
with number it not prepare.

ûf des veldes breiten
on the field's breadth

ir gezelt, swenne ich diu prüeven wil,
their tents, whenever I them reckon will,

man mac der sterne niht sô vil
one may of-the stars not so many

gekiesen durh die lüfte.
perceive through the airs.

niht anders ich mich güfte, 16,20
not otherwise I myself boast,

wan des mich d'âventiure mant.
except of-that me the-adventure reminds.

nu wart der heidenschaft bekant
now became to-the heathendom known

daz kœmen die getouften,
that should-come the baptized,

die stuol ze himel kouften.
who seat in heaven bought.

der marcgrâve ellens rîche 16,25
the margrave of-valor rich

mante unverzagetlîche
exhorted undauntedly

ir manheit sîn geslehte
their manhood his lineage

durh got und durh daz rehte,
for God and for the right,

und ir werlîchen sinne
and their warlike senses

durh der zweir slahte minne,
for of-the two kinds love,

ûf erde hie durh wîbe lôn 17,1
on earth here for women's reward

und ze himel durh der engel dôn.
and in heaven for the angels' tune.

Halzebier's Charge

v

Willalm reminds his men that the heathens would rob them of baptism and that they bear the arms of Christ's death, and bids them defend honor and land. Halzebier, king of Falfunde, comes with thirty thousand, his turcopoles drawing their bows; the heathens cry Tervigant, the Christians Monschoy. Many hundreds of heathens fall, their snow-white head-bands no defense against the swords, but heathen clubs batter through Christian helms, and many of the baptized die.

'helde, ir sult gedenken,
'heroes, you shall remember,

und lât uns niht verkrenken
and let us not weaken

die heiden unsern glouben,
the heathens our faith,

die uns des toufes rouben
who us of-the baptism rob

wolden, ob sie möhten.
would, if they might.

nu sehet war zuo wir töhten,
now see where to we were-worth,

ob wir liezen sölhen segen
if we left such blessing

des wir mit dem kriuze pflegen.
of-which we with the cross take-care.

wan sît sich kriuzewîs erbôt,
for since itself crosswise offered,

Jêsus von Nazarêt, dîn tôt,
Jesus of Nazareth, thy death,

dâ von hânt flühteclîchen kêr
there from have fleeing turn

die bœsen geiste immer mêr.
the evil spirits ever more.

helde, ir sult des nemen war, 17,15
heroes, you shall of-that take heed,

ir traget sîns tôdes wâpen gar,
you bear his death's arms wholly,

der uns von helle erlôste:
who us from hell released:

der kumt uns wol ze trôste.
he comes us well as comfort.

nu wert êre unde lant,
now defend honor and land,

daz Apolle und Tervigant 17,20
that Apollo and Tervigant

und der trügehafte Mahmete
and the deceitful Mahmet

uns den touf iht under trete.'
us the baptism not under tread.'

der marcgrâve Willalm
the margrave Willalm

und die getouften hôrten galm
and the baptized heard clamor

von mangen busînen. 17,25
from many trumpets.

nu was mit al den sînen
now was with all the his-ones

ze orse komen, swiez drumbe ergê,
on horse come, however-it for-it go,

der künic von Falfundê,
the king of Falfunde,

der starke küene Halzebier.
the strong bold Halzebier.

manegen stolzen soldier
many-a proud soldier

18,1 unt manegen edelen amazzûr
and many-a noble almansur

er fuorte: die nam untûr,
he led: those took little-worth,

sît si fürsten hiezen,
since they princes were-called,

sô wolden si geniezen
so would they profit

18,5 ir kraft unde ir edelkeit,
their strength and their nobility,

daz in der prîs wære bereit
that to-them the prize were ready

vor ander heres fluot.
before other host's flood.

manec fürste hôh gemuot
many-a prince high spirited

kom dâ mit scharn zuo geriten,
came there with companies to ridden,

18,10 die durch Halzebieren striten.
who for Halzebier fought.

in sîn helfe was benant
into his help was named

drîzec tûsent werlîch erkant,
thirty thousand warlike known,

sarjande und rîterschaft.
sergeants and knighthood.

Halzebier kom mit kraft.
Halzebier came with strength.

an der selben zîte
at the same time

des hebens anme strîte
of-the beginning at-the battle

sîne turkopel pflâgen,
his turcopoles took-care,

die dâ gestreut lâgen.
who there scattered lay.

swie si heten în gezogen
however they had in drawn

mit künste manegen starken bogen,
with skill many-a strong bow,

ir lâzen unde ir ziehen,
their loosing and their drawing,

ir wenken unde ir fliehen
their swerving and their fleeing

wart in gar vergolten,
became to-them wholly repaid,

sît muosen unde solten
since must and should

die getouften were bieten.
the baptized defense offer.

die heiden sich berieten:
the heathens themselves took-counsel:

ir herzeichen wart benant,
their war-cry was named,

si schrîten alle Tervigant.
they cried all Tervigant.

daz was ein ir werder got:
that was a their worthy god:

si leisten gerne sîn gebot.
they performed gladly his command.

Monschoy was der getouften ruof,
Monschoy was the baptized's cry,

die got ze dienste dar geschuof.
whom God for service thither created.

hie der stich, dort der slac:
here the thrust, there the blow:

jener saz, dirre lac.
that-one sat, this-one lay.

die ze bêder sît dâ tohten
those-who on both sides there were-worth

gein strît, die wârn geflohten
toward battle, they were twined

in ein ander sêre.
into one another sorely.

dô gienc ez an die rêre
then went it to the fall

von den orsen ûf die erden.
from the horses onto the earth.

heiden der werden
heathens of-the worthy-ones

lac dâ manec hundert tôt.
lay there many-a hundred dead.

die getouften dolten nôt,
the baptized suffered distress,

ê si die schar durhbrâchen.
before they the company broke-through.

die heiden sich des râchen
the heathens themselves of-that avenged

manlîch und unverzagt.
manly and undaunted.

daz ez mit jâmer wart beklagt
that it with misery was lamented

von den gotes soldieren.
by the God's soldiers.

sold ich si zimieren
should I them adorn

von rîcher kost, als si riten,
of rich cost, as they rode,

die mit den getouften striten, 19,20
who with the baptized fought,

sô mües ich nennen mangiu lant,
so must I name many-a land,

tiure phelle drûz gesant
costly silks there-out-of sent

von wîben durh minne
by women for love

mit spæhlîchem sinne.
with skillful mind.

die heiden heten kursît, 19,25
the heathens had surcoats,

als noch manec friundin gît
as still many-a lady-friend gives

durch gezierde ir âmîse.
for adornment to-her lover.

nâch dem êweclîchem prîse
after the eternal prize

die getouften strebten:
the baptized strove:

die wîle daz si lebten,
the while that they lived,

die heiden schaden dolten 20,1
the heathens harm suffered

und die getouften holten
and the baptized fetched

flust unde kummer.
loss and affliction.

man gesach den liehten summer
one saw the bright summer

in sô maneger varwe nie,
in so many-a color never,

swie vil der meie uns brâhte ie
however much the May to-us brought ever

fremder bluomen underscheit:
of-strange flowers' difference:

manec storje dort geblüemet reit,
many-a troop there flowered rode,

gelîch gevar der heide.
alike colored to-the heath.

nu gedenke ich mir leide,
now remember I to-me grievously,

sol ir got Tervigant
shall their god Tervigant

si ze helle hân benant.
them to hell have named.

si mohten under hundert man
they could among hundred men

einen kûme zîser hân:
one barely in-iron have:

des wart ir lieht anschouwen
of-that became their bright aspect

ungefuoge verhouwen.
monstrously hewn.

si wârn ir lebens milte:
they were of-their life generous:

swâ mans âne schilte
wherever one-them without shields

traf, dâ spürte man diu swert
struck, there felt one the swords

sô, daz manec heiden wert 20,20
so, that many-a heathen worthy

dâ der orse teppech wart.
there the horses' carpet became.

mit swerten was vil ungespart
with swords was very unspared

ir hôh gebende snêvar:
their high head-band snow-colored:

drunde âne harnasch gar
there-under without armor wholly

was dâ manec edel houbet, 20,25
was there many-a noble head,

daz mit tôde wart betoubet.
which with death was deadened.

ouch frumten si mit kiulen
also wrought they with clubs

durh die helme alsölhe biulen,
through the helms such bumps,

dês under der getouften diet
so-that among the baptized people

vil maneger von dem leben schiet.
very many-a-one from the life parted.

Pinel's Death, and Vivianz Against Noupatris

VI

The margrave kills Pinel, son of Kator, and Terramer kills the noble Mile. Halzebier's host is ridden through, but fresh knights come up under Noupatris of Oraste Gentesin, who fights for women's love and bears Amor on his banner. Vivianz, reared by Gyburc, rides against him; their spears pierce shield and man, and Vivianz's blow kills the king.

Pynel fîz Kâtor,
Pynel son Kator,

der ze allen zîten was dâ vor
who at all times was there before

dâ man die poynder stôrte,
where one the charges scattered,

von sîner hant man hôrte
from his hand one heard

manegen ellenthaften slac,
many-a valorous blow,

ê daz der helt tôt belac
before that the hero dead lay

von des marcgrâven hant,
from the margrave's hand,

des allez heidenische lant
of-whom all heathen land

von freuden wart gescheiden.
from joys became parted.

daz was ein werder heiden.
that was a worthy heathen.

der strît wart bêdenthalben sûr.
the battle became on-both-sides sour.

der marcgrâve einen amazzûr
the margrave an almansur

ouch sluoc (der was vil rîche)
also slew (he was very rich)

gâhes rîterlîche.
hastily knightly.

er wolde dannoch sich niht scharn. 21,15
he would still himself not rank.

Terramêr kom gevarn
Terramer came faring

ûf eim orse, hiez Brahâne:
on a horse, was-called Brahane:

dô kêrt er gein dem plâne,
then turned he toward the meadow,

er wolde den buhurt wenden.
he would the buhurt turn.

er vorhte, ez sold in schenden, 21,20
he feared, it should him disgrace,

ob er von strîte kêrte.
if he from battle turned.

sîn manheit in lêrte:
his manhood him taught:

einer schedelîchen tjost er pflac,
a harmful joust he performed,

dâ von der edele Myle lac
there from the noble Myle lay

tôt vor Terramêre, 21,25
dead before Terramer,

den die Franzoyser sêre
whom the Frenchmen sorely

unz an ir ende klagten,
until to their end lamented,

die dâ sorgen vil bejagten.
who there cares much won.

Terramêr reit wider în
Terramer rode back in

zuo dem grôzen ringe sîn.
to the great ring his.

22,1 Dürkel wart dô der heiden schar:
Pierced became then the heathens' company:

zegegen, wider, her unt dar
opposite, back, hither and thither

wart mit manlîchen siten
was with manly manners

Halzebiers her durhriten,
Halzebier's host ridden-through,

22,5 des küenen und des starken.
of-the bold and of-the strong.

man möhte in eine barken
one might into a barque

sô manege banier niht gelegen,
so many banners not lay,

sô die getouften sâhen wegen
as the baptized saw stir

den wint gein in ob heres kraft.
the wind toward them above host's strength.

22,10 dô kom geruowtiu rîterschaft
then came rested knighthood

an der selben zîte
at the same time

gevarn gein dem strîte
faring toward the battle

mit maneger sunderstorje grôz.
with many-a separate-troop great.

die fuort ein man den nie verdrôz
them led a man whom never wearied

strîts noch rîterlîcher tât. 22,15
of-battle nor of-knightly deed.

sîn werdekeit noch volge hât,
his worthiness still following has,

daz er warp um rîterlîchen prîs:
that he strove for knightly prize:

der hiez Nöupatrîs:
he was-called Noupatris:

er het ouch jugent und liehten schîn.
he had also youth and bright appearance.

ze Oraste Gentesîn 22,20
at Oraste Gentesin

truoc er krône: ez was sîn lant.
bore he crown: it was his land.

dar verjagt und dar gesant
thither driven and thither sent

het in der wîbe minne:
had him the women's love:

sîn herze und des sinne
his heart and its senses

ranc nâch wîbe lône. 22,25
wrestled after women's reward.

von rubîn ein krône
of ruby a crown

ûf sînem liehten helme was:
on his bright helm was:

lûter als ein spiegelglas
clear as a mirror-glass

was der helm unverdecket glanz.
was the helm uncovered bright.

gegen dem kom Vivîanz,
against him came Vivianz,

23,1 des marcgrâven swester suon:
the margrave's sister's son:

der kunde ouch werdekeit wol tuon.
he could also worthiness well do.

sus was bewart sîn clâriu jugent:
thus was guarded his bright youth:

dehein ort an sîner tugent
no corner in his virtue

23,5 was ninder mosec noch murc,
was anywhere mossy nor rotten,

wand in diu künegîn Gyburc
for him the queen Gyburc

von kinde zôch und im sô riet
from child reared and to-him so counseled

daz sîn herze nie geschiet
that his heart never parted

von durhliuhtigem prîse.
from shining prize.

23,10 der junge und der wîse
the young and the wise-one

sah gein im stolzlîche komn
saw toward him proudly come

von des tjoste wart vernomn
from whose joust became heard

jâmer unde herzen nôt.
misery and heart's distress.

si wurben bêde umb den tôt.
they strove both for the death.

23,15 ich bin noch einer, swâ manz sagt,
I am still one, wherever one-it says,

der ir tôt mit triwen klagt;
who their death with faithfulness laments;

disen durh prîs und durh den touf;
this-one for prize and for the baptism;

und jenen durh den stæten kouf:
and that-one for the steadfast purchase:

sîn jugent vil prîses gerte,
his youth much of-prize desired,

wan in sîn herze werte 23,20
for him his heart granted

maneger rîterlîchen ger.
of-many-a knightly desire.

sîn schaft was rœrîn ime sper,
his shaft was reedy in-the spear,

und daz ysen scharpf unde breit.
and the iron sharp and broad.

mit volleclîchem poynder reit
with full charge rode

der heiden vor den sînen. 23,25
the heathen before the his-ones.

undr al den Sarrazînen
among all the Saracens

was niender banier alsô guot,
was nowhere banner so good,

als die der künec hôh gemuot
as that-which the king high spirited

in sîner hende fuorte.
in his hand led.

daz ors mit sporn er ruorte,
the horse with spur he touched,

als er tjostieren wolde. 24,1
as he joust would.

von gesteine und von golde
of gem-stones and of gold

was rîchiu kost niht vermiten,
was rich cost not avoided,

in die banier was gesniten
into the banner was cut

Amor der minne zêre,
Amor of-the love to-honor,

mit eime tiuren gêre,
with a costly spear,

durh daz wan er nâh minnen ranc.
for that for he after love wrestled.

daz ors von rabbîne spranc
the horse from gallop sprang

gein dem jungen Franzoys,
toward the young Frenchman,

der ouch manlîch und kurtoys
who also manly and courteous

was und dar zuo hôh gemuot,
was and there to high spirited,

als noch der prîses gerende tuot.
as still the of-prize desiring-one does.

in het durch sippe minne
him had for kinship's love

Gyburc diu küneginne
Gyburc the queen

ouch wol gezimieret.
also well adorned.

die kômen gehurtieret,
they came charging,

mit snellem poynder dar getriben.
with quick charge thither driven.

op diu sper ganz beliben?
whether the spears whole remained?

nein, ir tjost wart sô getân,
no, their joust was so done,

durh die schilde und durh bêde man.
through the shields and through both men.

ietwederm von des andern hant
to-each from the other's hand

wart harnasch und verch zetrant,
was armor and life rent-apart,

und beidiu sper enzwei geriten,
and both spears in-two ridden,

ietweders kraft alsô versniten
each-one's strength so cut

daz es der tôt sîn bürge wart. 24,25
that of-it the death his surety became.

Vivîanz vast ungespart
Vivianz firmly unspared

sluoc den künec durh den gekrônten helm,
struck the king through the crowned helm,

daz beidiu gras und der melm
that both grass and the dust

undr im wart von bluote naz.
under him became from blood wet.

der heiden lebens dô vergaz.
the heathen of-life then forgot.

Vivianz's Wound

VII

Noupatris's spear has driven through Vivianz, and his entrails hang over the saddle; Witschart and Sanson ride to his aid, and he binds the entrails back with the banner and charges on. Halzebier is routed and Noupatris lies dead. Watchmen bring Terramer the news, word goes round that he himself will bear arms, and the kings of Araby and Todjerne, Tybalt and his son Ehmereiz, hasten in with Turpiun of Falturmie, ahead of Poufameiz, Josweiz, Arfiklant, and Turkant.

25,1 Da ergienc ein schädelîch geschiht
There happened a harmful event

und ein jæmerlîchiu angesiht
and a miserable sight

von den sînen die daz sâhen.
for the his-ones who that saw.

si wolten helfe gâhen:
they would to-help hasten:

25,5 ir helfe was ze spâte komn.
their help was too late come.

ungesehen und unvernomn
unseen and unheard

was mangem heiden dâ sîn tôt,
was to-many-a heathen there his death,

der doch sîn verch en wâge bôt
who yet his life in balance offered

durh prîs und durh der wîbe lôn.
for prize and for the women's reward.

25,10 Witschart und Sansôn
Witschart and Sanson

des geslehtes von Blavî,
of-the lineage of Blavi,

die hurten Vivîanse bî
they charged Vivians by

und hulfen im: doch leit er nôt.
and helped him: yet suffered he distress.

Amor der minnen got
Amor the love's god

und des bühse und sîn gêr
and his box and his spear

heten durchvartlîchen kêr
had piercing turn

in der baniere
in the banner

durch in genomen schiere,
through him taken soon,

daz man si rükeshalben sach,
that one them at-the-back saw,

vons küneges hant, der si dâ stach
from-the king's hand, who them there thrust

Vivîans durch den lîp;
Vivians through the body;

des manic man unde wîp
of-which many-a man and woman

gewunnen jâmers leide;
gained of-misery sorrows;

sô daz imz geweide
so that to-him-the entrails

ûz der tjost übern satel hienc.
out-of the joust over-the saddle hung.

der helt die banier dô gevienc
the hero the banner then caught

und gurtz geweide wider în,
and girded-the entrails back in,

als ob in ninder âder sîn
as if to-him nowhere vein his

von deheinem strîte swære:
from any battle weighed:

der junge lobesbære
the young praiseworthy-one

26,1 hurte fürbaz in den strît.
charged further into the battle.

Tybaldes râche und des nît
Tybalt's vengeance and his envy

ist alrêrst um den wurf gespilt.
is only-then for the throw played.

swen noch des schaden niht bevilt,
whomever still of-the harm not wearies,

26,5 der mag in fürbaz vernemen;
he may it further hear;

des guotiu wîp niht darf gezemen,
of-which good women not need befit,

sô sterbenlîcher mære
so deadly tidings

umb ir dienære.
about their servants.

daz was almeistic minnen her,
that was mostly love's host,

26,10 die manlîch ûfes lîbes zer
who manly on-the life's cost

wârn benant für tjostiure:
were named for jousters:

manec heiden vil gehiure
many-a heathen very gracious

was dâ ze vorflüge komn.
was there to vanguard come.

ir aller nam wirt unvernomn
of-them all name becomes unheard

(die brâht ouch Nöupatrîs): 26,15
(them brought also Noupatris):

iedoch die den hœhsten prîs
yet those-who the highest prize

heten und den hœhsten art
had and the highest nature

an der tjoste fürvart,
in the joust's forward-course,

die nenne ich iu für unbetrogen,
them name I to-you as undeceived,

künege unde herzogen 26,20
kings and dukes

und etlîchen amazsûr.
and some almansurs.

ich hân mangen nâchgebûr
I have many-a neighbor

der si niht gar bekande,
who them not wholly would-know,

ob ichs im zwirent nande.
if I-them to-him twice should-name.

von Sêres Eskelabôn, 26,25
of Seres Eskelabon,

der dicke tougenlîchen lôn
who often secret reward

von werder friwendinne enpfienc.
from worthy lady-friend received.

swelhiu genâde an im begienc,
whichever-one grace on him performed,

der was nâch sîner minne wê.
to-her was after his love woe.

sîn bruoder Galafrê
his brother Galafre

27,1 der was noch wîzer denne ein swan.
he was still whiter than a swan.

ob mich diu âventiur des man
if me the adventure of-that reminds

daz ich in müeze prîsen,
that I him must praise,

daz envelschen niht die wîsen.
that falsify not the wise.

27,5 die truogen bêde krône.
they bore both crown.

wir sulen ouch Glorîône
we shall also Glorione

und dem stolzen Faussabrê
and the proud Faussabre

und dem künege Tampastê
and the king Tampaste

und dem herzogen Rubîant
and the duke Rubiant

27,10 benennen, daz der sehser hant
name, that of-the six hand

vil rîterlîcher tjoste reit.
many of-knightly jousts rode.

der rîche Rubîûn dâ streit,
the rich Rubiun there fought,

und der künic Sînagûn,
and the king Synagun,

Halzebiers swester sun,
Halzebier's sister's son,

27,15 dês diu heidenschaft het êre.
of-whom the heathendom had honor.

der hôhen was niht mêre
of-the high-ones was not more

dennoch an die rîter komn.
still on the knights come.

nu het ouch Halzebier genomn
now had also Halzebier taken

tschumpfentiur von strîtes nôt:
discomfiture from battle's distress:

sîner drîzec tûsent was dâ tôt 27,20
of-his thirty thousand was there dead

wol diu zwei teil belegen.
well the two parts laid-low.

die getouften muosen pflegen
the baptized must take-care

daz si begunden niwer wer
that they began new defense

gein Nöupatrîses her,
against Noupatris's host,

der selbe sehste künege was. 27,25
who himself sixth king was.

durch minne unminne in ûfez gras
for love unlove him onto-the grass

valt, ein tjost unde ein slac:
felled, a joust and a blow:

vor Vivîanz er tôt belac,
before Vivianz he dead lay,

dem jungen Franzeise.
the young Frenchman.

dô breite sich diu reise,
then spread itself the journey,

niht von flühteclîcher jage: 28,1
not from fleeing chase:

zwêne wartman mit sage
two watchmen with report

brâhten Terramêr diu mære,
brought Terramer the tidings,

daz entschumpfieret wære
that discomfited were

28,5 Halzebier von strîtes nôt,
Halzebier from battle's distress,

und daz belegen wære tôt
and that laid-low were dead

Nöupatrîs der milte,
Noupatris the generous,

und daz der strît sich zilte
and that the battle itself aimed

gein dem her mit manger huorte:
toward the host with many-a charge:

28,10 die der marcgrâve fuorte,
those-whom the margrave led,

die möht ein huot verdecken:
them might a hat cover:

'wir soltens umbestecken
'we should-them stake-around

mit dem zehenden unserr phîle:
with the tenth of-our arrows:

si mugen deheine wîle
they may no while

28,15 vor dem her getûren.'
before the host endure.'

eskelîrn und amazûren
eskeliers and almansurs

unden künegen die dâ houbetman
and-the kings who there captains

wârn, den wart dô kunt getân,
were, to-them became then known made,

man begunde jungn und alten sagen
one began to-young and old to-say

daz selbe wâpen wolde tragen 28,20
that himself arms would bear

Terramêr der zornic gemuot.
Terramer the wrathful spirited.

dô regete sich diu heres fluot.
then stirred itself the host's flood.

von Arâby und von Todjerne
of Araby and of Todjerne

die künege dô gâhten gerne,
the kings then hastened gladly,

Tybalt und Ehmereiz sîn sun; 28,25
Tybalt and Ehmereiz his son;

und der künic Turpîûn:
and the king Turpiun:

des lant hiez Falturmîê.
whose land was-called Falturmie.

die kômn dô an die ritter ê,
they came then on the knights before,

ê der künec Poufameiz
before the king Poufameiz

ode von Amatiste Josweiz;
or of Amatiste Josweiz;

od der künec Arficlant 29,1
or the king Arficlant

und des bruoder Turkant:
and his brother Turkant:

der lant hiez Turkânye.
whose land was-called Turkanye.

ir kunft mange âmye
their coming many-a sweetheart

in Francrîche erweinde, 29,5
in France made-weep,

diu klagende ir triwe erscheinde.
who lamenting her faithfulness showed.

unz ein künec was bereit,
until a king was ready,

innen des der ander streit,
meanwhile that the other fought,

manec sunderrinc mit grôzem her,
many-a separate-ring with great host,

29,10 und die mit manlîcher wer
and those-who with manly defense

harrten, diech iu nante nuo.
waited, whom-I to-you named now.

allrêrst ich nennens grîfe zuo.
only-then I of-naming grasp to.

Arofel, and the Lament for Gyburc's Love

VIII

Arofel of Persia comes with his brother's ten sons, each a king. The poet turns to Gyburc, whose love has brought such loss, rebukes himself, and declares her innocent: she left her name at baptism for him who was born of the Word. Christ's death is the cross on the Christians' armor, and those who suffer for him earn endless reward and the angels' song. The ten young kings ride into the battle, a hundred heathens against each Christian.

Arofel der Persân,
Arofel the Persian,

dem was in manegen landen lân
to-him was in many lands left

29,15 prîs ze muoten und zer tjost.
prize to claim and at-the joust.

er het ouch dâ die hœhsten kost
he had also there the highest cost

von soldiern und von mâgen:
of soldiers and of kinsmen:

an sîme ringe lâgen
at his ring lay

zehen künege, sînes bruoder kint.
ten kings, his brother's children.

der heiden rîterschaft ein wint 29,20
the heathens' knighthood a wind

was, wan die er fuorte.
was, except those-whom he led.

waz man tambûren ruorte
what one drums beat

und busîn erklancte!
and trumpets made-sound!

mit maneger rotte swancte
with many-a troop swung

Terramêrs bruoder her, 29,25
Terramer's brother hither,

Arofel, durh strîtes ger.
Arofel, for battle's desire.

dô kôs man ûfme gevilde
then saw one on-the field

manec zimier wilde,
many-a crest wild,

der diu rîterschaft erdâhte,
which the knighthood devised,

die Arofel brâhte.
which Arofel brought.

Daz was des schult, er mohtez hân. 30,1
That was its cause, he could-it have.

Terramêr het verlân
Terramer had granted

der jungen hôh gemuoten diet,
to-the young high spirited people,

ich mein daz er in underschiet
I mean that he to-them distributed

30,5 sunderrîcheit sunderlant
separate-realms separate-lands

sînen zehen sünen was benant,
to-his ten sons was named,

dâ ieslîcher krône
where each crown

vor sînen fürsten schône
before his princes fairly

truoc mit krefte und mit art.
bore with strength and with nature.

30,10 ieslîcher ûf der hervart
each on the campaign

selbander rîcher künege reit.
with-another rich king rode.

seht ob ir her iht wære breit,
see if their host anything were broad,

die in ir dienste wârn geriten.
who in their service were ridden.

ouch dienden si mit zühte siten
also served they with courtesy's manners

30,15 ir vetern und leisten sîn gebot.
their uncle and performed his command.

er lag ouch in ir dienste tôt,
he lay also in their service dead,

Arofel von Persyâ,
Arofel of Persia,

in des dienste sie dâ
in whose service they there

wâren unde ouch er durch sie.
were and also he for them.

der milte enpfiel sölch helfe nie. 30,20
the generous-one lost such help never.

Arabele Gyburc, ein wîp
Arabel Gyburc, a woman

zwir genant, minne und dîn lîp
twice named, love and thy body

sich nu mit jâmer flihtet:
itself now with misery entwine:

du hâst zem schaden gepflihtet.
thou hast to-the harm pledged.

dîn minne den touf versnîdet: 30,25
thy love the baptism cuts:

des toufes wer ouch niht mîdet,
the baptism's defense also not avoids,

sine snîd von den du bist erborn.
unless-it cut from those-of-whom thou art born.

der wirt ouch drumbe vil verlorn,
of-them becomes also for-it many lost,

ez enwend der in diu herze siht.
it unless-turn he-who into the hearts sees.

mîn herze dir ungünste giht.
my heart to-thee disfavor declares.

War umbe? ich solte ê sprechen 31,1
What for? I should first speak

waz ich wolde rechen:
what I would avenge:

oder war tuon ich mînen sin?
or whither do I my mind?

unschuldic was diu künegin,
innocent was the queen,

diu eteswenne Arabel hiez
who sometime Arabel was-called

und den namen im toufe liez
and the name in-the baptism left

durh den der von dem worte wart.
for him who from the word became.

daz wort vil krefteclîche vart
the word very mightily journey

zer magde fuor (diust immer magt),
to-the maiden went (she-is ever maiden),

diu den gebar, der unverzagt
who him bore, who undaunted

sîn verch durh uns gap in den tôt.
his life for us gave into the death.

swer sich vinden lât durh in in nôt,
whoever himself find lets for him in distress,

der enpfæhetn endelôsen solt:
he receives-the endless pay:

dem sint die singære holt,
to-him are the singers devoted,

der dôn sô hell erklinget.
whose tune so bright resounds.

wol im derz dar zuo bringet,
well to-him who-it there to brings,

daz er sô nâhen muoz gestên
that he so near must stand

daz in der dôn niht sol vergên;
that him the tune not shall pass;

ich mein ze himel der engel klanc:
I mean in heaven the angels' sound:

der ist süezer denne süezer sanc.
that is sweeter than sweet song.

man moht an Willalmes schar
one could on Willalm's company

grôzes jâmers nemen war.
of-great misery take heed.

sîne helfær heten niht vermiten,
his helpers had not avoided,

beidiu geslagen und gesniten
both struck and cut

ûf ir wâpenlîchiu kleit 31,25
on their armorial clothes

was Kristes tôt, den da versneit
was Christ's death, whom there cut

diu heidensch ungeloubic diet.
the heathen unbelieving people.

sîn tôt daz kriuze uns sus beschiet:
his death the cross to-us thus apportioned:

ez ist sîn verh und unser segen:
it is his life and our blessing:

wir sulens gelouphafte'npflegen,
we shall-it believingly-cherish,

sam tâten die getouften dort. 32,1
as did the baptized there.

diu heidenschaft in über bort
the heathendom them over board

an allen orten ündet în.
at all places surges in.

manec rotte in brâhte sölhen pîn,
many-a troop them brought such pain,

daz si bedörften niwer lide. 32,5
that they needed new limbs.

des lîbes tôt, der sêle vride
the body's death, the soul's peace

erwurben Franzoysære dâ.
won Frenchmen there.

Arofel von Persyâ,
Arofel of Persia,

sîns bruoder kint noch umbenant
his brother's children still unnamed

32,10 sint, die man dâ komende vant
are, whom one there coming found

mit rîterlîchem kalopeiz.
with knightly gallop.

Fâbors und Passigweiz,
Fabors and Passigweiz,

Mâlarz und Malatras:
Malarz and Malatras:

Karrîax daz fümfte was:
Karriax the fifth was:

32,15 Glorîax und Utreiz,
Gloriax and Utreiz,

Merabjax und Matreiz:
Merabjax and Matreiz:

dô was daz zehende Morgôwanz,
then was the tenth Morgowanz,

des prîs mit werdekeit was ganz.
whose prize with worthiness was whole.

von rabînes poynderkeit
from gallop's charging

32,20 durh den stoup inz gedrenge reit
through the dust into-the throng rode

gein dem strîte ieslîchez her
toward the battle each host

der künege von über mer.
of-the kings from over sea.

dâ striten Terramêres kint
there fought Terramer's children

sô daz die getouften sint
so that the baptized are

umbehabt an allen sîten. 32,25
surrounded on all sides.

manlîch was doch ir strîten.
manly was yet their fighting.

immer gein einre getouften hant
ever against one baptized hand

was hundert dâ ze wer benant
was hundred there for defense named

von rîterschaft der mæren
of knighthood the famous

und von bogeziehæren.
and of bow-drawers.

Josweiz, Margot, and Gorhant

IX

Josweiz of Amatiste comes with four kings, Pohereiz, Corsaz, Talimon, and Rubual, their horses clad in bright silks. Terramer's own charge follows, nine kingdoms' strength, with Margot of Pozzidant, whose other land lies at the end of the earth, and Gorhant, whose people have horn instead of skin and bay like hounds and fight on foot with steel clubs. Poydjus of Griffane, Terramer's grandson, brings Thesereiz of Collone, who fights for women's greeting, and Poydwiz comes too.

Dô kom in kurzer vriste 33,1
Then came in short time

der künec von Amatiste,
the king of Amatiste,

der hôh gemuote Josweiz.
the high spirited Josweiz.

sîn her dâ bluotigen sweiz
his host there bloody sweat

33,5 vor den Franzoysæren rêrte:
before the Frenchmen shed:

in den strît er dô kêrte
into the battle he then turned

selbe fümfte sînre genôze.
himself fifth of-his peers.

mange rotte grôze
many troops great

Matulases sîn vater dar
Matulases his father thither

33,10 im sande, daz si næmen war
to-him sent, that they should-take heed

sîn, swenn er nâch prîse strite.
of-him, whenever he after prize should-fight.

im erzeigeten dienstlîchen site
to-him showed service-like manner

vier künege und rîterlîch gelâz,
four kings and knightly bearing,

Pohereiz und Corsâz,
Pohereiz and Corsaz,

33,15 Talimôn und Rubûâl.
Talimon and Rubual.

mangen pfelle lieht gemâl
many-a silk brightly painted

ir ors truogen ze kleiden.
their horses bore as clothes.

liuten und an orsen beiden
on-people and on horses both

kôs man phelle tiure.
saw one silks costly.

dem vanken in dem fiure 33,20
to-the spark in the fire

sölher gelpfheit ie gebrast.
such brilliance ever lacked.

dâ kom der sunnen widerglast
there came the sun's reflection

an mangem wâppenrocke.
on many-a tabard.

mîner tohter tocke
my daughter's doll

ist unnâch sô schœne: 33,25
is not-nearly so fair:

dâ mit ich si niht hœne.
there with I her not mock.

diu Josweizes heres kraft
the Josweiz's host's strength

und Arofels rîterschaft
and Arofel's knighthood

und Halzebiers koberen,
and Halzebier's recovery,

des mohten si niht goberen,
of-that could they not recover,

die getouften, an der zît: 34,1
the baptized, at the time:

von ein ander si der strît
from one another them the battle

mit maneger hurte klôzte.
with many-a onset cleft.

der heiden her dô grôzte
the heathens' host then grew

von emerâln und amazsûren. 34,5
with emirs and almansurs.

vil pûken, vil tambûren,
many kettledrums, many drums,

busînen und floytieren.
trumpets and fluting.

nu wold ouch punieren
now would also charge

Terramêr mit krache
Terramer with crash

den getouften zungemache,
to-the baptized for-discomfort,

dâ niun krône rîcheit lac,
where nine crowns' wealth lay,

und dâ manc edel fürste pflac
and where many-a noble prince took-care

daz si dienden Terramêres hant.
that they served Terramer's hand.

ân ander sîniu zinslant
without other his tribute-lands

diende im Happe und Suntîn,
served him Happe and Suntin,

Gorgozâne und Lumpîn.
Gorgozane and Lumpin.

sîn beste lant was Cordes:
his best land was Cordes:

diu zal sînes hordes
the number of-his hoard

was endes mit der schrifte vrî.
was of-end with the writing free.

Poy unde Tenabrî,
Poy and Tenabri,

Semblî und Muntespîr.
Sembli and Muntespir.

manec amazsûr und eskelîr
many-a almansur and eskelier

ûz den niun landen vuor,
out-of the nine lands went,

dâ man ûf ir goten swuor
where one on their gods swore

Terramêrs hervart. 34,25
Terramer's campaign.

wie sîn schar hie sî bewart?
how his company here be guarded?

lât iu benennen sîne kraft.
let to-you name his strength.

diu wîte geselleschaft
the wide fellowship

reit an Terramêres schar:
rode on Terramer's company:

manec swarzer Môr, doch lieht gevar,
many-a black Moor, yet bright colored,

die sich wol zimierten 35,1
who themselves well adorned

ê daz si pungierten.
before that they charged.

der künec Margot von Pozzidant.
the king Margot of Pozzidant.

Orkeise hiez sîn ander lant,
Orkeise was-called his other land,

daz sô nâh der erden orte liget, 35,5
which so near the earth's end lies,

dâ nieman fürbaz bûwes pfliget,
where no-one further of-dwelling takes-care,

und dâ der tagesterne ûf gêt
and where the day-star up goes

sô nâh, swer dâ ze fuoze stêt,
so near, whoever there on foot stands,

in dunct daz er wol reichte dran.
him seems that he well should-reach there-on.

der künec Margot, der rîche man, 35,10
the king Margot, the rich man,

fuort ouch den künec Gorhant.
led also the king Gorhant.

bî der Ganjas was des lant.
by the Ganjas was his land.

des volc was vor und hinden horn,
whose people was before and behind horn,

âne menschlîch stimme erkorn:
without human voice chosen:

35,15 der dôn von ir munde
the tune from their mouth

gal sam die leithunde
bayed like the lead-hounds

oder als ein kelber muoter lüet.
or as a calves' mother lows.

von ir strîte wart gemüet
from their battle became troubled

vil der kristenlîchen wer.
much of-the Christian defense.

35,20 des künec Gorhandes her
the king Gorhant's host

mit stählînen kolben streit
with steel clubs fought

ze fuoz, ir deheiner reit:
on foot, of-them none rode:

si wâren aber sus sô snel,
they were however thus so quick,

die mit dem hürnînen vel,
those with the horn-skinned hide,

35,25 si gevolgten wilde und orssen wol.
they followed game and horses well.

ob ich sô von in sprechen sol,
if I so of them speak shall,

niht in enpfliehen mohte,
nothing them escape could,

wan dem ze fliegen tohte.
except to-what to fly was-fit.

dem künege Margotte
to-the king Margot

man jach daz manec sîn rotte
one declared that many-a his troop

wol striten: ze ors und ze fuoz 36,1
well fought: on horse and on foot

wurbens umbe wîbe gruoz
strove-they for women's greeting

oder sus nâch anderem prîse.
or thus after other prize.

daz tuot ouch noch der wîse.
that does also still the wise-one.

noch was des hers kraft ein wint, 36,5
still was the host's strength a wind,

wan die Terramêrs tohter kint
except those-whom Terramer's daughter's child

fuorte ûf dem plâne,
led on the meadow,

Poydjus von Griffâne:
Poydjus of Griffane:

Trîand und Kaukasas
Triand and Kaukasas

ouch des selben küneges was. 36,10
also of-the same king was.

der fuorte ûf den pungeiz
he led on the charge

den rîchen künec Tesereiz.
the rich king Tesereiz.

der was für hôhen prîs erkant:
he was for high prize known:

Collône hiez sîn lant.
Collone was-called his land.

36,15 der fuort die Arâbeise
he led the Arabians

und die Seciljeise
and the Sicilians

und die von Grickulâne
and those of Grickulane

durh die wilden muntâne,
through the wild mountains,

die von Sôtiers und de Latriseten.
those of Sotiers and the Latrisets.

36,20 umbe wîbe gruoz nâch sînen beten
for women's greeting after his requests

und nâch ir hôhen minne
and after their high love

stuonden Tesereizes sinne.
stood Tesereiz's senses.

dennoch reit Terramêre bî
still rode Terramer by

Poydwîz. des vater Ankî
Poydwiz. whose father Anki

36,25 het in mit kreften dar gesant.
had him with strength thither sent.

dem dienden ouch sô wîtiu lant,
to-him served also so wide lands,

daz er mit manger storje reit.
that he with many-a troop rode.

was Alyschanz daz velt iht breit,
was Alyschanz the field anything broad,

des bedorften wol die sîne:
of-that needed well the his-ones:

gedranc si lêrte pîne.
throng them taught pain.

Terramer's Charge, and Willalm's First Lament

x

Terramer's charge could shake rocks, and many heathens fall to Willalm's sword Schoyuse and his horse Puzzat. The baptized who die win eternal life, and the poet rebukes the devil, host of hell. When Monschoy is no longer heard, Willalm laments that he has repaid Gyburc dearly and prays that God receive his dead. He fights on like the sun through mist, while Vivianz, weakened by his wound, is driven into the river Larkant.

Mit alsô wît gesamenten scharn 37,1
With so widely gathered companies

Terramêr kom gevarn.
Terramer came faring.

wir hœren von sîm poynder sagen,
we hear of his charge say,

es möhten starke velse wagen,
it might strong rocks shake,

dar zuo die würze und der walt. 37,5
there to the herbs and the forest.

sîns hers wart vil dâ tôt gevalt
of-his host was much there dead felled

von dem marcgrâven snel.
by the margrave quick.

des helm was ze Tôtel
whose helm was at Totel

geworht, herte unde wert.
wrought, hard and worthy.

Schoyûse hiez sîn swert, 37,10
Schoyuse was-called his sword,

und sîn ors hiez Puzât,
and his horse was-called Puzat,

dâ manic rîterlîchiu tât
where many-a knightly deed

ûffe wart begangen.
thereon was performed.

Terramêr enpfangen
Terramer received

37,15 wart sus von der getouften diet:
was thus by the baptized people:

si gâben strîtes gegenbiet,
they gave of-battle counter-offer,

ê daz si überkraft betwanc;
before that them superior-strength overcame;

des manger sêle wol gelanc,
of-which many-a soul well succeeded,

dô die getouften sturben,
when the baptized died,

37,20 die mit hôhem prîse erwurben
who with high prize won

den solt des êwegen lebennes.
the pay of-the eternal life.

er phligt noch sölhes gebennes,
he takes-care still of-such giving,

der mennisch ist und wârer got,
who man is and true God,

und der wol freude unde nôt
and who well joy and distress

37,25 enpfüeret unde sendet.
takes-away and sends.

immer unverendet
ever unended

ist sîn helfe wider sie
is his help toward them

die im getrûwent als die.
who him trust as those.

swer durh Willalm erstarp,
whoever for Willalm died,

der sêle sigenunft erwarp,
he of-soul victory won,

ûf dem velde ze Alitschans. 38,1
on the field at Alitschans.

ey tievel, wie duns des verbans,
ah devil, how thou-us of-that begrudged,

und wie du gein uns vihtest
and how thou against us fightest

und unsern schaden tihtest!
and our harm devisest!

wie selten dich der gast verbirt! 38,5
how seldom thee the guest forgoes!

du bist iedoch ein smæher wirt,
thou art yet a contemptible host,

ze allen zîten geste rîch.
at all times of-guests rich.

swenne ich sô grimmeclîch
whenever I so grimly

einen wirt sô sitzen funde,
a host so sitting should-find,

ob mirs diu reise gunde, 38,10
if me-it the journey should-grant,

ich kêrte gerne fürbaz.
I would-turn gladly further.

der in der meide wambe saz,
he-who in the maiden's womb sat,

der wîse mich an bezzer stat,
he direct me to better place,

daz ich den helleclîchen pfat
that I the hellish path

38,15 iht ze lange dürfe bern:
not too long need tread:

des müeze mich sîn güete wern.
of-that may me his goodness grant.

daz ruowen mit der bîte
the resting with the waiting

und den wehsel ame strîte
and the exchange at-the battle

gap Terramêr von Kordes
gave Terramer of Kordes

38,20 der sêle riwe hordes
of-the soul rue's of-hoard

vil ûf ein ander legten,
much on one another laid,

die himels dôn sus wegten,
who heaven's tune thus moved,

daz vil der engel sungen,
that many of-the angels sang,

swenne in diu swert erklungen.
whenever to-them the swords resounded.

38,25 ouch frumte der getouften wîc
also wrought the baptized's fight

daz gein der helle manec stîc
that toward the hell many-a path

wart en strâze wîs gebant.
was in street wise beaten.

diu heidenschaft wart des ermant,
the heathendom became of-that reminded,

dâ von diu helle wart gefreut:
there from the hell was gladdened:

ir lac manc tûsent dâ gestreut.
of-them lay many-a thousand there strewn.

Werlîch man die getouften vant, 39,1
Warlike one the baptized found,

ê daz in ir kraft verswant
before that to-them their strength vanished

von überlast der heiden
from over-burden of-the heathens

wurden si gescheiden
were they parted

under mange unkunde sprâche. 39,5
among many unknown languages.

die Tybaldes râche
those Tybalt's vengeance

der marcgrâve mit schaden sach:
the margrave with harm saw:

riweclîche er dô sprach
ruefully he then spoke

'mîner mâge kraft nu sîget,
'my kinsmen's strength now sinks,

sît sus ist geswîget 39,10
since thus is silenced

Monschoy unser crîe.
Monschoy our cry.

ey Gyburc, süeze âmîe,
ah Gyburc, sweet sweetheart,

wie tiwer ich dich vergolten hân!
how dearly I thee repaid have!

soltez Tybalt hân getân
should-it Tybalt have done

âne Terramêres kraft, 39,15
without Terramer's strength,

unser minneclîch geselleschaft
our lovely fellowship

möhte noch wol lenger wern.
might still well longer last.

nu wil ich niht wan tôdes gern:
now will I nothing but death desire:

unde ist daz mîn ander tôt,
and is that my second death,

39,20 daz ich dich lâze in sölher nôt.'
that I thee leave in such distress.'

er klagt daz minneclîche wîp
he lamented the lovely woman

noch mêre dan sîn selbes lîp
still more than his own body

und dan die flust sîns künnes.
and than the loss of-his kin.

'got, sît du verbünnes
'God, since thou begrudgest

39,25 Gyburge minne mir,'
Gyburc's love to-me,'

sprach er, 'sô nim den trôst ze dir,
spoke he, 'so take the comfort to thee,

swaz der getouften hie bestê,
whatever of-the baptized here endure,

daz der dinc vor dir ergê
that their thing before thee go

âne urteillîchen kumber.
without judgment-like affliction.

des ger ich armer tumber.'
of-that desire I poor fool.'

40,1 Von manger hurte stôze
From many-a onset's thrusts

und von busînen dôze,
and from trumpets' blare,

pûken, tambûren schal,
kettledrums', drums' clamor,

und der heiden ruof sô lût erhal,
and the heathens' cry so loud resounded,

es möhten lewen welf genesen, 40,5
it might lions' whelps recover,

der geburt mit tôde ie muose wesen
whose birth with death ever must be

daz leben in gît ir vater galm.
the life to-them gives their father's roar.

der marcgrâve Willalm,
the margrave Willalm,

ob ich von dem sô sprechen mac,
if I of him so speak may,

gesâht ir ie den nebeltac, 40,10
saw you ever the misty-day,

wie den diu liehte sunne sneit?
how it the bright sun cut?

als durhliuhteclîch er streit
as radiantly he fought

mit der suoche nâch sîm künne.
with the search after his kin.

an der dicke erz machte dünne,
in the thickness he-it made thin,

und rûm ame gedrenge, 40,15
and room at-the throng,

und wît swenn erz vant enge:
and wide whenever he-it found narrow:

sîn swert Schoyûse daz er truoc,
his sword Schoyuse that he bore,

dâ mit er sölhe gazzen sluoc,
there with he such lanes struck,

des manc storje wart zetrant.
of-which many-a troop became rent-apart.

gein dem wazzer Larkant
toward the water Larkant

von dem velde Alyschans
from the field Alyschans

wart der fürste Vivîans
became the prince Vivians

gehurt in diu rivier.
charged into the river.

nu was diu tiwer banier
now was the precious banner

gerucket von den wunden,
pulled from the wounds,

diu drüber was gebunden:
which there-over was bound:

daz kreftelôst in sêre,
that weakened him sorely,

wan daz er durch sîn êre
except that he for his honor

und ouch durch manges heidens tôt
and also for many-a heathen's death

dennoch manlîch were bôt.
still manly defense offered.

Bertram at the River

XI

Vivianz fights Gorhant's horned people at the river Larkant. Count palatine Bertram would turn back, fearing disgrace to the French, but hears the cry Munschoy, sees Vivianz seeking death, and fights Gorhant to free him; five French counts follow, and Vivianz brings Bertram a Turkish horse. Nine Frenchmen hold the ford. An emir and King Rubual urge the heathens on, and Terramer boasts and vows, if Arabel will not turn from Jesus, to see her on a burning hurdle.

Sîn halden was dâ niht ze lanc. 41,1
His halting was there not too long.

ouch hete mangen ahganc
also had many-a outflow

Larkant, daz snellîchen flôz.
Larkant, which quickly flowed.

Vivîans hôrt einen dôz
Vivians heard a din

und sach daz her Gorhandes komen, 41,5
and saw the host of-Gorhant come,

von den sölh stimme wart vernomen,
from whom such voice was heard,

es möhte biben des meres wâc.
of-it might tremble the sea's wave.

Margot Terramêres mâc
Margot Terramer's kinsman

brâht im diz volc hürnîn.
brought him this people horn-skinned.

den Gyburc diu künegîn 41,10
whom Gyburc the queen

ze Termes und ze Oransche zôch,
at Termes and at Orange reared,

Vivîans ungerne flôch:
Vivians unwillingly fled:

des marcgrâven swester kint
the margrave's sister's child

hurte, als ob in fuorte ein wint,
charged, as if him led a wind,

41,15 in daz her des künec Gorhant,
into the host of-the king Gorhant,

daz dâ kom von Indîant.
which there came from India.

ouch was den hürnînen zorn
also was to-the horn-skinned-ones wrath

daz bêde ir verch unde ir horn
that both their life and their horn

von sîner hende wart versniten.
from his hand was cut.

41,20 werlîchen kom geriten
warlike came ridden

der phallenzgrâve Bertram
the count-palatine Bertram

da er den sûwern dôn vernam.
where he the sour tune heard.

er wolde wider wenden:
he would back turn:

wan er vorhte, ez solde schenden
for he feared, it should disgrace

41,25 al die Franzoyse.
all the Frenchmen.

do gehôrt der kurtoyse
then heard the courteous-one

Munschoy creiieren
Munschoy cry

in den rivieren
in the rivers

und sah ouch Vivîansen streben
and saw also Vivians strive

nâch tôde als er niht wolde leben.
after death as he not would live.

Bertram dô strîts ernande. 42,1
Bertram then of-battle dared.

seht ob in des mande
see if him of-that reminded

Munschoy diu krîe:
Munschoy the cry:

oder twancs in âmîe?
or forced-it him sweetheart?

oder müet in Vivîanses nôt? 42,5
or troubles him Vivians's distress?

oder ob sîn manheit gebôt
or whether his manhood commanded

daz er dâ prîs hât bejaget.
that he there prize has won.

hât mirz diu âventiure gesaget,
has me-it the adventure told,

sô sag ich iu durh wen er leit
so tell I to-you for whom he suffered

daz er mit Gorhande streit 42,10
that he with Gorhant fought

und Vivîansen lôste dan.
and Vivians released thence.

der Franzoysære fümf man
of-the Frenchmen five men

(daz wâren grâven rîche)
(those were counts rich)

die kômen rîterlîche.
they came knightly.

die siben muosten kumber tragen. 42,15
the seven must affliction bear.

dem phallenzgrâven wart erslagen
to-the count-palatine was slain

sîn wol gewâppent kastelân,
his well armed castilian,

dar ûf erz hete alsô getân,
there on he-it had so done,

des man im jach ze prîse.
of-what one to-him declared as prize.

42,20 Vivîans der wîse
Vivians the wise

ein türkisch ors im brâhte.
a Turkish horse him brought.

mir ist liep daz ers gedâhte,
to-me is dear that he-it thought,

wand im nie orses dürfter wart.
for to-him never of-horse needier became.

Kyblîn und Witschart
Kyblin and Witschart

42,25 kômen in ze helfe dar gehurt.
came to-them as help thither charged.

in Larkant ûf einem furt
in Larkant on a ford

Franzoyser wâren niune dô,
Frenchmen were nine then,

und wol ze sehen ein ander vrô.
and well to see one another glad.

der strît gedêch widr ûf den plân:
the battle throve back onto the meadow:

dâ wart ez von in guot getân.
there was it by them well done.

43,1 An die heiden rief ein emerâl:
On the heathens called an emir:

als tet der künec Rubûâl.
so did the king Rubual.

‘helfet unseren goten ir rehtes,
‘help our gods to-their right,

daz des Heimrîches geslehtes
that of-the Heimrich’s lineage

immêr iht mege beklîben. 43,5
ever anything may remain.

si wolten gar vertrîben
they would wholly drive-away

unsern prîs mit gewalt.
our prize with might.

nu mac der künic Tybalt
now may the king Tybalt

al sînen goten danken wol:
all his gods thank well:

die Franzoys uns gebent zol, 43,10
the Frenchmen to-us give toll,

den si ungerne möhten lân.
which they unwillingly might leave.

swaz der marcgrâve hât getân
whatever the margrave has done

mit Arabeln der künegin,
with Arabel the queen,

was daz ir freudehaft gewin,
was that her joyful gain,

daz möht ein trûren undervarn. 43,15
that might a mourning undercut.

nu sulen wir niht langer sparn
now shall we not longer spare

die kriegen fruht von Narbôn.
the warlike fruit of Narbonne.

Heimrîches toten lôn,
Heimrich’s godson’s reward,

sol den verzinsen unser lant?
shall that pay-tribute-for our land?

43,20 sô manec werlîchiu hant
so many-a warlike hand

ist komen mit Terramêre:
is come with Terramer:

si megens uns jehen zunêre,
they may-it to-us declare as-dishonor,

komen sis hin genozzen.
(if)-come they-it away profited.

nein, si sint verflozzen
no, they are flooded-over

43,25 unser mark unz in den ort.
our march until into the end.

nu wænent die Franzoyser dort,
now think the Frenchmen there,

daz uns der marcgrâve hie
that us the margrave here

twinge als er uns twanc noch ie.
should-constrain as he us constrained still ever.

sîn ses hât kûme ein esse nuo:
his six has barely an ace now:

wir sîn im komen alze fruo.'
we are to-him come all-too early.'

44,1 Terramêr mit gelpfe sprach,
Terramer with boasting spoke,

do er gein maneger storje sach
when he toward many-a troop saw

die von Francrîche
those of France

strîten rîterlîche.
fight knightly.

44,5 'ir helde von der heidenschaft,
'you heroes of the heathendom,

nu rech et unser altiu kraft,
now avenge just our old strength,

die wir hêten von den goten,
which we had from the gods,

daz sô verre ûz ir geboten
that so far out-of their commands

Arabel diu verfluocht ist komn.
Arabel the accursed is come.

mir und den goten ist benomn 44,10
to-me and to-the gods is taken

der ich ê jach ze kinde,
whom I before declared as child,

von taverne ingesinde:
by tavern household:

von salsen suppierren
by sauces' soupers

sich Tybalt muose vierren
himself Tybalt must remove

von sînem wîbe und alle ir kint, 44,15
from his woman and all her children,

die hie durh rehte râche sint.
who here for right vengeance are.

daz uns die luoderære
that to-us the wretches

alsô smæhiu mære
so contemptible tidings

getorsten ie gesenden!
dared ever to-send!

held, ir sult ernenden: 44,20
hero, you shall dare:

êrt die got und dar nâch mich,
honor the gods and there after me,

daz Tybalt und des gerich
that Tybalt and his vengeance

noh hiut ein sölh phant hie nem,
still today a such pledge here take,

daz Arabeln des gezem,
that Arabel of-that befit,

44,25 ob es geruochet Tervigant,
if it deigns Tervigant,

daz si diu kristenlîchen bant
that she the Christian bonds

und den touf unêre.
and the baptism dishonor.

ê si von Jêsus kêre,
before she from Jesus turn,

ich sols ûf einer hürde ê sehen,
I shall-her on a hurdle first see,

diu fiuric sî: daz muoz geschehen.'
which fiery be: that must happen.'

Halzebier Takes the Eight Princes

XII

Halzebier, avenging his nephew Pinel, sees Vivianz kill seven kings and strikes him from his horse with one blow. He captures Bertram, Gaudin, Gaudiers, Kiblin, Hunas, Gerart, Sanson, and Witschart, judging them Willalm's kin and good pledges for Arabel. Vivianz comes to himself, mounts a wounded horse and rides off with his shield. The poet praises his martyrdom for the faith.

45,1 Der kreftelôse Vivîanz
The strengthless Vivianz

und der grâve Jozeranz,
and the count Jozeranz,

Sansôn und Gêrhart,
Sanson and Gerhart,

Kyblîn und Witschart,
Kyblin and Witschart,

45,5 Berhtram, Gaudîn und Gaudiers,
Berhtram, Gaudin and Gaudiers,

die niune striten dâ Halzibiers
the nine fought where Halzibier's

her sich samelierte,
host itself assembled,

daz von êrst entschumpfierte
which from first discomfited

Willalm ehcurneys,
Willalm short-nose,

dâ Pînel der kurteys, 45,10
where Pinel the courteous,

der sun des künec Kâtor,
the son of-the king Kator,

den lîp verlôs, des prîs embor
the body lost, whose prize aloft

noh hiut in hôher wirde swebt
still today in high dignity floats

dan manges künges der noch lebt.
than many-a king's who still lives.

âne Feirefîz Anschevîn 45,15
except Feirefiz Angevin

unt der bâruc Ahkerîn,
and the baruc Ahkerin,

ob der wâpen solde tragen,
if he arms should bear,

von heiden hôrt ich nie gesagen,
of heathens heard I never say,

der prîs sô wîten wære hel.
whose prize so widely were bright.

daz dritte hiez Pînel. 45,20
the third was-called Pinel.

der drîer tât was sô benant,
of-the three deed was so named,

ob heidenischer wirde erkant.
above heathen dignity known.

nu nâht der kristen ungeval.
now nears the Christians' misfortune.

die heiden berge unde tal
the heathens mountains and valley

45,25 mit here bedacten schiere.
with host covered soon.

man hôrt an Halzibiere,
one heard on Halzibier,

swaz iemen tet, er wold et klagen
whatever anyone did, he would just lament

Pînel der dâ was erslagen.
Pinel who there was slain.

dem künge von Falfundê
to-the king of Falfunde

tet sînes neven sterben wê.
did his nephew's dying woe.

46,1 Halzibier der clâre
Halzibier the bright

mit reidbrûnem hâre
with curly-brown hair

und spanne breit zwischen brân,
and span broad between brows,

swaz sterke heten sehs man,
whatever strength had six men,

46,5 die truoc von Falfundê der künec.
that bore of Falfunde the king.

der was al sîner lide frümec
he was of-all his limbs able

und manlîches herzen,
and of-manly heart,

zer zeswen und zer lerzen
at-the right and at-the left

gereht, ze bêden handen.
skilled, with both hands.

sîn hôher prîs vor schanden
his high prize from disgrace

was mit werdekeit behuot:
was with worthiness guarded:

in wîbe dienste het er muot.
in women's service had he spirit.

nu wart gerochen Pînel
now was avenged Pinel

von Halzibier dem künge snel,
by Halzibier the king quick,

do er an Vivîans ersach
when he on Vivians saw

daz er die schar mit hurte brach,
that he the company with onset broke,

und daz er sluoc Libilûn,
and that he slew Libilun,

Arofels swester sun,
Arofel's sister's son,

Eskelabôn und Galafrê,
Eskelabon and Galafre,

Rubîûn und Tampastê,
Rubiun and Tampaste,

Glorîôn und Morhant.
Glorion and Morhant.

die siben künege sâ zehant
the seven kings straightway at-once

lâgn vor Vivîanze tôt.
lay before Vivianz dead.

Halzebier die grôzen nôt
Halzebier the great distress

mit einem swertes swanke galt,
with a sword's swing paid,

daz Vivîans wart gevalt
that Vivians was felled

hinderz ors ûf d'erde.
behind-the horse onto the-earth.

unversunnen lac der werde,
senseless lay the worthy-one,

der ê was heidenscheft ein schûr:
who before was to-heathendom a storm:

des jach dâ manec amazûr.
of-that declared there many-a almansur.

47,1 Do ez Vivîanz sus ergienc,
When it Vivianz thus befell,

Halzebier dise ahte fürsten vienc,
Halzebier these eight princes caught,

Bertram und Gaudîn,
Bertram and Gaudin,

Gaudiers und Kiblîn,
Gaudiers and Kiblin,

47,5 Hûnas und Gêrart,
Hunas and Gerart,

Sansôn und Witschart.
Sanson and Witschart.

die erkant sîn manlîchiu kraft
them knew his manly strength

wol bî ir guoten rîterschaft.
well by their good knighthood.

in dûhte an ir gebæren,
to-him seemed in their bearing,

47,10 daz si ze mâge wæren
that they as kinsmen were

von art dem marcgrâven benant,
by nature to-the margrave named,

und daz er hete gæbiu pfant
and that he had acceptable pledges

für Arabeln die künegin.
for Arabel the queen.

er hiez dise ähte füeren hin.
he bade these eight lead away.

manec storje dar zuo gâhte, 47,15
many-a troop there to hastened,

der sêre daz versmâhte
which sorely that disdained

durh waz si wâren ze orsse komn.
for what they were on horse come.

von wem der schal dâ wære vernomn,
from whom the clamor there were heard,

des begunde vrâgen manec man:
of-that began to-ask many-a man:

dien westen niht von wem gewan 47,20
they knew not from whom gained

Terramêr sô grôzen schaden,
Terramer so great harm,

daz sîn herze in jâmer muose baden.
that his heart in misery must bathe.

manec storje durh die andern brach.
many-a troop through the others broke.

von treten niht ze guot gemach
from treading not too good comfort

der clâre Vivîans gewan. 47,25
the bright Vivians gained.

bî einer wîle er sich versan,
after a while he himself came-to,

dôs alle enwec kômn gevarn.
when-they all away came faring.

des marcgrâven swester barn
the margrave's sister's child

sach ein wundez ors dâ stên:
saw a wounded horse there stand:

al kreftelôs begund er gên,
all strengthless began he to-go,

48,1 mit unstaten drûf er saz.
with unsteadiness thereon he sat.

sîns schildes er dâ niht vergaz,
of-his shield he there not forgot,

den begund er dannen mit im tragen.
which began he thence with him to-carry.

hulf iz iht, nu sold ich klagen
should-help it anything, now should I lament

48,5 Heimrîches tohter suon.
Heimrich's daughter's son.

ob ich der triwe ir reht wil tuon
if I to-the faithfulness its right will do

und rîterlîchem prîse,
and to-knightly prize,

und ist mîn munt sô wîse,
and (if)-is my mouth so wise,

ich sag daz mære erkenneclîch,
I tell the tale recognizably,

48,10 wie Vivîans der lobes rîch
how Vivians the of-praise rich-one

sich selbe verkouft umb unsern segen,
him self sold for our blessing,

und wie sîn hant ist tôt belegen,
and how his hand is dead laid-low,

diu den gelouben werte
which the faith defended

unz er sîn verch verzerte.
until he his life spent.

der uns ime toufe wart
which to-us in-the baptism became

und Jêsus an der süezen vart
and Jesus at the sweet journey

ime Jordân wart genennet Krist,
in-the Jordan was named Christ,

der nam uns noch bevolhen ist,
that name to-us still entrusted is,

den die der touf bedecket hât:
whom those the baptism covered has:

ein wîse man nimmer lât,
a wise man never leaves,

ern denke an sîne kristenheit;
unless-he think of his Christianity;

dar umbe ouch Vivîanz sô streit,
there for also Vivianz so fought,

unz im der tôt nam sîne jugent.
until to-him the death took his youth.

sîn verch was wurzel sîner tugent:
his life was root of-his virtue:

wær daz geswebt hôch sam sîn prîs,
were that floated high as his prize,

sone möhte er deheinen wîs
so might he no way

mit swerten niht erlanget sîn.
with swords at-all reached be.

mich jâmert durch die sælde mîn
me pains for the fortune mine

und freu mich doch wie er restarp,
and gladden me yet how he died,

der sêle werdekeit erwarp.
who of-soul worthiness won.

Vivianz Under the Linden, and the Margrave's Council

XIII

Vivianz rides to a spring under a linden, and the archangel Cherubin promises he will see his uncle before he dies. Willalm, left with fourteen of his twenty thousand, laments a loss greater than Charles suffered at Roncevaux, and grieves for Gyburc's love and the harm he must now take through her. His men tell him to choose between turning back to die and fleeing, and remind him that Orange has no defenders left.

Der junge helt vor got erkant
The young hero before God known

reit gein dem wazzer Larkant.
rode toward the water Larkant.

niht der sêle veige
not of-the soul doomed

reit nâch der engel zeige
rode after the angel's showing

unkreftic von dem plâne
strengthless from the meadow

gein einer funtâne.
toward a fountain.

ander boume und albernach
other trees and poplar

und eine linden er dâ sach:
and a linden he there saw:

durh den schate kêrt er dar,
for the shade turned he thither,

vor dem tievel nam der sêle war
from the devil took of-the soul heed

der erzengel Kerubîn.
the archangel Cherubin.

Vivîans, der marter dîn
Vivians, of-the martyrdom thine

mag ieslîch rîter manen got,
may each knight remind God,

swenn er sich selben siht in nôt.
whenever he himself self sees in distress.

der junge ûz süezem munde sprach 49,15
the young-one out-of sweet mouth spoke

'tugenthafter got, mîn ungemach
'virtuous God, my discomfort

sî dîner hôhen kraft gegeben,
be to-thy high power given,

daz du mich sô lange lâzest leben
that thou me so long lettest live

unz ich mîn œheim gesehe,
until I my uncle see,

und daz ich des vor im verjehe, 49,20
and that I of-that before him confess,

ob ich ie zuht gein im gebrach,
if I ever courtesy toward him broke,

ob mir sölch untât geschach.'
if to-me such misdeed happened.'

Kerubîn der engel lieht
Cherubin the angel bright

sprach 'nun hab des zwîvel nieht,
spoke 'now have of-that doubt not,

daz vor dînem tôde dich 49,25
that before thy death thee

dîn œheim siht: des wart an mich.'
thy uncle sees: of-that wait on me.'

der engel sâ vor im verswant.
the angel straightway before him vanished.

Vivîans sich sâ zehant
Vivians himself straightway at-once

stracte sô der tôt geligt:
stretched as the dead-one lies:

unkraft het im an gesigt.
weakness had him on conquered.

50,1 Der siuftebære Franzeys
The sigh-laden Frenchman

Willalm ehkurneys
Willalm short-nose

mac nu die flust erkennen
may now the loss recognize

und sich selben nennen
and himself self name

50,5 zem aller schadhaftestem man
as-the of-all most-harmed man

der schiltes ampt ie gewan
who shield's office ever gained

und der ie rîterschaft gepflac.
and who ever knighthood practiced.

sîn beste helfe tôt dâ lac,
his best help dead there lay,

unz an äht die sint gevangen.
until to eight who are captured.

50,10 der strît was sô ergangen:
the battle was so gone:

Munschoy der crye was geswigen,
Munschoy the cry was silenced,

sîniu zweinzec tûsent wârn gedigen
his twenty thousand were dwindled

unz an vierzehen der sîne,
until to fourteen of-the his-ones,

die werlîche pîne
who warlike pain

bî ir hêrren dolten 50,15
by their lord suffered

und niht von im enwolten,
and not from him would,

wan daz se ir verch für in buten.
except that they their life for him offered.

in bluote unde in sweize suten
in blood and in sweat boiled

die helde von der hitze starc.
the heroes from the heat strong.

in eime stoube er sich verbarc, 50,20
in a dust he himself hid,

dâ niwe storje von dem her
where new troop from the host

mit poynder kom; ûz dem mit wer
with charge came; out-of that with defense

selb fünfzehende der markîs
himself fifteenth the marquis

reit, die mit swerten prîs
rode, who with swords prize

heten dâ erhouwen. 50,25
had there hewn.

zelen unde schouwen
to-count and to-look

si sich dô begunden.
they themselves then began.

an den selben stunden
at the same hours

si marcten rehte waz ir was
they marked rightly what of-them was

ûzerhalp des hers an eime gras.
outside the host on a grass.

51,1 Der ie vor schanden was behuot,
He-who ever from disgraces was guarded,

sprach 'freude und hôher muot,
spoke 'joy and high spirit,

ir beidiu sîget mir ze tal.
you both sink to-me to valley.

wie wênec mîn ist an der zal!
how little of-mine is in the number!

51,5 sint mîne mâge tôt belegen,
are my kinsmen dead laid-low,

mit wem sol ich nu freude pflegen?
with whom shall I now joy practice?

dar zuo mîn ellenthafte man.
there to my valorous men.

sô grôzen schaden nie gewan
so great harm never gained

dehein fürste mîn genôz.
any prince my peer.

51,10 nu stên ich freude und helfe blôz.
now stand I of-joy and of-help bare.

ein dinc ich wol sprechen wil:
one thing I well speak will:

dem keiser Karl wær ze vil
to-the emperor Charles were too much

dirre flüste zeinem mâle.
this loss at-one time.

die er tet ze Runzevâle
those-which he did at Roncevaux

51,15 unde in anderen stürmen sînen,
and in other battles his,

diene möhten gein den mînen
those might against the mine

ame schaden niht gewegen.
in-the harm not weigh.

des muoz ich immer jâmers pflegen,
of-that must I ever of-misery take-care,

ob ich hân manlîchen sin.
if I have manly mind.

ey Gyburc, süeziu künigin, 51,20
ah Gyburc, sweet queen,

wie nu mîn herze gît den zins
how now my heart gives the tribute

nâch dîner minne! wan ich bins
after thy love! for I am-it

mit jâmers last vast überladen,
with misery's load firmly overladen,

daz ich den künfteclîchen schaden
that I the future harm

an dir nu muoz enpfâhen. 51,25
in thee now must receive.

swem daz niht wil versmâhen,
to-whomever that not will displease,

der jehe mir mêr noch flüste,
he declare to-me more yet of-loss,

dan herze under brüste
than heart under breast

ie getruoc ze heiner zît,
ever bore at any time,

sît Abel starp durh bruoders nît.'
since Abel died through brother's envy.'

Sînen jâmer sult ir prîsen. 52,1
His misery shall you praise.

er beriet sich mit den wîsen
he took-counsel himself with the wise

und mit den unverzageten,
and with the undaunted,

die sêre mit im klageten,
who sorely with him lamented,

52,5 der den vater, der den bruoder.
this-one the father, that-one the brother.

in wârn diu strîtes muoder
to-them were the battle's bodices

mit swerten alze wît gesniten,
with swords all-too wide cut,

und doch mit manlîchen siten
and yet with manly manners

und unverzagetlîche.
and undauntedly.

52,10 die helde ellens rîche
the heroes of-valor rich

gâben sus ir hêrren rât.
gave thus to-their lord counsel.

'ir sehet wol waz ir helfe hât.
'you see well what your help has.

nu welt der zweier einez
now choose of-the two one

(der gît uns trôst deheinez),
(it gives us comfort none),

52,15 daz wir kêren wider in den tôt,
that we turn back into the death,

oder wir fliehen ûz der nôt.
or we flee out-of the distress.

Gyburc diu küneginne,
Gyburc the queen,

diu mit helflîcher minne
who with helpful love

uns dicke hât gerîchet,
us often has enriched,

52,20 swelch tugent sich ir gelîchet,
whatever virtue itself to-her likens,

der wærn gehêret drîzec lant.
of-that were honored thirty lands.

dehein werlîchiu hant
no warlike hand

ûf Oransche nu beleip:
on Orange now remained:

iwer tugende uns danne treip,
your virtues us thence drove,

und iwer milte unzallîch. 52,25
and your generosity countless.

nu tuot schiere dem gelîch.
now do soon to-that alike.

sweder vart ir kêren welt,
whichever way you turn will,

wir sîn me schaden doch verselt.
we are more harm yet given-over.

sulen uns die heiden niezen,
(if)-shall us the heathens enjoy,

des mag uns wol verdriezen.'
of-that may us well vex.'

The Retreat, Poufameiz, and Willalm Alone

XIV

Willalm turns toward Orange, weeping, but rested heathens under Poufameiz of Inguli attack. He kills Poufameiz, who was richly adorned by his lady, and loses all fourteen of his men. Alone, he kills the brothers Arfiklant and Turkant, Turpiun and Talimon, takes Talimon's horse Marschibeiz and kills it rather than let the heathens have it, and escapes into the mountains.

53,1 Den marcgrâven von hôher art
The margrave of high nature

begunde jâmern dirre vart,
began to-grieve of-this journey,

ob er sich solte scheiden
if he himself should part

von mâgn und mannen beiden,
from kinsmen and men both,

53,5 die dâ tôt wârn belegen.
who there dead were laid-low.

bî liehter sunne gâben regen
by bright sun gave rain

und âne wolkenlîchen wint
and without cloudy wind

sîn ougen, als ob sîniu kint
his eyes, as if his children

wærn al die getouften,
were all the baptized,

53,10 die sîn herze in jâmer souften.
whom his heart in misery sighed-for.

wære im niht wan Vivîanz
were to-him nothing but Vivianz

ûf dem velde Alischanz
on the field Alischanz

beliben, er möhte iedoch wol klagen.
remained, he might yet well lament.

dô kêrter dan (sus hôrt ich sagen)
then turned-he thence (thus heard I say)

nâch sîner manne râte 53,15
after his men's counsel

gein Oransche drâte
toward Orange quickly

bî dem her allez hin.
by the host all away.

nâch schaden dûhte si gewin,
after harm seemed to-them gain,

daz in dâ niemen nâch enreit:
that them there no-one after rode:

vorstrît dâ niemen mit in streit. 53,20
forward-battle there no-one with them fought.

dô wând er dô sîn der frîe.
then thought he then to-be the free-one.

rois Poufameiz von Ingulîe
king Poufameiz of Inguli

was mit eime geruowtem here
was with a rested host

alrêrst dô komen von dem mere,
first-of-all then come from the sea,

der keiner vîent nie gesach. 53,25
which no enemy ever saw.

bî dem tage grôz ungemach
by the day great discomfort

der marcgrâve von den gewan.
the margrave from them gained.

die selben ranten in dô an
the same charged him then on

ûf mangem schœnen kastelân.
on many-a fair castilian.

die getouften riefen sân
the baptized cried straightway

54,1 Monschoy und kêrten dar.
Monschoy and turned thither.

der marcgrâve unverzaget nam war,
the margrave undaunted took heed,

wâ der künec selbe reit:
where the king himself rode:

des schar was lanc unde breit,
whose company was long and broad,

54,5 bestecket in ein ander.
stuck into one another.

mange ander schar dâ vander,
many-a other company there found-he,

der ieslîchiu bî dem tage
of-which each by the day

was dennoch frî vor swertes slage.
was still free from sword's blow.

hurtâ, wie dâ gehurtet wart!
hurta, how there charged was!

54,10 an der engen durchvart
at the narrow passage

des marcgrâven geverten
the margrave's companions

mit scharfen swerten herten
with sharp swords hard

muosen rûm erhouwen.
must room hew.

die heiden mohten schouwen
the heathens could behold

ir schar dâ durchbrechen. 54,15
their company there break-through.

der marcgrâve rechen
the margrave avenge

kunde alsô die sînen nôt:
could so the his-ones' distress:

ir lac vil manger vor im tôt,
of-them lay very many-a-one before him dead,

emerâl und amazsûre.
emir and almansur.

als durch die dicken mûre 54,20
as through the thick wall

brichet der bickel
breaks the pickax

und zimberman den zwickel
and carpenter the wedge

bliwet durch den herten nagel,
drives through the hard nail,

Schoyûs sîn swert, der heiden hagel,
Schoyus his sword, the heathens' hail,

in den ungelouben weiz, 54,25
into the unbelief punished,

unz ûf den künec Poufameiz.
until on the king Poufameiz.

dem nam sîn zimierde den lîp.
from-him took his crest the life.

swaz kost ûf man geleit ie wîp,
whatever cost on man laid ever woman,

diu moht ûf Poufameize sîn;
that could on Poufameiz be;

âne Feyrafîz Anschevîn,
except Feyrafiz Angevin,

55,1 des diu künegîn Secundille pflac,
whom the queen Secundille took-care-of,

an dem sölch zimierde lac,
on whom such crest lay,

daz der künec Poufameiz,
that the king Poufameiz,

Nöupatrîs noch Tesereiz
Noupatris nor Tesereiz

55,5 im niht gelîchen kunden,
to-him not equal could,

swie vil si kost begunden.
however much they cost began.

den künec von Ingulîe
the king of Inguli

ein sîn âmîe
a his sweetheart

gefrumet het ûf Alischans
equipped had on Alischans

55,10 (âventiure, als du mich mans),
(adventure, as thou me remindest),

dês diu minne sol geprîset sîn.
of-which the love shall praised be.

getouft wîp noch heidenîn
baptized woman nor heathen-woman

gebent nu selher koste niht,
give now of-such cost not,

swie vil man wîben dienen siht.
however much one women serve sees.

55,15 der junge clâre süeze gast,
the young bright sweet guest,

sîn zimierde gap den glast,
his crest gave the gleam,

dazz dem marcgrâven d'ougen sneit,
that-it to-the margrave the-eyes cut,

innen des er mit im streit,
meanwhile that he with him fought,

als ez diu sunne tæte.
as it the sun should-do.

sîn wâpenlîch gewæte 55,20
his armorial garment

was gehêrt mit edelen steinen.
was adorned with noble stones.

der heidenschefte weinen
the heathendom's weeping

wuohs an den selben zîten
grew at the same times

von ir zweier strîten:
from of-them two's fighting:

der marcgrâve im nam daz leben. 55,25
the margrave from-him took the life.

sus kund er râche geben
thus could he vengeance give

umb sînen schaden den er kôs.
for his harm which he saw.

in dem strîte er gar verlôs
in the battle he wholly lost

sîne vierzehen man.
his fourteen men.

dô wart er gehurtet dan
then was he charged thence

wider underz êrste her 56,1
back among-the first host

von den komenden von dem mer.
by the coming-ones from the sea.

dâ bestuont in Arfiklant
there attacked him Arfiklant

von Turkânîe und Turkant,
of Turkanie and Turkant,

die gebruoder beide.
the brothers both.

der heidenschefte leide
the heathendom's sorrows

mit jâmers gesellekeit
with misery's companionship

der marcrâve ab in erstreit:
the margrave off them won:

die jungen künege er bêde sluoc.
the young kings he both slew.

mit maneger wunden von in truoc
with many-a wound from them bore

in sîn ors Puzzât.
him his horse Puzzat.

ez wære wise oder sât,
it were meadow or sown-field,

der wart dâ vil nâch im getrett,
of-it was there much after him trodden,

sîn ors durch manne bluot gewett:
his horse through men's blood waded:

der lac dâ vil ûf sîner slâ.
of-them lay there many on his track.

sus streit er her unde dâ
thus fought he hither and there

werlîchen ûf dem plân.
warlike on the meadow.

rois Talimôn von Boctân,
king Talimon of Boctan,

und der künec Turpîuon,
and the king Turpiuon,

mit dem muos er dô strîten tuon,
with him must he then fighting do,

der rîche von Falturmîê.
the rich-one of Falturmie.

wie des dinc gein im gestê?
how his thing toward him stand?

als Pînels fil Kâtor,
as Pinel's son Kator,

den er ze tôde ouch sluoc dâ vor.
whom he to death also slew there before.

mit grôzes poynders hardeiz 56,25
with great charge's hardihood

ûf eim ors, hiez Marschibeiz,
on a horse, was-called Marschibeiz,

Talimôn kom gevarn
Talimon came faring

verre von sînn ahte scharn.
far from his eight companies.

der stach ze volge ein sper enzwei
he thrust in pursuit a spear in-two

ûf den marcrâven, der dennoch schrei
on the margrave, who still cried

Monschoye werlîch: 57,1
Monschoy warlike:

er tet der wer ouch dâ gelîch.
he did of-the defense also there alike.

er warf sich gein dem poynder wider,
he threw himself against the charge back,

Talimôn sluog er tôt dernider.
Talimon struck he dead there-down.

Marschibeiz daz ors er nam, 57,5
Marschibeiz the horse he took,

daz künege wol ze rîten zam:
which kings well to ride befitted:

an sîner hende erz dannen zôch.
on his hand he-it thence drew.

unverzagetlîche er vlôch
undauntedly he fled

vor manegem grôzen tropel.
before many-a great troop.

57,10 diu sper mit krache wâren hel
the spears with crash were loud

ûf in, ze volge unde engegen.
on him, in pursuit and against.

er wart mit stichen und mit slegen
he was with thrusts and with blows

gâlûnt an allen sîten.
seasoned on all sides.

sus muos er strîten.
thus must he fight.

57,15 daz gewunnen ors er liez durch nôt.
the won horse he left for need.

hindern büegen stach erz tôt:
behind-the shoulders stabbed he-it dead:

ern gunds der heidenschefte niht,
he granted-it to-the heathendom not,

als noch en vîentscheft geschiht.
as still in enmity happens.

sus fuorten sin durch einen stoup.
thus led-they him through a dust.

57,20 sîn manheit im urloup
his manhood to-him leave

gap, daz er sich entsagete
gave, that he himself freed

ieslîchem der in jagete.
from-each who him hunted.

dô kêrt er gein den bergen.
then turned he toward the mountains.

den wilden getwergen
for-the wild dwarfs

wær ze stîgen dâ genuoc, 57,25
were to climb there enough,

dâ in sîn ors über truoc.
where him his horse over bore.

seht ob ir keiner sî versniten:
see if of-them any be cut-off:

der marcrâve ist in entriten.
the margrave is from-them ridden-away.

Willalm Finds Vivianz

XV

Halting to look back, Willalm sees the heathens covering Alischanz and reviles them. He promises his tired horse Puzzat fodder at Orange, wipes him down with his surcoat, and leads him to the river, where he finds Vivianz's shield and then Vivianz himself under the linden by the spring. He laments, wishes himself dead, swoons, and when he recovers kneels, unlaces the boy's helmet, and lays his head in his lap.

Er enthielt dem orse und sach hin wider, 58,1
He held-back the horse and looked away back,

dez lant ûf unde nider.
the land up and down.

nu was bedecket berg unt tal
now was covered mountain and valley

und Alyschanz über al
and Alyschanz over all

mit heidenschefte ungezalt, 58,5
with heathendom uncounted,

als ob ûf einen grôzen walt
as if on a great forest

niht wan banier blüeten.
nothing but banners blossomed.

die rotte ein ander müeten,
the troops one another troubled,

die kômen her und dar gehurt,
they came hither and thither charged,

58,10 ûf acker und in mangem furt
on field and in many-a ford

dâ Larkant daz wazzer flôz.
where Larkant the water flowed.

den marcrâven dûhte grôz
to-the margrave seemed great

ir kraft, und er si reht ersach.
their strength, and he them rightly saw.

in sîme zorne er dô sprach
in his wrath he then spoke

58,15 'ir gunêrten Sarrazîn,
'you dishonored Saracens,

ob bêdiu hunt unde swîn
if both dogs and swine

iuch trüegen und dâ zuo diu wîp
you should-bear and there to the women

sus manegen werlîchen lîp,
thus many-a warlike body,

für wâr möht ich wol sprechen doch
for true might I well speak yet

58,20 daz iwer ze vil wær dannoch.'
that of-you too many were still.'

'ouwê,' sprach er, 'Puzzât,
'alas,' spoke he, 'Puzzat,

kundestu nu geben rât,
couldst-thou now give counsel,

war ich kêren möhte!
whither I turn might!

wie mir dîn kraft getöhte,
how to-me thy strength would-avail,

58,25 wær wir an disen stunden
were we at these hours

gesunt und âne wunden,
healthy and without wounds,

wolden mich die heiden jagen,
would me the heathens hunt,

ez möhte etlîches mâg beklagen.
it might some kinsman lament.

nu sî wir bêde unvarende,
now are we both unable-to-fare,

und ich die freude sparende.
and I the joy sparing.

Du maht des wesen sicher, 59,1
Thou mayst of-that be certain,

wicken, habern, kicher,
vetch, oats, chickpeas,

gersten unde lindez heu,
barley and soft hay,

daz ich dich dâ bî wol gefreu,
that I thee there with well gladden,

ob wir wider ze Oransche komen, 59,5
if we back to Orange come,

hânt mirz die heiden niht benomen.
(if)-have me-it the heathens not taken.

ich enhân hie trôstes mêr wan dich:
I have-not here of-comfort more than thee:

dîn snelheit müeze trœsten mich.'
thy quickness may comfort me.'

sîn hâr was im brûn gevar,
his hair was to-him brown colored,

von wîzem schûme drûffe gar 59,10
of white foam thereon wholly

als ez eins winders wære besnît.
as it in-a winter were snowed-on.

der fürste nam sîn kursît,
the prince took his surcoat,

einen pfelle brâht von Trîant:
a silk brought from Triant:

swaz er sweizes ûf dem orse vant,
whatever he of-sweat on the horse found,
59,15 den kund er drabe wol strîchen.
that could he there-off well stroke.
do begunde im müede entwîchen.
then began to-him weariness to-yield.
ez dräste unde grazte,
it snorted and grazed,
von dem kunreiz ez sich mâzte
of the fodder it itself measured
vil unkrefte die ez truoc.
much weakness that it bore.
59,20 nu was gebiten dâ genuoc.
now was waited there enough.
der marcrâve zôch zehant
the margrave drew at-once
gein dem wazzer Larkant
toward the water Larkant
daz ors an sîner hende
the horse on his hand
bî maneger steinwende
by many-a stone-wall
59,25 unz in des wazzers ahganc.
until into the water's outflow.
einen kurzen wec niht ze lanc
a short way not too long
reit er durch daz stûdach,
rode he through the thicket,
unz er vor im ligen sach
until he before him lie saw
des werden Vivîanses schilt.
the worthy Vivians's shield.
ûf dem was strîtes sus gespilt,
on it was of-battle thus played,

hâtschen, kiulen, bogen, swert, 60,1
hatchets, clubs, bows, swords,

mit spern gein dem man tjoste gert,
with spears against whom one joust desires,

zefuort an allen orten.
torn at all places.

der marcrâve die borten
the margrave the borders

erkande, als er geriemet was, 60,5
recognized, as it strapped was,

smârâde und adamas,
emeralds and adamant,

rubîn und krisolte
ruby and chrysolites

drûf verwieret, als si wolte,
thereon set, as she would,

Gyburc diu wîse,
Gyburc the wise,

diu mit kostlîchem prîse 60,10
who with costly prize

sande den jungen Vivîanz
sent the young Vivianz

ûf daz velt Alischanz,
onto the field Alischanz,

des tôt ir herzen ungemach
whose death to-her heart discomfort

gap. der marcrâve ersach
gave. the margrave saw

daz ein brunne unde ein linde 60,15
that a spring and a linden

ob sîner swester kinde
above his sister's child

stuont, dâ er Vivîanzen vant.
stood, where he Vivianz found.

in sîme herzen gar verswant
in his heart wholly vanished

swaz im ze freuden ie geschach.
whatever to-him for joys ever happened.

60,20 mit nazzen ougen er dô sprach
with wet eyes he then spoke

‘ey fürsten art, reiniu fruht,
‘ah princes’ nature, pure fruit,

mîn herze muoz die jâmers suht
my heart must the misery’s sickness

ân freude erzenîe tragen.
without joy’s medicine bear.

wære ich doch mit dir erslagen!
were I but with thee slain!

60,25 sô tæte ich gein der ruowe kêr.
so would-make I toward the rest turn.

jâmer, ich muoz immer mêr
misery, I must ever more

wesen dîns gesindes.
be of-thy household.

daz du mich niht verslindes!
that thou me not swallowest!

ich mein dich, breitiu erde;
I mean thee, broad earth;

daz ich bezîte werde
that I in-time become

61,1 dir gelîch: ich kom von dir.
to-thee alike: I came from thee.

tôt, nu nim dîn teil an mir.
death, now take thy part in me.

swaz ich mit kumber ie geranc
whatever I with affliction ever wrestled

und swaz mich sorge ie getwanc,
and whatever me care ever constrained,

dâ râmt ich jâmers lêre:
there aimed I of-misery's teaching:

nu hân ich sorgen mêre
now have I of-cares more

dan mir in herzen ie gewuohs.
than to-me in heart ever grew.

kund ich nu sliefen sô der fuohs,
could I now slip as the fox,

daz mich belûhte nimmer tac!
that me shone-on never day!

swaz freude in mînem herzen lac,
whatever joy in my heart lay,

diu ist mit tôde drûz gevarn.
that is with death there-out-of fared.

tôt, daz du mich nu kanst sparn!
death, that thou me now canst spare!

ich lebe noch und bin doch tôt.
I live still and am yet dead.

daz sus ungefüegiu nôt
that thus monstrous distress

in mîme herzen kan gewern,
in my heart can last,

und daz mit swerten und mit spern
and that with swords and with spears

mich tôte niht diu heidenschaft!'
me killed not the heathendom!'

von jâmer liez in al sîn kraft.
from misery left him all his strength.

unversunnen underz ors er seic:
senseless beneath-the horse he sank:

sîner klage er dô gesweic.
of-his lament he then fell-silent.

bî einer wîle er sich versan:
after a while he himself came-to:

dô huop sich niwer jâmer an.
then lifted itself new misery on.

über Vivîanzen kniet er dô.
over Vivianz knelt he then.

ich geloube des, daz er unfrô
I believe of-that, that he unglad

61,25 der angesihte wære,
of-the sight were,

und aller freuden lære.
and of-all joys empty.

den verhouwen helm er von im bant:
the hewn helm he from him unbound:

daz wunde houbet er zehant
the wounded head he at-once

legt al weinde in sîne schôz
laid all weeping into his lap

und sprach alsus mit jâmer grôz.
and spoke thus with misery great.

The Lament and the Confession

XVI

Willalm laments Vivianz's beauty and recalls how he knighted him at Termis and how Gyburc reared and equipped him. Vivianz opens his eyes and confesses only that he could never repay Gyburc and his uncle, and that he once vowed at Termis never to flee a Saracen. Willalm blames himself for leading a child into battle.

'Dîn verch was mir sippe. 62,1
'Thy life was to-me kin.

sît Adâmes rippe
since Adam's rib

wart gemachet ze einer magt,
was made into a maiden,

swaz man von dem sâmen sagt,
whatever one of the seed says,

dâ von Eve frühtic wart, 62,5
there from Eve fruitful became,

ir aller tugende an dich gespart
of-them all virtue in thee saved

was, die sider sint erborn.
was, who since are born.

dîn edel herze ûz erkorn
thy noble heart out chosen

was lûter als der sunnen glast.
was clear as the sun's gleam.

hôher prîs wart nie dîn gast. 62,10
high prize became never thy guest.

sölh süeze an dîme lîbe lac:
such sweetness in thy body lay:

des breiten mers salzes smac
of-the broad sea's salt taste

müese al zuckermæzic sîn,
must all sugar-like be,

der dîn ein zêhen würfe drîn.
who of-thee a toe should-throw therein.

62,15 daz muoz mir geben jâmer.
that must to-me give misery.

als pigment und âmer
as spice and amber

dîn süeze wunden smeckent,
thy sweet wounds smell,

die mir daz herze erstreckent
which to-me the heart stretch

daz ez nâch jâmer swillet.
that it with misery swells.

62,20 immer ungestillet
ever unstilled

ist nâch dir mîn siuftic klage
is after thee my sighing lament

unz an den ort al mîner tage.'
until to the end of-all my days.'

'ouwê,' sprach er 'Vivîans,
'alas,' spoke he 'Vivians,

waz du nu stæter sorgen gans
what thou now of-steadfast cares grantest

62,25 Gyburge der künegîn!
to-Gyburc the queen!

als ein vogel sîn vogelîn
as a bird its little-bird

ammet unde brüetet,
nurses and broods,

als het si dich behüetet,
so had she thee guarded,

almeistic an ir arme erzogen.
almost on her arm reared.

nu wirt jâmers umbetrogen
now becomes with-misery encompassed

nâch dir daz vil getriwe wîp. 63,1
after thee the very faithful woman.

mir wart dîn tugenthafter lîp
to-me was thy virtuous body

ze freude an dise werlt erborn:
for joy into this world born:

dâ hân ich siuften für erkorn.
there have I sighing for chosen.

hey Termis mîn palas, 63,5
hey Termis my palace,

wie der von dir gehêret was!
how that by thee adorned was!

mich dûht dîn hôher prîs sô wert:
me seemed thy high prize so worthy:

ich gap hundert knappen swert
I gave hundred squires sword

durh dich, des muoz ich volge hân:
for thee, of-that must I following have:

ich gap zwei hundert kastelân 63,10
I gave two hundred castilians

hundert den gesellen dîn
hundred to-the companions thine

mit harnasch, und diu künegîn
with armor, and the queen

ieslîchem drîer slahte kleit
for-each of-three kinds clothes

ûz ir sunderkamern sneit,
out-of her private-chamber cut,

daz ich der kost nie bevant. 63,15
that I of-the cost never perceived.

von Thasmê und von Tryant
from Thasme and from Tryant

und ouch von Ganfassâsche brâht
and also from Ganfassasche brought

manec tiwer pfelle, des erdâht
many-a precious silk, of-that devised

was dîner massenye
was for-thy household

63,20 (Gyburc mîn âmye
(Gyburc my sweetheart

het dich baz denne ir selber kint);
held thee better than her own child);

brûnez scharlach von Gint,
brown scarlet from Ghent,

daz man heizet brûtlachen,
which one calls bridal-cloth,

daz hiezs iu allen machen;
that bade-she for-you all make;

63,25 daz dritte kleit scharlachen rôt.
the third garment scarlet red.

in dirre wirde bistu tôt.
in this dignity art-thou dead.

wie was dîn schilt gehêret,
how was thy shield adorned,

ir milte dran gemêret,
her generosity thereon increased,

diu gein dir tugende nie verbarc!
who toward thee virtues never hid!

der koste fünf hundert marc.
it cost five hundred marks.

Al diu zimierde dîn 64,1
All the crest thine

was sô, swelch rîcher Sarrazîn
was so, whichever rich Saracen

dir des gelîchen möhte,
to-thee in-that equal might,

der wîbe lôn im töhte.
the women's reward to-him were-fit.

sît man sô tiwer gelten muoz 64,5
since one so dearly pay must

hôhe minne und den werden gruoz,
high love and the worthy greeting,

nu waz hât diu minne an dir verlorn!
now what has the love in thee lost!

du wære in Francrîche erkorn,
thou wert in France chosen,

swâ dich wîbes ougen sâhen,
wherever thee women's eyes saw,

herze unde ir munde jâhen, 64,10
heart and their mouth declared,

dîn blic wære ein meien zît,
thy glance were a May's time,

und dîner clârheit âne strît
and of-thy brightness without dispute

möht wünschen ieslîch frouwe.
might wish each lady.

in lufte noch bî touwe
in air nor by dew

nie gewuohs noch von muoter brust 64,15
never grew nor from mother's breast

wart genomen dran sô strengiu flust
was taken thereon so strong loss

der minne enzucket wære.
which from-love snatched were.

sô nu diz sûre mære
when now this sour tale

freischet mîn geslehte,
learns my lineage,

64,20 daz hôhen muot von rehte
which high spirit by right

truoc (wir wârn geprîset),
bore (we were praised),

sô werdent si gewîset
so become they directed

in die jâmerbæren nôt:
into the miserable distress:

des hilfet in dîn junger tôt.
to-that helps them thy young death.

64,25 waz touc ich nu lebende?
what avail I now living?

der jâmer ist mir gebende
the misery is to-me giving

mit kraft alselhe riuwe,
with strength all-such rue,

diu zaller zît ist niuwe,
which at-all time is new,

swaz nu mîn lîp geweren mac,
whatever now my body last may,

beidiu naht und den tac.'
both night and the day.'

65,1 Mit jâmer er sus panste.
With misery he thus panted.

dô heschte unde ranste
then gasped and struggled

der wunde lîp in sîner schôz:
the wounded body in his lap:

dez herze tet vil manegen stôz,
the heart made very many-a thrust,

wan er mit dem tôde ranc. 65,5
for he with the death wrestled.

diu liehten ougen ûf dô swanc
the bright eyes up then swung

Vivîanz und sach den œheim sîn,
Vivianz and saw the uncle his,

als in der engel Kerubîn
as him the angel Cherubin

trôste, an der selben stat.
comforted, at the same place.

der marcrâve in sprechen bat 65,10
the margrave him speak bade

und frâgt in 'hâstu noh genomn
and asked him 'hast-thou yet taken

dâ mit diu sêle dîn sol komn
there with the soul thine shall come

mit freuden für die Trinitât?
with joy before the Trinity?

spræch du bîhte? gap dir rât
spokest thou confession? gave thee counsel

inder kein getoufter man, 65,15
anywhere any baptized man,

sît ich die flust an dir gewan?'
since I the loss in thee gained?'

mit unkreften Vivîanz
with weakness Vivianz

sprach 'sît ich von Alischanz
spoke 'since I from Alischanz

schiet, in hôrte niht noch sach:
parted, I heard nothing nor saw:

wan Kerubîn der engel sprach, 65,20
except Cherubin the angel spoke,

ich solt dich noch ob mir gesehen.
I should thee still above me see.

hêrre und œheim, ich wil jehen
lord and uncle, I will declare

ûf die vart dar ich kêren muoz.
toward the journey whither I turn must.

ich hân mit sünden manegen gruoz
I have with sins many-a greeting

65,25 und hôhe wirde enpfangen:
and high dignity received:

ez ist alsus ergangen,
it is thus gone,

daz diu küneginne ir prîs
that the queen her prize

an mir erzeigt, und ich sô wîs
in me showed, and I so wise

noh nie wart gein iu beiden,
still never became toward you both,

daz ich kund ûz gescheiden
that I could out distinguish

66,1 dienst der da engegen töhte:
service which there against were-worth:

ich enkunde ouch noch enmöhte,
I could-not also nor might,

ob mîn tûsent wæren.
if of-me thousand were.

mîn wille in den gebæren
my will in the bearing

66,5 was, daz ich triwe gein iu hielt,
was, that I faithfulness toward you held,

die nie kein wanc von mir gespielt.
which never any wavering from me split.

dô ich ze Termis wart ein man
when I at Termis became a man

mit iwerr helfe und ich gewan
with your help and I gained

schildes ampt, und die gesellen mîn,
shield's office, and the companions mine,

waz koste ich dô die künegîn! 66,10
what cost I then the queen!

des wære den keiseren gar genuoc,
of-that were to-the emperors wholly enough,

swaz ir ie krône noch getruoc.
whatever of-them ever crown yet bore.

der küneginne Gyburc
of-the queen Gyburc

ir helfe an mir was wol sô kurc,
her help in me was well so chosen,

die man erkennen mohte, 66,15
which one recognize could,

diu baz ir wirde tohte
which better her dignity befitted

denne mînem armen prîse:
than my poor prize:

ich weiz wol, ist got wîse,
I know well, (if)-is God wise,

er lônt es ir mit güete,
he rewards it to-her with goodness,

hât er sîn alt gemüete. 66,20
(if)-has he his old spirit.

œheim, nu getrûwe ich dir
uncle, now trust I thee

durh sippe die du hâst ze mir,
for kinship which thou hast to me,

du habst si durch mich deste baz.
thou hold her for me the better.

nu wirt des willen nimmer laz,
now become of-the will never slack,

66,25 und denk waz ich ze Termis sprach,
and think what I at Termis spoke,

da'z bêdiu hôrte unde sach
where-it both heard and saw

manec hundert rîter werder diet,
many-a hundred knights of-worthy people,

als mir mîn hôher muot geriet,
as me my high spirit counseled,

in flühe nimmer Sarrazîn:
I should-flee never Saracen:

habe ich mit sünden helfe dîn
(if)-have I with sins help thine

67,1 gedient, daz sî der sêle leit,
served, that be to-the soul sorrow,

und ob ich zagelîchen streit.'
and if I cowardly fought.'

waz möhte der marcrâve tuon,
what might the margrave do,

do der junge, sîner swester suon,
when the young-one, his sister's son,

67,5 sô kleiner schulde dâ gewuoc,
so small guilt there mentioned,

ern het ouch trûrens dô genuoc
unless-he had also of-mourning then enough

(und des in sîner bîhte jach)?
(and of-that in his confession declared)?

da engegen er trûreclîchen sprach
there against he mournfully spoke

'wê mir dîner clârn geburt!
'woe me for-thy bright birth!

67,10 waz wold ich swerts umb dich gegurt?
what would I of-sword around thee girded?

du soltst noch kûme ein sprinzelîn
thou shouldst still barely a little-sparrowhawk

tragen. dîner jugende schîn
bear. thy youth's appearance

was der Franzoyser spiegelglas.
was of-the Frenchmen mirror-glass.

swaz dînes liehtn antlützes was,
whatever of-thy bright countenance was,

dar an gewuohs noch nie kein gran: 67,15
there on grew still never any hair:

war umbe hiez ich dich ein man?
what for called I thee a man?

man solde dich noch vinden
one should thee still find

dâ heim bî andern kinden
there at-home by other children

billîcher dan du hetes getragn
more-fittingly than thou hadst borne

schilt, dar und du bist erslagn. 67,20
shield, there and thou art slain.

ich sol vor gote gelten dich:
I shall before God pay thee:

dich ensluoc hie niemen mêr wan ich.
thee slew here no-one more than I.

dîn tôt sol mîner tumpheit
thy death shall to-my foolishness

füegen alsô frühtec leit,
join so fruitful sorrow,

daz zallen zîten jâmer birt 67,25
that at-all times misery bears

unz mînes lebens ende wirt.
until my life's end becomes.

diu schulde ist von rehte mîn:
the guilt is by right mine:

durch waz fuort ich ein kindelîn
for what led I a little-child

gein starken wîganden
against strong warriors

ûz al der heiden landen?'
out-of all the heathens' lands?'

Vivianz's Death and the Night Watch

XVII

Willalm gives Vivianz the bread blessed at Saint-Germain, and the boy receives it and dies with a scent like burning aloe wood. Willalm carries the body toward the mountains, is attacked, and must let it fall. He returns and watches over it all night, then kisses it and rides at dawn toward the fifteen heathen kings guarding the field.

68,1 Dô sus des marcrâven mâc
When thus the margrave's kinsman

in sîner schôz unkreftic lac,
in his lap strengthless lay,

er sprach hin zim mit herzen klage
he spoke toward him with heart's lament

'hâstu daz alle suntage
'hast-thou that-which all Sundays

68,5 in Francrîche gewîhet wirt?
in France consecrated is?

dehein priester dâ verbirt,
no priest there forgoes,

er ensegn mit gotes kraft ein brôt
unless-he bless with God's power a bread

daz guot ist für der sêle tôt.
which good is against the soul's death.

daz selbe ein appt mir gewan
the same an abbot for-me got

dort vor sancte Germân. 68,10
there before saint Germain.

ze Pârîs daz ampt wart getân:
at Paris the office was done:

in mîner taschen ichz hie hân,
in my pouch I-it here have,

daz enpfâch durch dîner sêle heil:
that receive for thy soul's salvation:

des geleites wirt si geil,
of-the escort becomes she glad,

ob si mit angest für sol gên 68,15
if she with fear before shall go

und ze urteil vor gote stên.'
and to judgment before God stand.'

daz kint sprach 'in hân es niht.
the child spoke 'I have of-it not.

mîn unschuldeclîch vergiht
my innocent confession

sol mir die sêle leiten
shall for-me the soul lead

ûz disen arbeiten, 68,20
out-of these toils,

aldâ si ruowe vindet,
there-where she rest finds,

ob mich der tôt enbindet.
if me the death unbinds.

doch gip mir sîn lîchnamen her,
yet give me his body here,

des mennischeit vons blinden sper
whose humanity from-the blind-one's spear

68,25 starp, dâ diu gotheit genas
died, where the godhead survived

der gesellekeite. Tismas
the companionship. Dismas

der helle nie bekorte:
the hell never tasted:

Jêsus an im wol hôrte
Jesus in him well heard

daz in sîn ruof erkande:
that him his call knew:

der sêle nôt er wande.
the soul's distress he turned-away.

69,1 Nu rüefe ouch ich den selben ruof
Now call also I the same call

hin ze dem der mich geschuof
away to him who me created

und der mir werlîche hant
and who to-me warlike hand

in sîme dienste gap bekant.
in his service gave known.

69,5 küsse mich, verkius gein mir
kiss me, forgive toward me

swaz ich ie schult getruoc gein dir.
whatever I ever guilt bore toward thee.

diu sêl wil hinnen gâhen:
the soul will hence hasten:

nu lâz mich balde enpfâhen
now let me quickly receive

ob du'r ze helfe iht wellest gebn.'
if thou-of-it for help anything wilt give.'

dô erz enpfienc, sîn jungez lebn
when he-it received, his young life

erstarp: sîn bîhte ergienc doch ê.
died: his confession went-forth yet before.

reht als lign alôê
right as wood of-aloes

al die boum mit fiwer wærn enzunt,
all the trees with fire were kindled,

selch wart der smac an der stunt,
such became the scent at the hour,

dâ sich lîp und sêle schiet.
where itself body and soul parted.

sîn hinvart alsus geriet.
his departure thus turned-out.

waz hilfet ob ichz lange sage?
what helps if I-it long tell?

der marcrâve was mit klage
the margrave was with lament

ob sîner swester kinde.
over his sister's child.

des orses zoum diu linde
the horse's bridle the linden

begriffen hete vaste,
caught had firmly,

ein drum von einem aste,
a stub of a branch,

do er drabe was gevallen.
when he there-off was fallen.

nu heten ouch ûz verwallen
now had also out welled

sîn ougen an den stunden
his eyes at the hours

ursprinc daz si funden.
spring that they found.

sîn herze was trucken gar
his heart was dry wholly

und beidiu ougen saffes bar.
and both eyes of-sap bare.

er moht sich dô wol umbe sehen,
he could himself then well around look,

die strâze gein Oransche spehen,
the road toward Orange spy,

70,1 dar in doch sîn herze treip.
thither in yet his heart drove.

unlange er dô beleip.
not-long he then remained.

er dâht an schaden des er pflac,
he thought on harm which he bore,

und an den flüstebæren tac,
and on the losing day,

70,5 wie jâmerlîch im der ergienc.
how miserably to-him it went.

mit armn er dicke umbevienc
with arms he often embraced

den tôten, sîner swester suon.
the dead-one, his sister's son.

mit dem begund er alsus tuon:
with him began he thus to-do:

in huop der küene starke man
him lifted the bold strong man

70,10 für sich ûf daz kastelân.
before himself onto the castilian.

die rehten strâze er gar vermeit,
the right road he wholly avoided,

ûf bî Larkant er reit,
up by Larkant he rode,

gein der montâne er kêrte,
toward the mountains he turned,

als in diu angest lêrte.
as him the fear taught.

iedoch wart er an gerant 70,15
yet was he on charged

von liuten die mir niht bekant
by people who to-me not known

sint. ir was et im ze vil
are. of-them was just for-him too many

sô nâhen gein dem râmes zil.
so near toward the aim's goal.

ieslîcher sîn sper sancte,
each his spear lowered,

der im ze vâre sprancte. 70,20
who to-him for peril sprang.

Vivîanz er nider warf:
Vivianz he down threw:

er tet sô der der were bedarf.
he did as he who of-defense needs.

sus streit der unverzagete,
thus fought the undaunted-one,

unz er sich vor in entsagete:
until he himself from them freed:

ime stûdach sîn vermisset wart. 70,25
in-the thicket of-him missed was.

dô kêrt er an die widervart
then turned he on the return-journey

und reit da er Vivîanzen liez.
and rode where he Vivianz left.

sîn triwe gebôt unde hiez,
his faithfulness commanded and bade,

sîme neven die naht er wachte,
for-his nephew the night he watched,

des sîn herze dicke erkrachte.
of-which his heart often cracked.

71,1 Alsus rang er ob im die naht.
Thus wrestled he over him the night.

dicke wart von im gedâht
often was by him thought

des morgens, sô der tac erschin,
of-the morning, when the day appeared,

ob er in möhte füeren hin,
if he him might lead away,

71,5 oder wie erz an gefienge,
or how he-it on should-begin,

ob anderstunt ergienge
if another-time should-happen

daz er wurde an gerant:
that he should-be on charged:

sô müese ern aber al zehant
so must he-him again all at-once

nider lâzen vallen:
down let fall:

71,10 sô wære der heiden schallen
so would-be the heathens' clamor

unde ir spottes deste mêr.
and their mockery the more.

diz bekande herzesêr
this known heart-sore

twanc in âne mâze.
constrained him without measure.

er dâhte 'ob ich dich lâze
he thought 'if I thee leave

71,15 hinder mir durch vorhte hie,
behind me for fear here,

sus grôz unprîs geschach mir nie.
such great dishonor happened to-me never.

doch muoz ich Puzzâten laden
yet must I Puzzat load

wênic durh der heiden schaden:
little for the heathens' harm:

deste baz ich dan und zuo zin mac.'
the better I thence and to to-them may.'

innen des gienc ûf der tac. 71,20
meanwhile that went up the day.

sînen neven kust er unde reit
his nephew kissed he and rode

da er mit fünfzehen künegen streit.
where he with fifteen kings fought.

die wârn ouch an der wache
they were also on the watch

die naht mit ungemache,
the night with discomfort,

ze hulden Tervigant ir gote 71,25
for goodwill of-Tervigant their god

und ouch von Terramêrs gebote,
and also from Terramer's command,

und bî dem eide gemant.
and by the oath reminded.

des hers fride was benant
of-the host peace was named

benamn ze vâre der kristenheit.
indeed for peril of-the Christendom.

ieslîch künec niwan selbe reit.
each king alone himself rode.

72,1 Die andern gesunden
The other healthy-ones

mit tôten und mit wunden
with dead and with wounded

ze schaffen heten ouch genuoc:
to manage had also enough:

ein ieslîch armer rîter truoc
a each poor knight bore

72,5 hêrrn od mâge ûz dem wal,
lord or kinsmen out-of the slain,

dar umb die künege über al
there for the kings over all

die naht der wache pflâgen
the night of-the watch took-care

unde in harnasch lâgen.
and in armor lay.

eskelîr und amazûre gar,
eskeliers and almansurs wholly,

72,10 der houbtman ieslîcher schar,
the captains of-each company,

manec küen rîche emerâl,
many-a bold rich emir,

der huote pflâgn alumbez wal
of-the guard took-care around-the slain

vome gebirge unz an daz mer,
from-the mountains until to the sea,

ob under dem getouftem her
if among the baptized host

72,15 dannoch iemen wære genesen,
still anyone had survived,

daz er des tôdes müese wesen.
that he of-the death must be.

The Fifteen Kings, and Ehmereiz

XVIII

Fifteen kings break their spears on Willalm. The poet names them: Ehmereiz, Gyburc's son by Tybalt, Akarin of Marroch, Mattahel, Gastable, Tampaste, Goriax and others. Willalm spares only Ehmereiz, for Gyburc's sake, though Ehmereiz reproaches him for taking his mother by magic from the gods and from Tybalt. Seven fall and eight flee. Then he meets Tenebruns and Arofel, Gyburc's uncle, and the poet says his master Veldeke could describe their adornment better than he can.

der marcrâve des morgens fruo
the margrave of-the morning early

reit den fünfzehen künegen zuo.
rode the fifteen kings to.

Ehmereiz von Todjerne
Ehmereiz of Todjerne

in bekant und sah in gerne, 72,20
him knew and saw him gladly,

der werden Gyburge suon.
the worthy Gyburc's son.

er wolde de ersten tjost dâ tuon.
he would the first joust there do.

des enweiz ich niht, ob daz geschach;
of-that know I not, whether that happened;

wan ieslîcher balde brach
for each quickly broke

swaz in sîner hant kom her. 72,25
whatever into his hand came hither.

dâ wurden fünfzehen sper
there were fifteen spears

ûf den marcrâven gestochen,
on the margrave thrust,

ieslîchez gar zebrochen:
each wholly broken:

dâ zors er kûm vor in besaz.
there on-horse he hardly before them stayed.

Schoiûsen er dô niht vergaz,
Schoiuse he then not forgot,

73,1 sîns swerts, dâ mit er mangen swanc
his sword, there with he many-a swing

tet, der durch künege helme erklanc.
did, which through kings' helms resounded.

ir namen unde ir rîche,
their names and their realms,

dâ si gewalteclîche
where they mightily

73,5 krôn vor fürsten hânt getragen,
crown before princes have borne,

die lât iu nennen unde sagen.
them let to-you name and tell.

sît zwuo und sibenzec sprâche sint,
since two and seventy languages are,

er dunket mich der witze ein kint,
he seems to-me of-the wit a child,

swer niht der zungen lât ir lant
who not to-the tongues leaves their land

73,10 dâ von die sprâche sint bekant.
there from the languages are known.

sô man die zungen nennet gar,
when one the tongues names wholly,

ir nement niht zwelve des toufes war:
of-them take not twelve of-the baptism heed:

die andern hânt in heidenschaft
the others have in heathendom

von wîten landen grôze kraft.
from wide lands great strength.

dâ heten dise ouch eteswaz,
there had these also something,

die dem marcrâven zeigten haz.
who to-the margrave showed hatred.

der von Todjerne ist genant,
he-who of Todjerne is named,

Ehmereiz, Tybaldes sun erkant.
Ehmereiz, Tybalt's son known.

sô mac von Marroch Akarîn
so may of Marroch Akarin

mit êren fürsten hêrre sîn,
with honor of-princes lord be,

des bâruckes geslehte,
of-the baruc's lineage,

der mit kristenlîchem rehte
who with Christian right

Gahmureten ze Baldac
Gahmuret at Baldac

bestatt, dâ von man sprechen mac,
buried, there of one speak may,

welch pivilde er im erkôs
what tomb he for-him chose

dâ er den lîp durch in verlôs:
where he the body for him lost:

wie sprach sîn epitafîum!
how spoke his epitaph!

daz was ze jâmers siten frum:
that was in misery's manner excellent:

wie was gehêrt sîns sarkes stat,
how was adorned his coffin's place,

alsô der bâruc selbe bat,
as the baruc himself bade,

von smârât und von rubîn!
of emerald and of ruby!

die rede lâzen wir nu sîn:
the speech let we now be:

ich wil die künege nennen gar.
I will the kings name wholly.

rois Mattahel von Tafar.
king Mattahel of Tafar.

rois Gastablê von Comîs.
king Gastable of Comis.

dô sah der marcrâve wîs,
then saw the margrave wise,

der strît wolt in dâ niht vergên.
the battle would him there not pass.

rois Tampastê von Tabrastên.
king Tampaste of Tabrasten.

rois Goriax von Cordubin:
king Goriax of Cordubin:

der truoc manheit unde sin.
he bore manhood and mind.

rois Haukauus von Nubîâ
king Haukauus of Nubia

streit ouch vil manlîche dâ.
fought also very manly there.

Cursaus von Barberîe,
Cursaus of Barbary,

von untât der frîe.
of misdeed the free-one.

rois Bûr von Siglimessâ,
king Bur of Siglimessa,

und rois Corsublê von Dannjatâ.
and king Corsuble of Dannjata.

rois Corsudê von Saygastîn:
king Corsude of Saygastin:

wênic was dâ sîn gewin.
little was there his gain.

rois Vrabel von Corâsen:
king Vrabel of Corasen:

des helm enpfienc dâ mâsen. 74,20
whose helm received there scars.

rois Haste von Alligues
king Haste of Alligues

vrâgt den marcrâven des,
asked the margrave of-that,

waz er wolde an sînen wec.
what he would on his way.

rois Embrons von Alimec.
king Embrons of Alimec.

rois Joswê von Alahôz. 74,25
king Joswe of Alahoz.

daz bluot in durch die ringe vlôz
the blood to-them through the rings flowed

allen, wan Gyburge suon:
all, except Gyburc's son:

dem enwolt er dâ niht tuon.
to-him would he there not do.

daz enliez er durch in selben niht:
that left he for him self not:

Gyburg diz mære des frides giht,
Gyburg this tale of-the peace declares,

in der geleite er dannen reit: 75,1
in whose escort he thence rode:

der marcrâf niht mit im enstreit.
the margrave not with him fought.

Sîn stiefsun Ehmereiz sprach sân
His stepson Ehmereiz spoke straightway

'ey waz du lasters hâst getân
'ah what thou of-reproach hast done

an mîner muoter al den goten!
to my mother all the gods!

dîn zouber nams ûz ir geboten,
thy magic took-her out-of their commands,

und mînen vater Tybalt.
and my father Tybalt.

dar umbe Termis wirt gevalt
there for Termis becomes felled

und al diu kristenheit durchriten.
and all the Christendom ridden-through.

du hâst ze lange alhie gebiten:
thou hast too long here waited:

mit tôde giltet nu dîn lîp
with death pays now thy body

daz ie sô wîplîchez wîp
that ever so womanly woman

durch dich zebrach unser ê.
for thee broke our law.

daz tuot al mîme geslähte wê.
that does to-all my lineage woe.

ich enschilt ir niht, diu mich gebar,
I scold her not, who me bore,

ob ich der zuht wil nemen war:
if I of-the courtesy will take heed:

doch trag ich immer gein ir haz.
yet bear I ever toward her hatred.

mir stüend diu krône al deste baz,
to-me would-stand the crown all the better,

hetez Arabel niht verworht:
had-it Arabel not forfeited:

daz hât mîn scham sît dicke erforht.' 75,20
that has my shame since often feared.'

dô Ehmereiz Gyburge barn
when Ehmereiz Gyburc's child

sô rîterlîche kom gevarn,
so knightly came faring,

und al sîn wâpenlîchez kleit
and all his armorial garment

nie dehein armuot erleit
never any poverty suffered

(wan ez was tiwer unde lieht), 75,25
(for it was precious and bright),

der marcrâve tet im nieht,
the margrave did to-him nothing,

gein sîner rede er ouch niht sprach:
toward his speech he also not spoke:

swes er von Gyburge jach,
whatever he of Gyburc declared,

daz wart im einen gar vertragen:
that was to-him alone wholly forborne:

die andern wunt unde erslagen
the others wounded and slain

wurden. ir ähte fluhen durch nôt, 76,1
were. of-them eight fled for distress,

siben aldâ belâgen tôt.
seven there lay dead.

Von den reit dô fürbaz
From them rode then further

der marcrâve ûf niwen haz
the margrave onto new hatred

gein zwein künegen hôh gemuot. 76,5
toward two kings high spirited.

daz wâren rîter als guot,
those were knights as good,

gein strîte rehte flinse.
toward battle right flints.

gein eime swærem zinse
toward a heavy tribute

die helde bêde lâgen,
the heroes both lay,

76,10 die maneges prîses pflâgen.
who many-a prize practiced.

der eine von Liwes Nugruns
the one of Liwes Nugruns

der werde künec Tenebruns,
the worthy king Tenebruns,

und Arofel von Persyâ,
and Arofel of Persia,

die lâgn ir hers al eine dâ,
they lay of-their host all alone there,

76,15 der Gyburge veter was.
who Gyburc's uncle was.

ist in dem meien towec gras
(if)-is in the May dewy grass

geblüemet durch den süezen luft,
flowered through the sweet air,

dise zwên durh prîs und durh ir guft
these two for prize and for their pride

wârn baz geflôrieret
were better flowered

76,20 und alsô gezimieret
and so adorned

daz es diu minne hête prîs.
that of-it the love had prize.

sold ich gar in allen wîs
should I wholly in all ways

von ir zimierde sagen,
of their crest say,

sô müese ich mînen meister klagen,
so must I my master lament,

von Veldek: der kundez baz. 76,25
of Veldeke: he could-it better.

der wære der witze ouch niht sô laz,
he would-be of-the wit also not so slack,

er nand iu baz denne al mîn sin,
he would-name to-you better than all my mind,

wie des iewedern friwendin
how of-the each lady-friend

mit spæcheit an si leite kost.
with skill on them laid cost.

si gâhten ze ors ûf durch die tjost.
they hastened to horse up for the joust.

Arofel's Death

XIX

Willalm kills Tenebruns. Arofel fights well until his leg is bared and Willalm cuts it off at the thigh. The Persian offers thirty elephants laden with gold for his life, but when Willalm learns that he is Gyburc's uncle and Terramer's brother, he refuses even the mountains of the Caucasus in gold and beheads him. The poet laments a heathen whom Christian women should mourn.

Do der marcrâve gein in her 77,1
When the margrave toward them hither

reit, dâ wurden bêdiu sper
rode, there were both spears

von rabîne gesenket,
from gallop lowered,

und niht von im gewenket,
and not from him swerved,

77,5 er liezs et hurteclîche komn.
he let-them just onsetting come.

dô bêde tjost wârn genomn
when both jousts were taken

von dem marcrâven starc,
by the margrave strong,

sîne reise er wênec barc:
his journey he little bid:

er wolde et ze Oransche hin,
he would just to Orange away,

77,10 dâ Gyburc diu künegin
where Gyburc the queen

sîn herze nâhen bî ir truoc.
his heart near by her bore.

ieweder künec ûf in sluoc
each king on him struck

sô die smide ûf den anebôz.
as the smiths on the anvil.

Schoyûse wart der scheiden blôz
Schoyuse became of-the scabbard bare

77,15 und manlîch gezucket,
and manly drawn,

und bêde sporn gedrucket
and both spurs pressed

Puzzât durch die sîten.
Puzzat through the sides.

manlîch was ir strîten.
manly was their fighting.

der künec Tenebruns lac tôt.
the king Tenebruns lay dead.

alrêrst gap strîtlîche nôt 77,20
first-of-all gave battle-like distress

dem Franzoys der Persân.
to-the Frenchman the Persian.

hurtâ wiez dâ wart getân!
hurta how-it there was done!

die schildes schirben flugen enbor.
the shield's shards flew aloft.

ein swert der künec Pantanor
a sword the king Pantanor

gap dem künege Salatrê: 77,25
gave to-the king Salatre:

der gabz dem künege Antikotê:
he gave-it to-the king Antikote:

der gabz Esserê dem emerâl:
he gave-it to-Essere the emir:

der gabz dô als lieht gemâl
he gave-it then as bright painted

Aroffel dem küenen:
to-Aroffel the bold:

der kund ouch wênic süenen.
he could also little reconcile.

Sus kom daz swert von man ze man, 78,1
Thus came the sword from man to man,

unz ez der Persân gewan,
until it the Persian gained,

Aroffel, derz mit ellen truoc
Aroffel, who-it with valor bore

und ez vil genendeclîchen sluoc,
and it very boldly struck,

78,5 wand er mit strîte kunde
for he with battle could

und niemen für sich gunde
and to-no-one before himself granted

deheinen prîs ze bejagenne.
any prize to win.

ich het iu vil ze sagenne
I would-have to-you much to tell

von sîner hôhen werdekeit,
of his high worthiness,

78,10 und wie er den ruoft erstreit
and how he the renown won

undr al den Sarrazînen,
among all the Saracens,

daz er sich kunde pînen
that he himself could exert

von hôher kost in wîbe gebot
of high cost in women's command

und ouch durch sîner vriwende nôt,
and also for his friends' distress,

78,15 bärlîch im selben ouch ze wer.
openly to-him self also as defense.

undr al dem Terramêres her
among all the Terramer's host

was ninder bezzer rîter dâ,
was nowhere better knight there,

denne Arofel von Persîâ.
than Arofel of Persia.

Gyburge milte was geslaht
Gyburc's generosity was born

78,20 von im: er hetez dar zuo brâht,
from him: he had-it there to brought,

daz ninder kein sô miltiu hant
that nowhere any so generous hand

bî sînen zîten was bekant.
by his times was known.

Arofel der rîche
Arofel the rich

streit genendeclîche:
fought boldly:

er bejagt ê werdekeit genuoc. 78,25
he won before worthiness enough.

daz ors mit hurte in nâher truoc,
the horse with onset him nearer bore,

daz die riemen vorme knie
that the straps before-the knee

brâsten dort unde hie:
burst there and here:

ame lendenier si entstricket wart
at-the loin-strap it untied was

von der hurteclîchen vart,
from the onsetting journey,

diu îserhose sanc ûf den sporn: 79,1
the iron-hose sank onto the spur:

des wart sîn blankez bein verlorn.
of-that became his white leg lost.

halsperges gêr und kursît
hauberk's skirt and surcoat

und der schilt an der selben zît
and the shield at the same time

wârn drab geruct, deiz bein stuont blôz. 79,5
were there-off pushed, so-that-the leg stood bare.

den blanken diechschenkel grôz
the white thigh great

der marcrâve hin ab im swanc.
the margrave away off him swung.

des küneges wer wart dô kranc.
the king's defense became then weak.

er bôt ze geben sicherheit,
he offered to give surety,

79,10 der ê genendeclîchen streit,
who before boldly fought,

und dâ zuo hordes ungezalt.
and there to of-hoard uncounted.

von dem ors er wart gevalt:
from the horse he was felled:

der marcrâve erbeizt ouch dô:
the margrave dismounted also then:

des gevelles was er frô.
of-the fall was he glad.

79,15 Arofel âne schande
Arofel without disgrace

bôt drîzec helfande
offered thirty elephants

ze Alexandrîe in der habe,
at Alexandria in the harbor,

und daz man goldes næme drabe
and that one of-gold should-take thereon

swaz si mit arbeite
whatever they with labor

79,20 trüegen, und guot geleite
should-bear, and good escort

al dem horde unz in Pârîs.
to-all the hoard until into Paris.

'helt, dun hâst deheinen prîs,
'hero, thou hast no prize,

ob du mir nimst mîn halbez lebn:
if thou from-me takest my half life:

du hâst mir freuden tôt gegebn.'
thou hast to-me of-joys death given.'

do der marcrâve sîniu wort 79,25
when the margrave his words

vernam, daz er sô grôzen hort
heard, that he so great hoard

für sîn verschertez leben bôt,
for his forfeited life offered,

er dâhte an Vivîanzes tôt,
he thought on Vivianz's death,

wie der gerochen würde,
how he avenged should-be,

und daz sîn jâmers bürde
and that his misery's burden

ein teil gesenftet wære: 80,1
a part eased were:

den künec vrâgter mære,
the king asked-he tidings,

daz er im sagte umb sînen art,
that he to-him should-tell about his birth,

von welhem lant sîn übervart
from which land his crossing

ûf sînen schaden wære getân. 80,5
onto his harm were done.

er sprach 'ich pin ein Persân.
he spoke 'I am a Persian.

mîn krône aldâ der fürsten pflac
my crown there of-the princes took-care

mit kraft unz an disen tac:
with strength until to this day:

nu ist diu swacheit worden mîn.
now is the weakness become mine.

ey bruoder tohter, daz ich dîn
ah brother's daughter, that I for-thee

mit schaden ie sus vil engalt!
with harm ever thus much paid!

Arable unde Tybalt,
Arable and Tybalt,

lægt ir für mich beide erslagen,
lay you for me both slain,

iwern tôt man minre solde klagen.'
your death one less should lament.'

der künec niwan der wârheit jach.
the king nothing-but the truth declared.

der marcrâve mit zorne sprach
the margrave with wrath spoke

'du garnest al mîn herzesêr,
'thou payest-for all my heart-sore,

und daz dîn bruoder Terramêr
and that thy brother Terramer

mîne besten mâge ertœtet hât,
my best kinsmen killed has,

und daz dîn helfeclîcher rât
and that thy helpful counsel

dâ bî alz volleclîchen was.
there by all-of-it fully was.

ob alz gebirge Kaukasas
if all-the mountains Caucasus

dîner hant ze geben zæme,
for-thy hand to give befitted,

daz golt ich gar niht næme,
the gold I wholly not would-take,

dune gultest mîne mâge
unless-thou paidst my kinsmen

mit des tôdes wâge.'
with the death's balance.'

Arofel sprach ‘mac iemen hân
Arofel spoke ‘(if)-may anyone have

dar umbe du mich halben man
there for thou me half man

alsus verhouwen lâzes leben,
thus hewn lettest live,

des wirt dir vil für mich gegeben.
of-that becomes to-thee much for me given.

Nu sich, dort stêt Volatîn 81,1
Now see, there stands Volatin

daz ors, dâ mit diu schulde mîn
the horse, there with the guilt mine

gein dir wære vergolten gar.
toward thee were repaid wholly.

ich nam durch mîne triwe war
I took for my faithfulness heed

zehen künege, mînes bruoder kint, 81,5
of-ten kings, my brother's children,

die hie mit grôzer fuore sint:
who here with great train are:

durch die fuor ich von Persîâ.
for them went I from Persia.

ist in mînem rîche aldâ
(if)-is in my realm there

iht des du gerst für mînen tôt,
anything of-what thou desirest for my death,

daz nim und lâz mich leben mit nôt.’ 81,10
that take and let me live with distress.’

war umbe sold i’z lange sagen?
what for should I-it long tell?

Arofel wart aldâ erslagen.
Arofel was there slain.

swaz harnaschs und zimierde vant
whatever of-armor and crest found

an im dez marcrâven hant,
on him the margrave's hand,

81,15 daz wart vil gar von im gezogen
that was very wholly from him drawn

untz houbet sîn für unbetrogen
and-the head his for undeceived

balde ab im geswenket
quickly off him swung

und der wîbe dienst gekrenket.
and the women's service weakened.

ir freuden urbor an im lac:
their joys' revenue in him lay:

81,20 da erschein der minne ein flüstic tac.
there appeared to-the love a ruinous day.

noch solden kristenlîchiu wîp
still should Christian women

klagen sîn ungetouften lîp.
lament his unbaptized body.

Willalm in Arofel's Armor

XX

Willalm puts on Arofel's armor and crest and takes his horse Volatin, his shield, and both swords; he strips the bridle from the wounded Puzzat, who follows his track unled. He sees the bright roof of Orange. Poydjus, Terramer's grandson, sent to take Gyburc's life, waits on the plain for his host, while Thesereiz has come to protect her. Speaking heathen and bearing heathen arms, Willalm rides through their companies, but his ermine fur and Puzzat on his track betray him.

der marcrâve ninder flôch,
the margrave nowhere fled,

ê daz er von im selben zôch
before that he from him self drew

harnasch daz er ê hêt an: 81,25
armor which he before had on:

ein bezzerz daz der tôte man
a better-one which the dead man

gein im ze strîte brâhte,
toward him to battle brought,

balde er des gedâhte,
quickly he of-that thought,

mit zimierde leit erz an den lîp.
with crest laid he-it on the body.

des bekant in niht sîn selbes wîp
for-that knew him not his own woman

sît do es im wart vil nôt, 82,1
afterward when it to-him became very needful,

swie kuntlîche rede err bôt.
however intimate speech he-her offered.

Diu zimierde gap kostbæren schîn.
The crest gave costly appearance.

Arofels ors, hiez Volatîn,
Arofel's horse, was-called Volatin,

dâ ûf saz er al zehant.
there on sat he all at-once.

bêdiu swert er umbe bant:
both swords he around bound:

Arofels schilt er dar zuo nam,
Arofel's shield he there to took,

der künge wol ze füeren zam.
which kings well to bear befitted.

Puzzât sîn ors was sêre wunt:
Puzzat his horse was sorely wounded:

den zoum er drab zôch an der stunt,
the bridle he there-off drew at the hour,

daz ez sich hungers werte.
that it itself of-hunger defended.

mit im ez dan doch kêrte:
with him it thence yet turned:

swâ sîn hêrre vor în reit,
wherever its lord before in rode,

die selben slâ ez niht vermeit.
the same track it not avoided.

sus reit der unverzagete,
thus rode the undaunted-one,

sô daz in niemen jagete,
so that him no-one hunted,

unz er Oransch ersach,
until he Orange saw,

ûf dem palas sîn liehtez dach.
on the palace its bright roof.

des wart sîn freude erhœhet,
of-that became his joy raised,

diu ê was gar geflœhet
which before was wholly fled

ûz sîme herzen hin zetal.
out-of his heart away down.

von busînen hôrt er schal
of trumpets heard he clamor

und sach von rotten manegen stoup.
and saw from troops many-a dust.

Terramêr het urloup
Terramer had leave

sîner tohter sune gegebn, 82,25
to-his daughter's son given,

daz er Gyburge ir lebn
that he Gyburc her life

ûf Oransche næme.
on Orange should-take.

nu seht wie daz gezæme
now see how that should-befit

von Griffâne Poydjus,
of Griffane Poydjus,

daz er sîner muomen sus
that he to-his aunt thus

der sippe wolde lônen. 83,1
the kinship would reward.

billîcher solder schônen
more-fittingly should-he spare

ir und aller wîbe.
her and all women.

ze schirm Gyburge lîbe
for protection to-Gyburc's body

kom geîlt rois Tesereiz. 83,5
came hastened king Tesereiz.

für wâr ich noch an wîben weiz,
for true I still in women know,

swelh rîter het alsölhen site
whichever knight had such manner

der Tesereiz wonte mite,
as Tesereiz dwelt with,

daz der möht ir minne hân.
that he might their love have.

83,10 des wîbes herze treit der man:
the woman's heart bears the man:

sô gebent diu wîp den hôhen muot.
so give the women the high spirit.

swaz iemen werdekeit getuot,
whatever anyone of-worthiness does,

in ir handen stêt diu sal.
in their hands stands the deed-of-gift.

wert minne ist hôh an prüevens zal.
worthy love is high in reckoning's number.

83,15 die pfäde und die strâze gar
the paths and the road wholly

verdecket wârn mit maneger schar.
covered were with many-a company.

swaz der gein Oransche lac,
whatever of-them toward Orange lay,

der marcrâve einer künste pflac,
the margrave a skill practiced,

daz sîn munt wol heidensch sprach.
that his mouth well heathen spoke.

83,20 sîn schilt was heidensch den man sach,
his shield was heathen which one saw,

sîn ors was heidensch daz er reit,
his horse was heathen which he rode,

al sîniu wâpenlîchiu kleit
all his armorial clothes

gefuort ûz der heiden lant.
brought out-of the heathens' land.

Willalm der wîgant
Willalm the warrior

83,25 gein al den storjen kêrte.
toward all the troops turned.

sîn manheit in lêrte,
his manhood him taught,

swâ die lücke giengen durch,
wherever the gaps went through,

ez wære ûf wisen od in der furch,
it were on meadows or in the furrow,

daz er dâ sanfte stapfte.
that he there gently stepped.

des hers vil an in kapfte.
of-the host many at him gaped.

Poydjus von Griffâne 84,1
Poydjus of Griffane

enthielt sich ûf dem plâne,
held himself on the meadow,

unz im sîn her kom gar.
until to-him his host came wholly.

er hete ouch ze vil der schar
he had also too many of-the companies

von Tesreizes krefte, 84,5
from Tesreiz's strength,

in des geselleschefte
in whose fellowship

ûz sîn selbes lande dar gebeten,
out-of his own land thither bidden,

die von Soitiers und die Latriseten
those of Soitiers and the Latrisets

und die von Collône.
and those of Collone.

ouch dienden sîner krône 84,10
also served his crown

die von Pâlerne:
those of Palerne:

Tesreize ouch dienden gerne
to-Tesreiz also served gladly

die von Grikulâne
those of Grikulane

ûz der wilden muntâne,
out-of the wild mountain,

84,15 mit bogen und mit slingen,
with bows and with slings,

dâ mit si kunden ringen.
there with they could wrestle.

der marcrâve niht vermeit,
the margrave not avoided,

durchz her gein Oransch er reit:
through-the host toward Orange he rode:

des kom er ze arbeite.
of-that came he to toil.

84,20 si pruoften ein gereite
they examined a harness

daz ûf dem wundem orse lac.
which on the wounded horse lay.

und eines sites des er pflac,
and of-a habit which he practiced,

daz er ein kleine pelzelîn
that he a little little-fur

(daz selbe was lieht härmîn)
(the same was bright ermine)

84,25 an zôch, dar ob er wâpen truoc,
on drew, there above he arms bore,

des pelzelîns ein gêre sluoc
of-the little-fur a gore struck

hinden übern satelbogn.
behind over-the saddle-bow.

und dô Puzzât für unbetrogn
and when Puzzat for undeceived

sô eben zogt ûf sîner slâ,
so evenly drew on his track,

des bekanden in die heiden dâ.
by-that knew him the heathens there.

Thesereiz

XXI

The heathens recognize Puzzat and pursue the knight they take for a Christian. Thesereiz of Collone offers, if he is the margrave whom Arabel loved, to protect him from all the heathens, reconcile him with the gods, and increase his wealth if he surrenders; when Willalm turns, they joust and Thesereiz dies, a lover the poet mourns. Hunted from all sides, Willalm flees, lamenting Puzzat, who lies dead, escapes into a chestnut grove, and Volatin carries him to the gate of Orange.

Si sprâchen 'jenez ors truoc den man 85,1
They spoke 'that horse bore the man

von dem Pînel den tôt gewan,
from whom Pinel the death gained,

und der uns Arficlanden
and who us Arficlant

ersluoc und Turkanden.
slew and Turkant.

daz selbe ors den einen truoc, 85,5
that same horse the one bore,

der den künec Turpîûnen sluoc,
who the king Turpiun slew,

den rîchen von Falturmîê.
the rich-one of Falturmie.

swiez umb disen rîter stê,
however-it about this knight stand,

ich wæn der schade von im geschach.
I think the harm from him happened.

85,10 diz ors im zoget sus eben nâch:
this horse to-him draws thus evenly after:

er ist für wâr ein kristen
he is for true a Christian

und wil von uns mit listen.
and will from us with cunning.

dort unden sîn härmîn gewant
there below his ermine garment

ûz der Franzoyser lant
out-of the Frenchmen's land

85,15 gein uns ist her gefüeret.'
toward us is hither brought.'

dâ wart mit sporn gerüeret.
there was with spurs touched.

des enwas et dô kein ander rât,
of-that was just then no other counsel,

da ergienc mit poynder puntestât.
there happened with charge onslaught.

immer zweinzc ensamt stâchen,
ever twenty together thrust,

85,20 od mêr, daz gar zebrâchen
or more, that wholly broke

ûf im diu sper zestochen gar.
on him the spears shattered wholly.

in gap ein schar der andern schar
him gave one company to-the other company

von hant ze hant als einen bal.
from hand to hand as a ball.

sus fuorten sin berge unt tal.
thus led they-him mountains and valley.

Arofels ors Volatîn 85,25
Arofel's horse Volatin

und Schoyûs daz swert sîn
and Schoyus the sword his

dâ wurden bürgen für sîn lebn.
there became sureties for his life.

dem wîbe lôns was vil gegebn,
to-the woman of-reward was much given,

der künec von Collône
the king of Collone

bat in dâ rîten schône:
bade him there ride fairly:

der fuor im dâ ze næhest bî. 86,1
he went to-him there at nearest by.

'ich wil wizzen wer ditz sî,'
'I will know who this be,'

sprach Tesereiz der minnen kranz:
spoke Tesereiz the love's garland:

des sper was lieht von varwe glanz.
whose spear was bright of color radiant.

er sprach 'ob du getoufet sîs, 86,5
he spoke 'if thou baptized be,

so enpfâch ein tjost durch den prîs.
so receive a joust for the prize.

ob duz der marcrâve bist,
if thou-it the margrave art,

half dir dô dîn hêrre Krist
helped thee then thy lord Christ

daz diu Arâboysinne
that the Arab-woman

Arabel durch dîne minne 86,10
Arabel for thy love

rîchiu lant und werde krône
rich lands and worthy crown

dîner minne gap ze lône
to-thy love gave as reward

(trüeg sölh êre ein Sarrazîn
(should-bear such honor a Saracen

als wont an dem prîse dîn,
as dwells in the prize thine,

86,15 des wærn al unser gote gemeit),
of-that would-be all our gods glad),

ich wil durch dîne werdekeit
I will for thy worthiness

dich vor al den heiden nern,
thee before all the heathens save,

benamen durch dîne minne wern.
indeed for thy love defend.

mir enhât hie niemen vollen strît:
to-me has here no-one full battle:

86,20 mîn her wol ebenhiuze gît
my host well match gives

von Grikulâne unz an den Roten.
from Grikulane until to the Red-sea.

ich wil dich unsern werden goten
I will thee to-our worthy gods

wol ze hulden bringen:
well to goodwill bring:

dâ mac dîn dienst wol ringen
there may thy service well wrestle

86,25 nâch wîbe lôn und umb ir gruoz.
after women's reward and for their greeting.

ob ich mit dir strîten muoz,
if I with thee fight must,

ich weiz wol, dêst der minne leit.
I know well, that-is to-the love sorrow.

sô unsanfte ich nie gestreit
so ungently I never fought

mit deheiner slahte man,
with any kind man,

wand ich dir keines schaden gan.'
for I to-thee no harm grant.'

Er bat in dicke kêren, 87,1
He bade him often turn,

und er wolde im rîcheit mêren:
and he would to-him wealth increase:

er warp nâch fîanze.
he strove after surrender.

ze treviers wart ein lanze
at crosswise was a lance

ûf den marcrâven gestochen; 87,5
on the margrave thrust;

die begreif er unzerbrochen
it seized he unbroken

und wants eim heiden ûz der hant:
and wrested-it from-a heathen out-of the hand:

des wart sîn tjost mit schaden erkant.
by-that became his joust with harm known.

innen des rief Tesereiz
meanwhile that called Tesereiz

'nu kêre, ob dich in dienste weiz 87,10
'now turn, if thee in service knows

Arabel diu künegîn.'
Arabel the queen.'

wider wart geworfen Volatîn
back was thrown Volatin

gein dem künec von Latrisete:
toward the king of Latrisete:

er leiste unsanfte sîne bete.
he performed ungently his request.

hie wurden d'ors mit sporn genomn.
here were the-horses with spurs taken.

dâ was manheit gein ellen komn,
there was manhood toward valor come,

und diu milte gein der güete,
and the generosity toward the goodness,

kiusche und hôhgemüete,
chastity and high-spirit,

mit triwen zuht ze bêder sît:
with faithfulness courtesy on both sides:

der ahte schanze was der strît.
of-the eight stake was the battle.

daz niunde was diu minne:
the ninth was the love:

diu verlôs an ir gewinne.
she lost in her gain.

von rabîne hurteclîchen
from gallop impetuously

si liezen nâher strîchen.
they let nearer sweep.

dâ wart faylieren gar vermiten
there was missing wholly avoided

und bêdiu sper enzwei geriten.
and both spears in-two ridden.

diu tjost dâ sterben lêrte
the joust there to-die taught

Tesereizen, der ie mêrte
Tesereiz, who ever increased

prîs des diu werlt gereinet was.
prize of-which the world cleansed was.

geêret sî velt unde gras
honored be field and grass

aldâ der minnær lac erslagen.
there-where the lover lay slain.

daz velt solde zuker tragen
the field should sugar bear

al umb ein tagereise.
all around a day's-journey.

der clâre kurteise
the bright courteous-one

möht al den bîen geben ir nar: 88,5
might to-all the bees give their food:

sît si der süeze nement war,
since they of-the sweetness take heed,

si möhten, wærns iht wîse,
they might, were-they at-all wise,

in dem lufte nemen ir spîse,
in the air take their food,

der von dem lande kumt geflogen,
which from the land comes flown,

dâ Tesereiz für unbetrogen 88,10
where Tesereiz for undeceived

sîn rîterlîchez ende nam.
his knightly end took.

er was der minne ein blüender stam,
he was of-the love a blooming stem,

den tôte des marcrâven hant:
whom killed the margrave's hand:

den hete ouch minne dar gesant.
him had also love thither sent.

Gyburge bote was wol ze wer: 88,15
Gyburc's messenger was well to defense:

mit poynder nam in für daz her
with charge took him before the host

ze volge und ze treviers.
in pursuit and at crosswise.

'Mahmet, und ganstu miers,'
'Mahmet, and (if)-grantest-thou me-it,'

sprach maneger, ‘ich begrîfe dich.’
spoke many-a-one, ‘I seize thee.’

88,20 an allen sîten manegen stich
on all sides many-a thrust

im manec geruowtiu storje bôt.
to-him many-a rested troop offered.

er flôch dan, Puzzât lac tôt,
he fled thence, Puzzat lay dead,

sîn ors. daz begund er klagen:
his horse. that began he to-lament:

Schoyûse wart dô vil geslagen
Schoyuse was then much struck

88,25 den heiden ze ungemache.
to-the heathens for discomfort.

kastânen boume ein schache
chestnut trees a copse

dâ stuont mit wînreben hôch:
there stood with grapevines high:

in der dicke er in enpflôch.
into the thickness he them escaped.

snellîchen truoc in Volatîn
quickly bore him Volatin

ze Oransch für die porte sîn.
to Orange before the gate his.

Gyburc at the Gate

XXII

The chaplain Steven and then Gyburc herself do not believe the knight in heathen armor is the margrave, and she refuses him entry. Heathens drive five hundred Christian prisoners by under the whip; Gyburc says the true margrave would help them, and Willalm frees them, the heathens fleeing in terror of Arofel's arms. Still fearing betrayal, Gyburc asks to see the scar on his nose from his fight for Pope Leo, recognizes it, lets him in, and they kiss and comfort each other.

Alrêrst twanc in jâmers nôt 89,1
First-of-all constrained him misery's distress

umb sînes werden heres tôt
for his worthy host's death

und Vivîanzes sînes neven.
and Vivianz's his nephew's.

ein alter kapelân, hiez Steven,
an old chaplain, was-called Steven,

ûf der wer ob der porte stuont: 89,5
on the rampart above the gate stood:

dem tet der marcrâve kuont
to-him made the margrave known

daz er dâ selbe wære.
that he there himself were.

der geloubte niht der mære.
he believed not the tidings.

diu künegîn kom selbe dar.
the queen came herself thither.

si nam der zimierde war: 89,10
she took of-the crest heed:

der koste si bevilte.
of-the cost she wearied.

si prüefte ouch bî dem schilte
she judged also by the shield

daz er ein heiden möhte sîn.
that he a heathen might be.

Arofels ors Volatîn
Arofel's horse Volatin

89,15 was niht sô Puzzât getân.
was not as Puzzat made.

si sprach 'ir sît ein heidensch man.
she spoke 'you are a heathen man.

wen wænt ir hie betriegen,
whom think you here to-deceive,

daz ir sus kunnet liegen
that you thus can lie

von dem marcrâven âne nôt?
of the margrave without need?

89,20 sîn manheit im ie gebôt
his manhood him ever commanded

daz er bî den sînen streit
that he by the his-ones fought

und flühtec nie von in gereit
and fleeing never from them rode

durch deheiner slahte herte.
for any kind hardship.

maneger iu daz werte,
many-a-one to-you that would-forbid,

89,25 iwer halden hie sus nâhen,
your halting here thus near,

wan daz ez kan versmâhen
except that it can disdain

hie inne al mîner rîterschaft.'
here within to-all my knighthood.'

dô was ir werlîchiu kraft
then was her warlike strength

gedigen et an den kapelân:
dwindled just to the chaplain:

dort inne was kein ander man.
there within was no other man.

Der marcrâve zer künegîn 90,1
The margrave to-the queen

sprach ‘süeziu Gyburc, lâ mich în,
spoke ‘sweet Gyburc, let me in,

und gib mir trôst den du wol kanst.
and give me comfort which thou well canst.

nâch schaden du mich freuden manst:
after harm thou me of-joys remindest:

ich hân mich doch ze vil gesent.’ 90,5
I have myself yet too much yearned.’

si sprach ‘ich bin des niht gewent,
she spoke ‘I am of-that not accustomed,

daz der marcrâve al eine
that the margrave all alone

kume. mit eime steine
come. with a stone

sol iu gewinket werden,
shall to-you beckoned be,

daz ir ligt ûf der erden: 90,10
that you lie on the earth:

iwers haldens ich iu hie niht gan.’
your halting I to-you here not grant.’

der heiden hers ein woldan
the heathens’ host a flock

wol fünf hundert menschen fuorten,
well five hundred people led,

die si mit geiselen ruorten:
whom they with whips touched:

90,15 daz wârn die kristen armen.
those were the Christian poor-ones.

die begunden sêre erbarmen
they began sorely to-move-to-pity

Gyburge, diuz hôrt unde sach.
Gyburc, who-it heard and saw.

zem marcrâven si dô sprach
to-the margrave she then spoke

'wært ir hêrr diss landes,
'were you lord of-this land,

90,20 ir schamt iuch maneges pfandes
you would-shame yourself of-many-a pledge

als iwer folc dort lîdet.
as your people there suffers.

ob ir helfe bî den mîdet,
if you help to those avoid,

sô weiz ich wol daz irz niht sît.
so know I well that you-it not are.

Munschoye wart geschrît,
Munschoye was cried,

90,25 und ûf geworfen ûz der hant
and up thrown out-of the hand

Schoyûs: des eke wârn bekant.
Schoyus: whose edges were known.

dâ wart gehardieret
there was assaulted

und alsô gepungieret,
and so charged,

swen er derreicht, der lac dâ tôt.
whomever he reached, he lay there dead.

die heiden fluhen vor durch nôt:
the heathens fled before for distress:

olbenden und dromendarîs
camels and dromedaries

da beliben, geladn in manegen wîs
there remained, laden in many ways

mit wîne und mit spîse.
with wine and with food.

der marcgrâve wîse
the margrave wise

Arofels wâpen dâ genôz:
Arofel's arms there enjoyed:

wan des kraft was sô grôz
for its power was so great

über al der heiden her,
over all the heathens' host,

daz ir neheiner kom ze wer.
that of-them none came to defense.

si vorhten daz erz wære,
they feared that he-it were,

und erschracten sô der mære,
and were-frightened so of-the tidings,

dazs ir gewin liezen stên.
that-they their gain let stand.

die soume hiez er wider gên:
the pack-horses bade he back go:

über al der kristen liute bant
over all the Christian people's bonds

ûf sneit des marcrâven hant.
up cut the margrave's hand.

er bats et wider trîben:
he bade-them just back drive:

er enliez dâ niht belîben
he left there not remain

swaz im ze nutze tohte.
whatever to-him for use was-fit.

mit êren er dô mohte
with honor he then could

komen für die porten sîn.
come before the gate his.

91,20 dannoch wânt diu künegîn
still thought the queen

daz si wære verrâten.
that she were betrayed.

în lâzens dicke bâten
in letting often bade

der marcrâve und de erlôste diet.
the margrave and the released people.

der küneginne vorhte riet
the queen's fear counseled

91,25 daz sien marcrâven mante
that she-the margrave reminded

daz in doch wênic schante.
of-what him yet little disgraced.

‘dô ir durch âventiure
‘when you for adventure

bî Karl dem lampriure
by Charles the emperor

nâch hôhem prîse runget
after high prize wrestled

und Rômære betwunget,
and Romans constrained,

92,1 ein mâsen dier enpfienget dô
a scar which-you received then

durh den bâbest Lêô,
for the pope Leo,

die lât mich ob der nasen sehen.
that let me above the nose see.

sô kan ich schiere daz gespehen,
so can I soon that spy,

ob irz der marcrâve sît: 92,5
if you-it the margrave are:

alêrst ist în lâzens zît.
only-then is in of-letting time.

hân ich dan ze lange gebitn,
(if)-have I then too long waited,

ich kan mit vorhtlîchen sitn
I can with fearful manners

umb iwer hulde werben
for your goodwill strive

(daz enlâz ich niht verderben) 92,10
(that let I not perish)

mit dienstlîchem koufe.'
with service-like purchase.'

der helm und diu goufe
the helm and the coif

wart ûf gestrict und ab gezogn.
was up unlaced and off drawn.

diu künegîn was unbetrogn:
the queen was undeceived:

die mâsen si bekante. 92,15
the scar she recognized.

mit freuden si in nante
with joy she him named

'Willalm ehkurneis,
'Willalm short-nose,

willekomen, werder Franzeis.'
welcome, worthy Frenchman.'

si bat die port ûf sliezen.
she bade the gate up unlock.

er moht ê niht geniezen, 92,20
he could before not profit,

swaz err ze künde sagete;
whatever he-to-her as token said;

daz si vil dicke klagete.
that she very often lamented.

dô sim mit vorhten manegen kus
when she-him with fear many-a kiss

gap, der marcrâve alsus
gave, the margrave thus

92,25 sprach ‘Gyburc, süeze âmîe,
spoke ‘Gyburc, sweet sweetheart,

wis vor mir gar diu vrîe
be before me wholly the free-one

swaz ich hazzes ie gewan,
of-whatever I of-hatred ever gained,

wan ich gein dir niht zürnen kan.
for I toward thee not be-angry can.

nu geben beide ein ander trôst:
now give both one another comfort:

wir sîn doch trûrens unerlôst.’
we are yet of-mourning unreleased.’

The Siege of Orange

XXIII

Gyburc asks after Vivianz and their kinsmen; Willalm tells her Vivianz died in his lap and her father has brought him loss beyond measure. Hearing that her father has come, she bids all defend Orange. Willalm promises the help of his kin, the Roman king, and his father at Narbonne, and asks whether he should ride or stay. Terramer's host arrives; Willalm gives the gate to the prisoners he freed, women and children carry stones, and the kings take their places.

Des wortes Gyburc sêre erschrac. 93,1
At-the word Gyburc sorely was-frightened.

si dâht 'ob ich in vrâgen mac
she thought 'if I him ask may

der rehten mær von Alischanz?'
of-the right tidings from Alischanz?'

ob er selbe und Vivîanz
whether he himself and Vivianz

daz velt behabeten mit gewalt 93,5
the field held with might

gein dem künege Tybalt,
against the king Tybalt,

od wiez da ergangen wære.
or how-it there gone were.

alweinde se vrâgete mære,
all-weeping she asked tidings,

'wâ ist der clâre Vivîanz,
'where is the bright Vivianz,

Mîle unde Gwigrimanz? 93,10
Mile and Gwigrimanz?

ouwê dîn eines komenden vart!
alas thy alone coming journey!

wa ist Witschart und Gêrhart
where is Witschart and Gerhart

die gebruoder von Blavî,
the brothers of Blavi,

und dîn geslähte ûz Komarzî,
and thy lineage out-of Komarzi,

Sansôn und Jozeranz
Sanson and Jozeranz

und Hûwes von Meilanz
and Huwes of Milan

und der pfallenzgrâve Bertram
and the count-palatine Bertram

(der selbe dînen vanen nam)
(he himself thy banner took)

und Hûnas von Sanctes,
and Hunas of Saintes,

dem du nie gewanctes
to-whom thou never failedst

decheines dienstes, noch er dir?
in-any service, nor he thee?

hêrre und friunt, nu sage mir,
lord and friend, now tell me,

wa ist Gautiers und Gaudîn
where is Gautiers and Gaudin

und der blanke Kybalîn?'
and the white Kybalin?'

der marcrâve begunde klagen.
the margrave began to-lament.

er sprach 'in kan dir niht gesagen
he spoke 'I can thee not tell

von ir ieslîches sunder nôt.
of their each-one's separate distress.

bärlîch Vivîanz ist tôt.
openly Vivianz is dead.

in mîn selbes schôz ich sach
in my own lap I saw

daz der tôt sîn jungez herze brach.
that the death his young heart broke.

Mir hât dîn vater Terramêr 94,1
To-me has thy father Terramer

gefrumet mangiu herzesêr,
wrought many-a heart-sore,

und tuot noch ê erz lâze.
and does still before he-it leave.

mîn flust ist âne mâze.'
my loss is without measure.'

do ez Gyburc het alsus vernomn, 94,5
when it Gyburc had thus heard,

daz ir vater selbe wære komn
that her father himself were come

ûf Alischanz von über mer,
onto Alischanz from over sea,

si sprach 'al kristenlîchiu wer
she spoke 'all Christian defense

mag im niht widerrîten.
may him not ride-against.

sîn helfe wont sô wîten, 94,10
his help dwells so widely,

von Orjent unz an Pozidant,
from Orient until to Pozidant,

dar zuo al indîâschiu lant,
there to all Indian lands,

von Orkeis her unz an Marroch,
from Orkeis hither until to Marroch,

dar zuo den wîten strich dannoch
there to the wide stretch besides

von Griffâne unz an Rankulat
from Griffane until to Rankulat

die besten er mit im hie bat,
the best he with him here summoned,

sîne man und al mîn künne.
his men and all my kin.

uns nâhet swachiu wünne.
to-us nears poor bliss.

hete wir doch sölhe kraft,
had we yet such strength,

dazs an den zingelen rîterschaft
that-they at the outworks knighthood

und hie zen porten müesen holn,
and here at-the gates must fetch,

dâ von si möhten schaden doln!
there from they might harm suffer!

ich erkenne se sô vermezzen,
I know them so presumptuous,

wir werden hie besezzen.
we become here besieged.

nu wer sich wîp unde man:
now defend itself woman and man:

niht bezzers râtes ich nu kan.
no better counsel I now know.

dez næhste gedinge ist unser lebn:
the nearest hope is our life:

daz sul wir niht sô gâhes gebn.
that shall we not so hastily give.

si mugen wol schaden erwerben,
they may well harm win,

ê daz wir vor in sterben.
before that we before them die.

Oransch ist wol sô veste, 95,1
Orange is well so firm,
ez gemüet noch al die geste.'
it troubles still all the guests.'
manlîche sprach daz wîp,
manly spoke the woman,
als ob si manlîchen lîp
as if she manly body
und mannes herze trüege. 95,5
and man's heart bore.
er was wol sô gefüege,
he was well so seemly,
daz er si nâhen zuo zim vienc:
that he her near to him caught:
ein kus dâ vriwentlîch ergienc.
a kiss there friendly happened.
unverzagetlîch er sprach
undauntedly he spoke
'nâch senfte hœret ungemach. 95,10
'after ease belongs discomfort.
wer möht ouch haben den gewin,
who might also have the gain,
als ich von dir berâten bin
as I by thee provided am
an hôher minne teile,
in high love's share,
sîn lebn wær drumbe veile,
his life were for-it for-sale,
und allez daz er ie gewan? 95,15
and all that he ever gained?
guoten trôst ich vor mir hân,
good comfort I before me have,
mahtu behalten dise stat:
(if)-mayst-thou hold this town:

manec fürste, diechs noh nie gebat,
many-a prince, whom-I-it still never bade,

durch mich rîtent in diz lant.
for me ride into this land.

mit swerten lœs ich dîniu bant,
with swords would-loose I thy bonds,

swaz si dir mit gesezze tuont.
whatever they to-thee with siege do.

mîner mâge triwe ist mir wol kuont.
my kinsmen's faithfulness is to-me well known.

dar zuo der Rœmisch künec ouch hât
there to the Roman king also has

mîne swester, der mich nu niht lât.
my sister, he me now not leaves.

mîn alter vatr von Narybôn
my old father of Narbonne

sol dir mit dienste geben lôn,
shall to-thee with service give reward,

swaz er und elliu sîniu kint
whatever he and all his children

von dînem prîse geêret sint.
by thy prize honored are.

Nu sag ûf dîne wîpheit,
Now say on thy womanhood,

ist dir mîn dar rîten leit
is to-thee my thither riding grievous

od liep mîn hie belîben?
or dear my here remaining?

swar mich dîn rât wil trîben,
whither me thy counsel will drive,

dar wil ich kêrn unz an den tôt.
thither will I turn until to the death.

dîn minne ie dienst mir gebôt,
thy love ever service to-me commanded,

sît mich enpfienc dîn güete.’ 96,5
since me received thy goodness.’

nu kom daz her mit flüete.
now came the host with flood.

der künec von Marroch Ackarîn
the king of Marroch Ackarin

dâ kom mit maneger storje sîn.
there came with many-a troop his.

Terramêr der vogt von Baldac
Terramer the lord of Baldac

gewâpent gein Oransche pflac 96,10
armed toward Orange practiced

gâhens swaz er mohte.
hastening whatever he could.

swaz al des hers tohte
whatever of-all the host was-fit

beidiu ze orsse und ze fuoz
both on horse and on foot

für Oransche komen muoz.
before Orange come must.

sölch was der banier zuovart, 96,15
such was the banners’ approach,

als al die boume Spehtshart
as-if all the trees Spehtshart’s

mit zendâl wærn behangen.
with sendal were hung.

sine wurden niht enpfangen
they were not received

mit strîtes gegenreise.
with battle’s counter-sally.

Willalm der kurteise, 96,20
Willalm the courteous,

al die porte und drobe die wer
all the gate and above the rampart

bevalh er dem erlôsten her
entrusted he to-the released host

daz er in dem woldan
which he in the flock

bî den soumen dort gewan.
by the pack-horses there gained.

96,25 den gab er manlîchen trôst,
to-them gave he manly comfort,

und mante wie si wærn erlôst,
and reminded how they were released,

daz si dar an gedæhten,
that they there on should-think,

swenne in die heiden næhten.
whenever them the heathens neared.

Vil steine kint unde wîp
Many stones children and women

ûf die wer truoc, ieslîches lîp
onto the rampart bore, each-one's body

97,1 sô si meiste mohten erdinsen.
as-much-as they most could drag.

si woltenz leben verzinsen.
they wished-it life to-pay-for.

Terramêr dô selbe niht vermeit,
Terramer then himself not avoided,

ze vâre umb Oransch er reit,
for peril around Orange he rode,

97,5 sîner tohter schaden er spehte.
his daughter's harm he spied.

dô daz her gar verschehte
when the host wholly ranged

ieslîch storje mit ir kraft,
each troop with its strength,

daz si dehein rîterschaft
that they no knighthood

an zingeln unde an porten
at outworks and at gates

wedr sâhen noch enhôrten, 97,10
neither saw nor heard,

die man ze orssen solte tuon,
which one on horses should do,

Fâbors Terramêres suon
Fabors Terramer's son

gap ieslîchem künege stat
gave to-each king place

als in sîn vater ligen bat.
as him his father lie bade.

Terramêr und rois Tybalt 97,15
Terramer and king Tybalt

sich schône leiten mit gewalt
themselves fairly laid with might

für die porten gein dem palas
before the gates toward the palace

dâ Gyburc selbe ûffe was.
where Gyburc herself thereon was.

zwêne künege rîch erkant,
two kings rich known,

Pohereiz und Korsant 97,20
Pohereiz and Korsant

andersîte lâgen,
on-the-other-side lay,

die wîter ringe'npflâgen.
who wide rings-kept.

zuo den loschierte
to them quartered

manec fürste, der zimierte
many-a prince, who adorned

97,25 mit hôher koste sînen lîp,
with high cost his body,

ich wæn dâ heime durch diu wîp.
I think there at-home for the women.

Gyburc's Prayer

XXIV

Gyburc's three brothers and her son unwillingly take the fourth side, King Halzebier the fifth gate, and the heathens swear, as Tybalt bade, to besiege Orange for a year. When the assaults are checked, Gyburc leads Willalm to her chamber, unarms him, dresses his arrow wounds, and they lie together. As he sleeps on her breast, she prays to God that her life be shortened, since her father has brought such vengeance on her that seventy-two languages could not tell her losses.

Die zwuo sîten sint belegn:
The two sides are besieged:

wer sol der dritten porten pflegn,
who shall of-the third gate take-care,

diu ûz gienc gein dem plâne?
which out went toward the meadow?

der künec von Grifâne,
the king of Grifane,

98,1 und rois Margot Pozzidant,
and king Margot Pozzidant,

und der hürnîn Gorhant.
and the horn-skinned Gorhant.

die pflâgn der dritten porten.
they took-care of-the third gate.

zer vierden sîten hôrten
to-the fourth side belonged

Fâbors und Ehmereiz,
Fabors and Ehmereiz,

Morgwanz und Passigweiz,
Morgwanz and Passigweiz,

Gyburg drî bruodr und ein ir suon.
Gyburc's three brothers and one her son.

si mohtenz ungerne tuon,
they could-it unwillingly do,

die jungen künege hôh gemuot.
the young kings high spirited.

wie diu fünfte sî behuot?
how the fifth be guarded?

der pflac der künec Halzebier.
of-that took-care the king Halzebier.

noch mêr ist ir benennet mier;
still more is of-them named to-me;

Amîs und Kordeiz,
Amis and Kordeiz,

und der künec Matribleiz,
and the king Matribleiz,

und Josweiz der rîche.
and Josweiz the rich.

der lac wol dem gelîche,
he lay well to-that alike,

daz Matusales sîn vater
that Matusales his father

(die werden ûz den bœsen jater,
(the worthy-ones out-of the bad-ones weeded-he,

sô den distel ûz der sât)
as the thistle out-of the sown-field)

98,20 sîns vater helfe und des rât
his father's help and his counsel

frumt in ûz sîme lande
sent him out-of his land

über mer ân alle schande:
over sea without all disgrace:

wand er fuorte manegen helt,
for he led many-a hero,

die gein vînden wârn erwelt.
who against enemies were chosen.

98,25 drîzec künege im wârn benant,
thirty kings to-him were named,

und manec esklîr vil rîch erkant,
and many-a eskelier very rich known,

amazzûr und emerâl.
almansur and emir.

die swuoren dô sunder twâl
they swore then without delay

daz gesez ein jâr für die stat,
the siege a year before the town,

als si Tybalt durch râche bat.
as them Tybalt for vengeance bade.

99,1 Oransch wart umbelegen,
Orange was besieged,

als ob ein wochen langer regen
as if a week long rain

niht wan rîter güzze nider.
nothing but knights should-pour down.

wir hân daz selten freischet sider,
we have that seldom learned since,

daz sô manec kostebær gezelt
that so many-a costly tent

für keine stat übr al daz velt
before any town over all the field

sô rîchlîch wurde ûf geslagen.
so richly should-be up pitched.

durch sîn gemach und durh ir klagen
for his comfort and for their lament

Gyburc den marcrâven dan
Gyburc the margrave thence

fuorte, den strîtes müeden man,
led, the of-battle weary man,

dô daz ûzer her verzabelt was
when the outer host chess-checked was

und daz inre wol genas
and the inner well survived

sô daz in niemen stürmen bôt
so that them no-one storming offered

und daz gestillet was diu nôt.
and that stilled was the distress.

in ein kemnâten gienc
into a chamber went

Gyburc, diu ez sus an vienc
Gyburc, who it thus on began

mit ir âmîse.
with her lover.

da entwâpent in diu wîse.
there unarmed him the wise-one.

si schouwete an den stunden,
she looked at the hours,

ob er hete deheine wunden;
whether he had any wounds;

der si von pfîln etslîche vant.
of-which she from arrows some found.

diu künegîn mit ir blanken hant
the queen with her white hand

gelâsûrten dictam
blue-colored dittany

al blâ mit vînæger nam,
all blue with vinegar took,

99,25 und sô die bône stênt gebluot:
and as the bean stands bloomed:

die bluomen sint ouch dar zuo guot:
the flowers are also there to good:

ob der pfîl dâ wære belibn,
if the arrow there were remained,

dâ mit er wurd her ûz getribn.
there with it would-be hither out driven.

si bant in sô daz Anfortas
she bound him so that Anfortas

mit bezzerem willen nie genas,
with better will never recovered,

100,1 und umbevienc in âne nît.
and embraced him without envy.

ob dâ schimphes wære zît?
whether there of-sport were time?

waz sol ich dâ von sprechen nuo?
what shall I there of speak now?

wan ob si wolden grîfen zuo
except if they would grasp to

100,5 ze bêder sîte ir frîheit,
on both sides their freedom,

da engein si niht ze lange streit.
there against she not too long fought.

wand er was ir und si was sîn:
for he was hers and she was his:

ich grîfe ouch billîch an daz mîn.
I grasp also rightly at the mine.

si vielen sanfte ân allen haz
they fell softly without all hatred

von palmât ûf ein matraz.
from palm-silk onto a mattress.

als senft was ouch diu künegîn,
as soft was also the queen,

reht als ein jungez gänselîn
right as a young little-gosling

an dem angriffe linde.
at the touch gentle.

mit Terramêres kinde
with Terramer's child

wart lîhte ein schimpfen dâ bezalt,
was perhaps a sport there paid,

swie zornic er und Tybalt
however wrathful he and Tybalt

dort ûz ietweder wære.
there outside each were.

ich wæn dô ninder swære
I think then nowhere grievous-were

den marcrâven schuz noch slac.
to-the margrave shot nor blow.

dar nâch diu künegîn dô pflac,
there after the queen then took-care,

si dâhte an sîne arbeit
she thought on his toil

und an sîn siuftebærez leit
and on his sigh-laden sorrow

und an sîn ungefüege flust.
and on his monstrous loss.

sîn houbt sim ûf ir winster brust
his head she-him on her left breast

leit: ûf ir herzen er entslief.
laid: on her heart he fell-asleep.

mit andæhte si dô rief
with devotion she then called

hin ze ir schepfære alsus.
away to her creator thus.

'ich weiz wol, Altissimus,
'I know well, Altissimus,

daz du got der hœhste bist
that thou God the highest art

vil stæte ân allen valschen list,
very steadfast without all false cunning,

101,1 unt daz dîn wâriu Trinitât
and that thy true Trinity

vil tugenthafter bärmde hât.
very virtuous mercy has.

sît daz wir nu zerbarmen sîn,
since that we now pitiable are,

ich und der geselle mîn,
I and the companion mine,

101,5 und daz wir friunde hân verlorn,
and that we friends have lost,

die du dir selbe hâst erkorn
whom thou for-thyself self hast chosen

in der engele gesellekeit,
in the angels' companionship,

swer nâch selher helfe streit
whoever after such help fought

ûf Alischanz in dînem namn,
on Alischanz in thy name,

101,10 sich mac dîn gotheit wol schamn,
itself may thy godhead well be-ashamed,

ob wirs werden niht ergetzet,
if we-of-it become not compensated,

daz wir nu sîn geletzet
that we now are bereft

aller werltlîcher wünne,
of-all worldly bliss,

dirre man an sîme künne,
this man in his kin,

und die mir wâren undertân.
and those-who to-me were subject.

nu lern ich des ich nie began,
now learn I of-what I never began,

eins jæmerlîches trôstes gern:
of-a miserable comfort to-desire:

des müeze mich dîn güete wern;
of-that may me thy goodness grant;

daz sich kürze nu mîn lebn,
that itself shorten now my life,

sît mir mîn vater hât gegebn
since to-me my father has given

sus ungefüege râche.
thus monstrous vengeance.

zwuo und sibenzec sprâche,
two and seventy languages,

der man al der diete giht,
which one to-all the people ascribes,

die enmöhten gar volsprechen niht
they might wholly fully-speak not

mîniu flüstebæren sêr,
my loss-bringing sores,

ich enhab der flüste dannoch mêr.
unless-I have of-the loss still more.

The Decision to Ride for Help

XXV

Gyburc laments Vivianz and the friends she found loyal when she left Arabia for baptism, now lost to her father's pursuit. Her tears wake Willalm, who asks whether he should stay or ride. She tells him to ride to King Loys and his kinsmen while she holds Orange until the French come or she dies, and begs him not to forget her among the Frenchwomen. Vowing bread and water until he frees her, he rides through the heathens in Arofel's arms, taken for the king of Persia.

ey Vivîanz, beâs âmîs,
ah Vivianz, fair friend,

dînen durhliuhtigen hôhen prîs,
thy shining high prize,

wie den diu werlt beginnet klagn!
how it the world begins to-lament!

wie moht der tôt an dir betagn?
how might the death on thee dawn?

102,1 Du bist benamn der eine,
Thou art indeed the one,

den ich vor ûz sô meine,
whom I before out so mean,

daz ich enpfâhe nimmer nôt
that I receive never distress

der gelîch die mir dîn tôt
the like which to-me thy death

102,5 wil künfteclîchen werben.
will in-future procure.

wan mües ich für dich sterben!
if-only must I for thee die!

und ouch für ander friunde mîn,
and also for other friends mine,

die gein den heiden tâten schîn
who against the heathens made shine

manege rîterlîche tât,
many-a knightly deed,

daz der darbt und mangel hât 102,10
that of-them lacks and want has

mîn klagender friwent ûz erkorn.
my lamenting friend out chosen.

ey waz ist hôhes fundes vlorn!
ah what is of-high finding lost!

manges heldes triwe die ich vant,
many-a hero's faithfulness which I found,

dô ich der Arâboyse lant
when I the Arabs' land

und den künec und des kint verliez 102,15
and the king and his child left

und der touf den ungelouben stiez
and the baptism the unbelief thrust

von mir, und daz ich kristen wart.
from me, and that I Christian became.

nu hât mîns vater nâchvart
now has my father's pursuit

mir disiu herzesêr getân.
to-me these heart-sores done.

daz müese Tybalt hân verlân.' 102,20
that must Tybalt have let-pass.'

ir herzen ursprinc was sô grôz,
her heart's spring was so great,

durh diu ougen ûf ir brüste flôz
through the eyes onto her breast flowed

an des marcrâven wange
on the margrave's cheek

vil wazzers. niht ze lange
much water. not too long

102,25 er lac unz dazz in wacte.
he lay until that-it him woke.

vor schanden gar die nacte
of disgraces wholly the naked-one

und der hôhen freude ein weise,
and of-the high joy an orphan,

Willalm der kurteise
Willalm the courteous

gap der künegîn guoten trôst,
gave to-the queen good comfort,

und jach si wurde wol erlôst.
and said she should-be well released.

103,1 'Got ist helfe wol geslaht:
'God is of-help well natured:

der hât mich dicke ûz angest brâht.
he has me often out-of fear brought.

hilft mir nu sîn geleite
(if)-helps me now his escort

durhz her ân arbeite,
through-the host without toil,

103,5 sô kum ich schiere wider zuo dir.
so come I soon back to thee.

frowe, nu solt du sagen mir
lady, now shalt thou tell me

belîbens ode rîtens rât:
of-remaining or of-riding counsel:

dîn gebot ietwederz hât.'
thy command each has.'

Gîburc sprach 'dîn eines hant
Giburc spoke 'thy alone hand

mac von al der heiden lant
may from all the heathens' land

den liuten niht gestrîten:
the people not out-fight:

du muost nâch helfe rîten.
thou must after help ride.

von Rôme roys Lôys
of Rome king Loys

und dîne mâge sulen ir prîs
and thy kinsmen shall their prize

an dir nu lâzen schînen.
in thee now let shine.

ich belîb in disen pînen
I remain in these pains

sô daz ich halde wol ze wer
so that I hold well for defense

Oransch vor der heiden her
Orange against the heathens' host

unz an der Franzoysære komn,
until to the Frenchmen's coming,

oder daz ich hân den tôt genomn,
or that I have the death taken,

ob noch grœzer wære ir maht.'
if yet greater were their might.'

der tac het ende und was nu naht.
the day had end and was now night.

der marcrâve alêrst enbeiz
the margrave first-of-all ate

gâhes pitît mangeiz:
hastily little meal:

103,25 daz truogen juncfrouwen dar.
that bore young-ladies thither.

sîn harnasch lac bî im gar:
his armor lay by him wholly:

snellîch er wart gewâpent drîn.
quickly he was armed therein.

mit al der zimierde sîn
with all the crest his

unlange er danne fürbaz gienc,
not-long he then further went,

unz in diu künginne umbevienc.
until him the queen embraced.

104,1 Gyburc sprach ‘hêrre markîs,
Gyburc spoke ‘lord marquis,

lâz dînen erwelten hôhen prîs
let thy chosen high prize

an mir nu wesen stæte,
toward me now be steadfast,

daz du durch niemens ræte
that thou for no-one’s counsels

104,5 wenkest an mir armen,
waverest toward me poor-one,

und lâz mich dir erbarmen.
and let me thee move-to-pity.

denke an dîne werdekeit.
think on thy worthiness.

ich weiz wol daz dir wære bereit
I know well that to-thee were ready

in Francrîche manec wîp,
in France many-a woman,

sô dazs ir êre unde ir lîp 104,10
so that-she her honor and her body

mit minne an dich wante:
with love to thee turned:

ob dan dîn güete erkante
if then thy goodness recognized

waz ich durch dich hân erliten,
what I for thee have suffered,

der wer wurde an mich gebiten.
of-the defense would-be in me waited.

ob die clâren Franzoysinne 104,15
if the bright Frenchwomen

dir nâch dienst bieten minne,
to-thee after service offer love,

daz si dich wellen ergetzen mîn,
that they thee will compensate for-me,

sô denke an die triwe dîn.
so think on the faithfulness thine.

und ob dir iemen gebe untrôst
and if to-thee anyone give discomfort

daz ich nimmer werd erlôst, 104,20
that I never become released,

den lâz von dir rîten:
him let from thee ride:

füer die getürren strîten.
lead those-who dare fight.

und denke waz ich durch dich liez,
and think what I for thee left,

daz man mich ze Arâbe hiez
that one me at Araby called

al der fürsten frouwe. 104,25
all the princes' lady.

dennoch was ich in der schouwe,
still was I in the beholding,

daz man mir clârheite jach,
that one to-me of-brightness declared,

friunt und vîent, swer mich sach.
friend and foe, whoever me saw.

du möhts mich noch wol lîden,
thou mightst me still well suffer,

und solt uns kumber mîden.'
and shalt us affliction avoid.'

105,1 Er gap des fîanze,
He gave of-that surety,

daz diu jâmers lanze
that the misery's lance

sîn herze immer twunge,
his heart ever should-constrain,

unz im sô wol gelunge
until to-him so well should-succeed

105,5 daz er si dâ erlôste
that he her there should-release

mit manlîchem trôste,
with manly comfort,

und lobt ir dennoch fürbaz
and promised her still further

daz er durch liebe noch durch haz
that he for love nor for hatred

nimmer niht verzerte
never anything should-consume

105,10 von spîse diu in nerte,
of food which him nourished,

niht wan wazzer unde brôt,
nothing but water and bread,

ê daz er ir bekanten nôt
before that he her known distress

mit swertes strîte erwante.
with sword's battle should-turn-away.

alsus in von ir sante
thus him from her sent

Gyburc diu künegîn. 105,15
Gyburc the queen.

dar wart gezogen Volatîn.
thither was drawn Volatin.

al weinde wart er ûz verlân,
all weeping was he out let,

diu porte sanfte ûf getân.
the gate gently up done.

nu was diu schiltwache
now was the shield-watch

al umb daz her mit krache, 105,20
all around the host with crash,

mit manger sunderstorje grôz.
with many-a separate-troop great.

der marcrâve anderstunt genôz
the margrave another-time profited

Arofels wâpen diu er truoc.
Arofel's arms which he bore.

des hers im widerreit genuoc:
of-the host to-him rode-against enough:

si sprâchen her unde dâ 105,25
they spoke hither and there

'diz ist der künec von Persîâ.'
'this is the king of Persia.'

in nert ouch daz er heidensch sprach.
him saved also that he heathen spoke.

unverzagt er marcte unde sach
undaunted he marked and saw

eine strâze dier rekande,
a road which-he recognized,

gein der Franzoyser lande.
toward the Frenchmen's land.

BOOK III

Terramer's Vow

XXVI

For five days the heathen host keeps arriving at Orange, mourning Arofel, Thesereiz, and its other dead. Learning that twenty-three kings are dead, Terramer laments that a handful of knights has nearly undone him and scorns the Christian faith: a god who died cannot be three in one. He vows to give Arabel a shameful death, by which Jesus shall be dishonored, and his men storm Orange again and again to avenge their lords and kinsmen on Gyburc, but its defenders are resolute.

Daz her für Oransche pflac 106,1
The host before Orange practiced

komens unz an den fünften tac:
coming until to the fifth day:

dennoch fuorens allez dar;
still went-they all thither;

manec siuftebæriu schar,
many-a sigh-laden company,

den hêrrn und mâge wârn belegn 106,5
whose lords and kinsmen were laid-low

tôt: die muosen jâmers pflegn.
dead: they must of-misery take-care.

si jâhn, Apolle und Tervigant
they said, Apollo and Tervigant

und Mahmet wærn geschant
and Mahmet were disgraced

an ir gotlîchem prîse.
in their divine prize.

Terramêr der wîse
Terramer the wise

dicke vrâgete mære,
often asked tidings,

wiez dâ ergangen wære:
how-it there gone were:

daz moht er ein niht gar gesehen.
that could he alone not wholly see.

swaz dâ wunders was geschehen
whatever there of-wonder was happened

an den hôh rîchen werden,
to the high rich worthy-ones,

gevohten ûf der erden
fought on the earth

wart nie sô schadehafter strît
was never so harmful battle

sît her von anegenges zît.
since hither from beginning's time.

Arofel von Persyâ
Arofel of Persia

in maneger zungen sprâche aldâ
in many-a tongue's speech there

wart beklagt ouch Tesereiz,
was lamented also Tesereiz,

Pynel und Poufameiz
Pynel and Poufameiz

und der milte Nöupatrîs,
and the generous Noupatris,

Eskelabôn der manegen prîs
Eskelabon who many-a prize

bezalte durh wîbe lôn.
paid for women's reward.

von Boctân rois Talimôn
of Boctan king Talimon

wart mit den anderen ouch geklagt.
was with the others also lamented.

Turpîûn der unverzagt,
Turpiun the undaunted,

der künec von Falturmîê,
the king of Falturmie,

des tôt der heidenschaft tet wê.
whose death to-the heathendom did woe.

Dô si den schaden gewisten 107,1
When they the harm knew

und mit der wârheit misten
and with the truth measured

drîer und zweinzec künege die dâ tôt
three and twenty kings who there dead

wârn belegen, Terramêres nôt
were laid-low, Terramer's distress

pflac dô decheiner vîre. 107,5
took then no holiday.

amazzûr und eskelîre
almansurs and eskeliers

und emerâle ungezalt,
and emirs uncounted,

der lac sô vil dâ tôt gevalt,
of-them lay so many there dead felled,

dazz âne prüeven gar beleip.
that-it without reckoning wholly remained.

diu flust dô Terramêren treip 107,10
the loss then Terramer drove

in sô herzebære klage,
into so heart-felt lament,

dês wære erstorben lîhte ein zage.
of-which would-have died perhaps a coward.

dô sprach er trûreclîche
then spoke he mournfully

'swer giht daz ich sî rîche,
'whoever says that I be rich,

der hât mich unreht erkant,
he has me wrongly known,

swie al der heidenschefte lant
however all the heathendom's lands

mit dienste stên ze mîme gebote.
with service stand at my command.

ich mac der kristenheite gote
I may to-the Christendom's God

alêrst nu grôzes wunders jehen:
first-of-all now of-great wonder declare:

selh wunder ist an mir geschehen,
such wonder is to me happened,

daz ein hant vol rîter mich
that a hand full of-knights me

hât nâch entworht durch den gerich,
has nearly undone for the vengeance,

daz ich den ungelouben rach,
that I the unbelief avenged,

den man von mîme kinde sprach,
which one of my child spoke,

Arabeln diu Tybalde enpfuor.
Arabel who from-Tybalt escaped.

ûf mînen goten ich dô swuor,
on my gods I then swore,

daz ich den goten ir êre
that I to-the gods their honor

so geræch daz nimmer mêre
so should-avenge that never more

dehein mîn kint des zæme
any my child of-that should-befit

daz ez den touf genæme
that it the baptism should-take

durch Jêsum, der selbe truoc 108,1
for Jesus, who himself bore

ein kriuze dâ man in an sluoc
a cross where one him on struck

mit drîn nageln durch sîn verch.
with three nails through his life.

mîn geloube stüend entwerch,
my faith would-stand awry,

ob ich geloubte daz der starp 108,5
if I believed that he died

und in dem tôde leben erwarp
and in the death life won

und doch sîn eines wæren drî.
and yet of-his one were three.

ist mir mîn alt geloube bî,
(if)-is to-me my old faith by,

sô wæn ich daz sîn Trinitât
so think I that his Trinity

an mir deheine volge hât. 108,10
in me no following has.

er mac wol guote rîter hân.
he may well good knights have.

des enkalt mîn veter Balygân,
for-that paid my uncle Baligan,

der mit dem keiser Karle vaht,
who with the emperor Charles fought,

dô al der heidenschefte maht
when all the heathendom's might

von dem entschumpfieret wart.
by him discomfited was.

für wâr nu ist mîn hervart
for true now is my campaign

kreftiger und wîter brâht.
mightier and wider brought.

ich wil und hân mir des erdâht,
I will and have me of-that bethought,

daz ich manege unkunde nôt
that I many-a strange distress

Arabeln gebe und smæhen tôt,
to-Arabel give and contemptible death,

des Jêsus gunêret sî:
by-which Jesus dishonored be:

der wille ist mîme herzen bî.'
the will is to-my heart by.'

die zem êrsten kômen unde ouch sider,
those-who at-the first came and also since,

die wolten Oransche nider
they would Orange down

mit sturme dicke brechen,
with storm often break,

hêrrn und mâge rechen
lords and kinsmen avenge

an Gyburge der künegin.
on Gyburc the queen.

si heten werlîchen sin,
they had warlike mind,

die der stet dort inne pflâgen,
who of-the town there within took-care,

swie zornic de ûzern lâgen.
however wrathful the outer-ones lay.

Gyburc's Defiance, and the Toll at Orleans

XXVII

Terramer offers Gyburc three deaths; she scorns them and says the margrave has gone to a tournament and will soon be back. When storming fails, Terramer builds siege engines, and Gyburc, her garrison nearly all dead, binds helmets on her dead and lines the battlements with shields. At Orleans Willalm, safely through the heathens, lodges in a poor house on bread and water. When the judge demands toll, Willalm beheads him, hews through the townspeople, and rides toward Munleun.

Der marcrâve ist durh si komn 109,1
The margrave is through them come

âne schaden. nu wirt vernomn
without harm. now becomes heard

alêrst wiez umbe triwe vert.
first-of-all how-it about faithfulness goes.

bon âventiure in het ernert,
good adventure him had saved,

und ouch Gyburge sælekeit. 109,5
and also Gyburc's blessedness.

beide er bleip unde reit:
both he remained and rode:

in selben hin truoc Volatîn,
him self away bore Volatin,

Gyburc behielt daz herze sîn.
Gyburc kept the heart his.

ouch fuor ir herze ûf allen wegen
also went her heart on all ways

mit im: wer sol Oransche pflegen? 109,10
with him: who shall of-Orange take-care?

der wehsel rehte was gefrumt:
the exchange rightly was made:

ir herze hin ze friwenden kumt,
her heart away to friends comes,

sîn herze sol sich vînden wern,
his heart shall itself against-enemies defend,

Gyburge vor untrôste nern.
Gyburc from discomfort save.

109,15 nu solt ir herze senfte hân:
now should her heart ease have:

dô was in beiden trûren lân.
then was to-them both mourning left.

Gyburc Oransch und ouch ir lebn
Gyburc Orange and also her life

ir vater sô niht wolde gebn,
her father so not would give,

daz er si selben tôte
that he her self killed

109,20 und drab die kristen nôte
and therefrom the Christians constrained

den ungelouben mêren.
the unbelief to-increase.

er bôt ir driu dinc zêren,
he offered her three things to-honor,

daz si der einz næm mit der wal;
that she of-them one should-take with the choice;

daz si in dem mere viel ze tal,
that she in the sea fell to valley,

109,25 umb ir kel ein swæren stein,
around her throat a heavy stone,

ode daz ir fleisch unde ir bein
or that her flesh and her bones

ze pulver wurden gar verbrant,
to powder were wholly burned,

od daz si Tybaldes hant
or that her Tybalt's hand

solte hâhn an einen ast.
should hang on a branch.

si sprach ‘der wol gezogene gast
she spoke ‘the well bred guest

erbôt ie zuht der wirtin. 110,1
offered ever courtesy to-the hostess.

war tuostu, vater, dînen sin,
whither dost-thou, father, thy mind,

daz du mir teilest selhiu spil
that thou to-me dealest such games

der ich niht kan noch enwil?
of-which I not can nor will?

ich mac wol bezzer schanze weln. 110,5
I may well better chance choose.

mir sulen die Franzoyser zeln:
to-me shall the Frenchmen count:

diene lâzent mir niht übersagen.’
they let to-me not be-outvoted.’

innen des begund ez tagen:
meanwhile that began it to-dawn:

diu rede ergienc bî einer naht
the speech went-forth by a night

und wart sît anders volbrâht. 110,10
and was later otherwise fulfilled.

si vrâgeten ‘wa ist der markîs?’
they asked ‘where is the marquis?’

si sprach ‘der hât durch sînen prîs
she spoke ‘he has for his prize

einen turney genomn,
a tournament taken,

und wil dâ her wider komn
and will there hither back come

schiere durch den willen mîn:
soon for the will mine:

der sol vor disen porten sîn.
he shall before these gates be.

dâ mac man schouwen wer daz velt
there may one behold who the field

behabt durh der minne gelt.
holds for the love's payment.

er hât nu liute ein teil verlorn,
he has now people a part lost,

und ist der schade noch unverkorn.
and is the harm still unforgiven.

ir gunêrten Sarrazîne,
you dishonored Saracens,

etlîche mâge mîne,
some kinsmen mine,

ir welt hie beiten grôzer nôt.
you will here await great distress.

iu kumt der zwivalte tôt:
to-you comes the twofold death:

doch ir mir bietet tôde drî,
though you to-me offer deaths three,

die zwêne sint iu nâhen bî;
the two are to-you near by;

diss kurzen lebens ende,
of-this short life's end,

und der sêle unledec gebende
and of-the soul unloosed bond

vor iwerem gote Tervigant,
before your god Tervigant,

der iuch für tôren hât erkant.'
who you for fools has known.'

Dô Terramêr vil rehte ersach 111,1
When Terramer very rightly saw

daz decheines sturmes ungemach
that no storm's discomfort

Oransche möht ertwingen,
Orange might force,

dô si niht wolten dingen,
when they not would treat,

dô hiez er wurken antwerc. 111,5
then bade he work engines.

ez wære tal ode berc,
it were valley or mountain,

alumbe an allen sîten
all-around on all sides

er wolt die stat erstrîten.
he would the town win-by-fighting.

drîboc und mangen,
trebuchets and mangonels,

ebenhœh ûf siulen langen, 111,10
level-high on pillars long,

igel, katzen, pfetrære,
hedgehogs, cats, petraries,

swie vil ieslîches wære
however many of-each were

ûf Gyburge schaden geworht,
for Gyburc's harm wrought,

daz het si doch ze mâze ervorht.
that had she yet in measure feared.

nu lac alumbe an der wer 111,15
now lay all-around on the rampart

almeistic tôt ir kleine her.
almost dead her small host.

eine kunst si dô gewan,
a skill she then gained,

dazs ieslîchem tôten man
that-she on-each dead man

hiez helm ze houbte binden.
bade helm on head bind.

111,20 swaz man schilt moht vinden,
whatever one of-shields could find,

si wæren niuwe oder alt,
they were new or old,

dâ mit die zinne wârn bestalt.
there with the battlements were set.

diene wancten niht durh zageheit:
they wavered not for cowardice:

den selben was lieb unde leit
to-them same was dear and grievous

111,25 iewederz al gelîche.
each all alike.

der marcrâf sorgen rîche,
the margrave of-cares rich,

swie balde er von Gyburge streich,
however quickly he from Gyburc swept,

sîn gedanc ir nie gesweich:
his thought from-her never failed:

der was ir zOransche bî.
it was to-her at-Orange by.

ob ich nu niht sô sinnic sî,
if I now not so wise be,

112,1 daz ich gesagen künne ir nôt,
that I tell can her distress,

sô lâtz iu'rbarmen doch durch got.
so let-it you-move-to-pity yet for God.

ich enhân der zal niht vernomn,
I have the number not heard,

wie maneges tages wære komn
how many-a day's were come

ze Orlens der marcrâve unverzagt. 112,5
to Orleans the margrave undaunted.

sîn herberge ist mir gesagt,
his lodging is to-me told,

daz er die schœnen stat vermeit
that he the fair town avoided

und eine smæhe gazzen reit
and a contemptible lane rode

vor dem graben in ein hiuselîn,
before the moat into a little-house,

aldâ sîn ors Volatîn 112,10
there-where his horse Volatin

sich kûme ûf gerihte.
itself barely up straightened.

zem jâmer er sich pflihte.
to-the misery he himself pledged.

im was al hôher muot gelegn:
to-him was all high spirit laid-down:

des wolt er sus noch sô niht pflegn.
of-that would he thus nor so not take-care.

er schuof dem orse sîn gemach, 112,15
he provided for-the horse its comfort,

und ouch dem wirte, daz der jach
and also for-the host, that he declared

dazz im nie gast sô wol erbôt.
that-it him never guest so well offered.

niht wan wazzer unde brôt
nothing but water and bread

im selbem er ze spîse nam.
for-him self he as food took.

112,20 sîn freude was an kreften lam.
his joy was in strength lame.

smorgens fruo huob er sich dan.
in-the-morning early lifted he himself thence.

nu was ein gewaltic man
now was a powerful man

in der stat dâ für bekant
in the town there for known

daz imz geleite was benant:
that to-him-the escort was named:

112,25 von dem künege het er daz.
from the king had he that.

der wolt kêren sînen haz
he would turn his hatred

ûf den marcrâven âne nôt;
upon the margrave without need;

der rehte gegenrede im bôt.
who right counter-speech to-him offered.

er sprach 'ich pin wol zolles vrî.
he spoke 'I am well of-toll free.

mir gêt hie last noch soume bî:
to-me goes here load nor packs by:

113,1 ich pin ein rîter, als ir seht.
I am a knight, as you see.

ob ir decheinen schaden speht,
if you any harm spy,

den ich dem lande habe getân,
which I to-the land have done,

des sult ir mich enkelten lân.
of-that shall you me pay let.

die sât ich pî den strâzen meit,
the sown-field I by the roads avoided,

al der diete slâ ich reit:
of-all the people track I rode:

diu solt der werlde gemeine sîn.
it should to-the world common be.

mir selben und dem orse mîn
for-me self and to-the horse mine

hân ich vergolten unser nar.'
have I paid our food.'

der rihtær und die sînen gar
the judge and the his-ones wholly

heten in vaste umbehabt:
had him firmly surrounded:

in allen sîten zuo gedrabt
on all sides to trotted

diu comûne von der stat
the commune from the town

kom, als si der rihter bat.
came, as them the judge bade.

der sprach, er müeste zollen
he spoke, he must pay-toll

mit alsô grôzem vollen,
with so great fullness,

daz er des schaden enpfünde.
that he of-the harm should-feel.

ez was iedoch ein sünde,
it was yet a sin,

daz man in niht rîten liez.
that one him not ride let.

der rihtær die sînen hiez
the judge the his-ones bade

daz si in næmen in den zoum.
that they him should-take by the bridle.

er sprach ‘diz ors decheinen soum
he spoke ‘this horse no pack

treit, wan mich und disen schilt.
bears, except me and this shield.

ez wirt ê an den ort gespilt.’
it becomes first to the end played.’

113,25 daz swert muos et ab her für.
the sword must just off hither forth.

den zol ich an der næhsten tür
the toll I at the next door

durch niemen gerne holte,
for no-one gladly would-fetch,

den der rihtær dâ dolte:
which the judge there suffered:

des houbtes er dô kürzer wart.
of-the head he then shorter became.

des marcrâven durchvart
the margrave’s passage

114,1 enpfienc vil manegen swertes swanc:
received very many-a sword’s swing:

ouch macht er rûm dâ was gedranc.
also made he room where was throng.

sus muos er houwen durh die stat,
thus must he hew through the town,

liute und ors, alsölhen pfat
people and horses, such path

114,5 daz sîn strâze wart al wît.
that his road became all wide.

vaste hardiert in der strît:
firmly assailed him the battle:

manec wunt man wider von im flôch.
many-a wounded man back from him fled.

die sturmglocke man dô zôch.
the storm-bell one then pulled.

es solt diu stat laster hân,
of-it should the town reproach have,

daz si gein dem einem man 114,10
that it against the one man

des gerüeftes sich enbarten.
of-the alarm itself bared.

mit rotte si sich scharten.
with troop they themselves ranked.

nu was ouch er ze velde komn:
now was also he to field come:

des wart sît schade von im vernomn.
of-that was later harm from him heard.

si zogten nâch ûf sîner slâ, 114,15
they drew after on his track,

dise hie, die andern dâ:
these here, the others there:

er stapfte in sanfte unflühtic vor.
he stepped them gently unfleeing before.

unz wider gegen dem bürge tor
until back toward the castle gate

tets în sîn umbe kêren:
did-them in his around turning:

des begund ir schade sich mêren. 114,20
of-that began their harm itself to-increase.

wider wart geworfen Volatîn:
back was thrown Volatin:

Monschoy der krîe sîn
Monschoy the cry his

wart mit ruofe niht geswign.
was with calling not silenced.

schiere der poynder was gedign
soon the charge was advanced

unz wider gein der porten: 114,25
until back toward the gate:

si fluhen an al den orten.
they fled at all the places.

het er sünde niht ervorht,
had he sin not feared,

dâ wær von im der schade geworht,
there were from him the harm wrought,

des den werlîchen ie gezam.
which to-the warlike-ones ever befitted.

einem er ein lanzen nam:
from-one he a lance took:

115,1 sîn strît begund in leiden.
his battle began to-them to-grieve.

wider in die scheiden
back into the scabbard

daz swert wart gestecket.
the sword was stuck.

in die stat getrecket
into the town dragged

115,5 wart dâ von al dem comûn.
was there of all the commune.

dô zogt er ûz gein Munlêûn.
then drew he out toward Munleun.

Arnalt

XXVIII

Arnalt of Gerunde, Willalm's brother, hears the judge's widow lament that a knight without escort has killed her husband and escaped. Scorning a toll on a knight, Arnalt still rides after him for the king, his sister's husband, with his men and the townspeople, and Willalm unhorses him. When Arnalt names himself, Willalm reveals himself, and Arnalt knows his voice. Willalm refuses his kiss, keeping it for Gyburc, and says that fighting his brother he fought himself.

Arnalt fîz cons de Narbôn
Arnalt son of-the-count de Narbonne

erhôrt den jæmerlîchen dôn
heard the miserable tune

den man in al den gazzen rief.
which one in all the lanes cried.

dennoch lag er unde slief. 115,10
still lay he and slept.

er wacte die vor im lâgen,
he woke those-who before him lay,

vil rîter die dennoch pflâgen
many knights who still took

mit slâfe gemach, ieslîches lîp.
with sleep comfort, each body.

nu kom des rihtæres wîp:
now came the judge's woman:

ûfen teppich viel diu für in nider, 115,15
on-the carpet fell she before him down,

dâ nâch klagte si im sider
there after lamented she to-him since

des küneges laster unde ir nôt.
the king's reproach and her distress.

ir man der wære belegen tôt
her husband he were laid-low dead

'von eime der ân geleite vert:
'by one who without escort goes:

115,20 der hât sich al der diet erwert,
he has himself of-all the people defended,

daz er ist ungevangen hin.
that he is uncaptured away.

ouwê jæmerlîch gewin,
alas miserable gain,

den uns sîn zol hât lâzen
which to-us his toll has left

von des rœmschen küneges strâzen!'
from the Roman king's road!'

115,25 zer frouwen sprach der grâve Arnalt
to-the lady spoke the count Arnalt

'wer mac daz sîn, der mit gewalt
'who may that be, who with might

iu den schaden hât getân?
to-you the harm has done?

frouwe, ist ez ein koufman,
lady, (if)-is it a merchant,

sô möht er wol geleites gern
so might he well of-escort desire

und dar umbe sîner miete wern:
and there for his payment grant:

116,1 dem koufschatz ist der zol gezilt.'
to-the merchandise is the toll set.'

si sprâchen, er fuort einen schilt,
they spoke, he bore a shield,

die mit der frouwen kômen dar.
who with the lady came thither.

'sîn harnasch ist nâh roste var:
'his armor is nearly rust colored:

doch wart an rîter nie bekant 116,5
yet was on knight never known

über al der Franzoyser lant
over all the Frenchmen's land

wâppenroc sô kostlîch,
tabard so costly,

des blic der sunnen ist gelîch:
whose gleam to-the sun is alike:

als ist der schilt untz kursît.
so is the shield and-the surcoat.

Munschoye wart geschrît, 116,10
Munschoye was cried,

dô er uns flühtic wider în
when he us fleeing back in

tet: daz was diu krîe sîn.'
did: that was the cry his.'

der grâve sprach 'gunêrten,
the count spoke 'dishonored-ones,

ir alle die daz lêrten
you all who that taught

daz ir für die koufman 116,15
that you for the merchants

decheinen ritter soldet hân!
any knight should have!

waz zolles solt ein ritter gebn?
what of-toll should a knight give?

het er iu allen iwer lebn
had he from-you all your life

genomen, daz solt ich wênic klagn.
taken, that should I little lament.

ich muoz in durch den künec jagn, 116,20
I must him for the king hunt,

bî dem mîn swester krône treit.'
by whom my sister crown bears.'

harnasch wart balde an in geleit.
armor was quickly on him laid.

von al den sînen wart vernomn,
by all the his-ones was heard,

die werden müesen zorsen komn,
the worthy-ones must on-horse come,

116,25 ritter, sarjande.
knights, sergeants.

si wolten zeinem pfande
they would as-a pledge

den marcrâven dâ behabn:
the margrave there hold:

solten sichs die wunden labn,
should themselves-of-it the wounded refresh,

daz er in wider sante,
that he them back sent,

decheinen durst daz wante.
no thirst that turned-away.

117,1 Arnalt sprach ‘hêrre, wer daz sî,
Arnalt spoke ‘lord, who that be,

dem wonet des küneges krîe bî,
to-him dwells the king's cry by,

dâ mit der keiser Karl vaht,
there with the emperor Charles fought,

der si hât gerbet unde brâht
who it has inherited and brought

117,5 ûf sînen sun derz rîche hât
onto his son who-the realm has

und noch die krîe niemen lât
and still the cry no-one lets

wan den die sîner marke war
except those who of-his march heed

nement gein anderr künege schar.
take against other kings' company.

er wil sich uns dermit entsagen,
he will himself from-us there-with free,

der wîse den wir müezen jagen, 117,10
the wise-one whom we must hunt,

daz in diu krîe vriste.
that him the cry protect.

wil er mit sölhem liste
(if)-will he with such cunning

an uns hie prîs hân bezalt,
on us here prize have won,

er vliehe velt oder walt,
he flee field or forest,

dar sul wir kêren ûf sîn spor.' 117,15
thither shall we turn onto his track.'

Arnalt fuor dan den sînen vor.
Arnalt went thence the his-ones before.

swer stab oder stangen truoc,
whoever staff or poles bore,

zors und ze fuoz was der genuoc,
on-horse and on foot was of-them enough,

et al diu comunîe.
just all the commune.

niht halp sô manegiu bîe 117,20
not half so many bees

möhten tœten einen starken bern.
might kill a strong bear.

der fluht si kunde niht gewern
of-the flight them could not grant

von Provenz der markîs:
of Provence the marquis:

ir jagen moht in keinen wîs
their hunting could him in-no way

an flühtic schûften bringen. 117,25
to fleeing gallops bring.

nu hôrt erz velt erklingen:
now heard he-the field resound:

an der selben stunde
at the same hour

Arnalden von Gerunde
Arnalt of Gerunde

der marcrâve komen sach.
the margrave come saw.

in sîme herzen er dô jach,
in his heart he then declared,

118,1 die rehten wærn ze velde komn.
the right-ones were to field come.

ouch het sich Arnalt für genomn
also had himself Arnalt before taken

wol vierzec poynder oder mêr:
well forty charges or more:

gein dem tet er widerkêr
against him made he return

118,5 mit kunstlîchem kalopeiz.
with skillful gallop.

ieweder sînen puneiz
each his charge

von rabîne nâher treip:
from gallop nearer drove:

enweder sper dâ ganz beleip.
neither spear there whole remained.

Arnaldes satel wüeste lac,
Arnalt's saddle empty lay,

118,10 wand er vor sînem bruoder pflac
for he before his brother took

gevelles hinderz castelân.
fall behind-the castilian.

daz was im selten ê getân.
that was to-him seldom before done.

er hetes ouch dennoch wol enborn:
he had-it also still well forgone:

dem marcrâven was sô zorn,
to-the margrave was so wrathful,

daz er in gerne het erslagn. 118,15
that he him gladly would-have slain.

dennoch der andern nâch jagn
still of-the others after hunting

mit helfe im alze verre was:
with help to-him all-too far was:

niht wan vrâgens er genas,
nothing but of-asking he survived,

und daz der unverzagete
and that the undaunted-one

sich nante und rehte sagete 118,20
himself named and rightly said

'ich pinz der grâve Arnalt.
'I am-it the count Arnalt.

wer ist der mich hie hât gevalt?
who is he-who me here has felled?

der mags wol immer haben prîs.'
he may-it well ever have prize.'

'Willalm der markîs
'Willalm the marquis

bin ich,' sprach er. 'bruoder mîn, 118,25
am I,' spoke he. 'brother mine,

hie ensol niht mêr gestriten sîn.'
here shall not more fought be.'

er vienc sîn ors und zôhz im dar.
he caught his horse and drew-it to-him thither.

Arnalt nam an der stimme war
Arnalt took at the voice heed

daz ez der marcrâve was:
that it the margrave was:

er zôch in nider ûfez gras
he drew him down onto-the grass

119,1 und wolt in vil geküsset hân.
and would him much kissed have.

'bruoder, daz sol sîn verlân:'
'brother, that shall be forgone:'

sô sprach der getriuwe.
so spoke the faithful-one.

'ich leb in sölher riuwe,
'I live in such rue,

119,5 daz mir senfter wære der tôt.
that to-me gentler were the death.

den rehten kus ich liez in nôt
the right kiss I left in distress

an Gyburge ûf Oransche nuo.
on Gyburc on Orange now.

die wîle ir gêt sölh angest zuo,
the while to-her goes such fear to,

sô lâz ich mir niht werden kunt
so let I to-me not become known

119,10 daz mannes oder wîbes munt
that man's or woman's mouth

an den mînen rüere.
on the mine touch.

sô swære sorge ich füere:
so heavy care I lead:

daz si mîn ors her getruoc,
that it my horse hither bore,

dô hetez ungemach genuoc.
then had-it discomfort enough.

119,15 waz wunders kan mir got beschern!
what of-wonder can to-me God allot!

hie muos ich mich mîn selbes wern,
here must I myself of-my self defend,

dô ich zer tjoste gein dir reit:
when I to-the joust toward thee rode:
mit mir selbem ich dâ streit.'
with me self I there fought.'

The News of the Court at Munleun

XXIX

Willalm tells Arnalt of Mile's and Vivianz's deaths, the defeat, and the siege. Arnalt weeps and tells of a court at Munleun in three days, where their parents Heimrich and Irmschart and four brothers will come. Willalm refuses to ride back with him, hoping the queen will help, and asks him to rouse their friends. Arnalt keeps his men from the chase and sends messengers. At evening unknowing monks care for Willalm; his Persian shield and Arofel's finery are described.

Arnalt sprach 'du sagest al wâr:
Arnalt spoke 'thou sayest all true:
mîn lîp mîn selbes lîbe vâr 119,20
my body to-my own body danger
hât umbekant erzeiget.
has unknowing shown.
mir was dîn kunft versweiget,
to-me was thy coming kept-silent,
als ein bracke am seile.
as a hound on-the leash.
man mac wol zeime teile
one may well as-one part
unser zweier lîbe zeln. 119,25
of-us two bodies count.
swer zwei herze wolde weln,
whoever two hearts would choose,
dern funde niht wan einez hie.
he would-find nothing but one here.

mîn herze was dîn herze ie:
my heart was thy heart ever:

dîn herze sol mîn herze sîn.
thy heart shall my heart be.

ouwê hêrre bruoder mîn,
alas lord brother mine,

120,1 lâz hœren unde schouwen,
let hear and see,

mîner swester, mîner frouwen,
my sister, my lady,

waz wirret Gyburge der süezen?
what troubles Gyburc the sweet?

mac mîn helfe daz gebüezen?
may my help that amend?

120,5 daz hât si wol verschuldet her,
that has she well deserved hitherto,

daz ieslîch werder Franzoys wer
that each worthy Frenchman grant

sînes dienstes zir gebote:
of-his service to-her command:

man mac an ir gedienen gote
one may in her serve God

und unseres landes êre;
and our land's honor;

120,10 und durch die überkêre
and for the turning-over

die si tet gein dem toufe.
which she made toward the baptism.

du hâst mit tiurem koufe
thou hast with costly purchase

ir minne etswenne errungen.
her love once won.

mîne mâg die jungen,
my kinsmen the young-ones,

die si hât ûzen schalen erzogen 120,15
whom she has out-of-the shells reared

und die Francrîche sint entflogen,
and who from-France are flown,

sint die bî ir in der nôt?'
are they by her in the distress?'

der marcrâve im nante tôt
the margrave to-him named dead

Mylen unde Vivîanz,
Myle and Vivianz,

und wie der buhurt ûf Alischanz 120,20
and how the buhurt on Alischanz

sich bêde huop unde schiet,
itself both began and parted,

und waz dô Terramêr geriet
and what then Terramer counseled

daz Oransch wart umbelegn,
that Orange was besieged,

und waz er angest muose pflegn
and what he of-fear must take-care

ê daz er durh si dan gereit. 120,25
before that he through them thence rode.

diz bekande herzeleit
this known heart's-sorrow

und disiu jæmerlîchen dinc
and these miserable things

zucten sherzen ursprinc
drew the-heart's spring

Arnalde ûf durch d'ougen sîn.
to-Arnalt up through the-eyes his.

er sprach 'ouwê der mâge mîn,
he spoke 'alas of-the kinsmen mine,

die mir tôt sint gevalt! 121,1
who for-me dead are felled!

wer hât den künec Tybalt
who has the king Tybalt

sô kreftic her über brâht?
so mighty host over brought?

ode wie hâstu des gedâht
or how hast-thou of-that thought

121,5 daz wir Gyburg ze helfe komn,
that we to-Gyburc as help come,

sît wir den schaden hân genomn,
since we the harm have taken,

daz unser flust niht wahse baz?
that our loss not grow better?

al den ich diens nie vergaz,
all whom I of-service never forgot,

die werdent drumbe nu gemant.
they become for-it now reminded.

121,10 al unser art wære geschant,
all our nature were disgraced,

ob Gyburc wurde enphüeret dir.
if Gyburc should-be carried-off from-thee.

dîn samenunge nenne mir,
thy gathering name to-me,

und rît mit mîme râte
and ride with my counsel

nâch starker helfe drâte.
after strong help quickly.

121,15 al dîne flust den fürsten klage.
all thy loss to-the princes lament.

von hiute an dem dritten tage
from today on the third day

ein hof ze Munleûn ist gelegt,
a court at Munleun is laid,

der al die Franzoys erwegt:
which all the Frenchmen stirs:

dar kumt ein verriu zuovart.
thither comes a distant approach.

Heimrîch und Irmschart, 121,20
Heimrich and Irmschart,

diu zwei von den wir sîn erborn,
the two from whom we are born,

die hât der künec dâ erkorn
them has the king there chosen

ze êrn den hôchgezîten sîn.
for honor of-the feasts his.

ouch sulen vier bruoder mîn
also shall four brothers mine

mit unserr muoter komen dar. 121,25
with our mother come thither.

ich wæne daz die grœsten schar
I think that the greatest company

Heimrîs mîn vater bringe.
Heimris my father bring.

nu gihes für hôh gelinge:
now declare-it for high success:

du vindest vil der fürsten dâ.
thou findest many of-the princes there.

swâ mir benennet wirt dîn slâ,
wherever to-me named becomes thy track,

dâ rît ich vor ode nâch. 122,1
there ride I before or after.

nu lâ dir von mir niht sô gâch,
now let thee from me not so haste,

du enrîtes mit mir wider în,
unless-thou ride with me back in,

und ziuch von dir daz harnasch dîn,
and draw from thee the armor thine,

lâz dich baden und kleiden.' 122,5
let thee be-bathed and clothed.'

‘wir müezen unsich scheiden,’
‘we must ourselves part,’

sprach der marcrâve dô.
spoke the margrave then.

‘möht ich immer werden vrô,
‘might I ever become glad,

sô freut ich mich der hôhgezît.
so would-gladden I me of-the feast.

122,10 waz ob mir urlœsunge gît
what if me release gives

der alle flust erkennet
who all loss knows

und der hœhest ist benennet?
and who highest is named?

der neme mîn dâ mit günste war.
he take of-me there with favor heed.

kumt mîn frouwe de künegin dar,
(if)-comes my lady the queen thither,

122,15 des möht ich helfe enphâhen.
of-that might I help receive.

ir sol daz niht versmâhen,
to-her shall that not displease,

sine man den künec umbe mich:
unless-she remind the king about me:

den site hiez ich swesterlich.
the habit called I sisterly.

sol mîner mâge dar iht komn,
(if)-shall of-my kinsmen thither anything come,

122,20 die erbarmet flust diech hân genomn.
them pities loss which-I have taken.

und mîne bruoder die dâ sint
and my brothers who there are

(ich pin ouch Heimrîches kint),
(I am also Heimrich’s child),

wellent die mit triwen sîn,
(if)-will they with faithfulness be,

so erbarmet si mîn schärpfer pîn
so pities them my sharp pain

und mîniu dürren herzesêr. 122,25
and my dry heart-sores.

mir begruonet vröude nimmer mêr.
to-me grows-green joy never more.

ze Heimrîch und ze Irmenschart
to Heimrich and to Irmenschart

unt zanderr mînre getriwen art,
and to-other of-my faithful nature,

ûf genâde wil ich [hin] zin.
on grace will I [away] to-them.

got geb an helfe mir gewin.
God give in help to-me gain.

Bruoder, lâ dir bevolhen wesen, 123,1
Brother, let to-thee entrusted be,

wirp sô daz Gyburc müge genesen:
strive so that Gyburc may survive:

al dîne friwent dar umbe man.'
all thy friends there for remind.'

sus schiet der marcrâve dan.
thus parted the margrave thence.

Arnalt reit al weinde wider, 123,5
Arnalt rode all weeping back,

niht dar umbe daz er nider
not there for that he down

was gevellet mit der tjost:
was felled with the joust:

der jâmer mit sô hôher kost
the misery with so high cost

begund im sîne vreude zern,
began to-him his joy to-consume,

123,10 sich möhts ein keiser niht erwern.
itself might-of-it an emperor not defend.

sîner werden mâge tôt
of-his worthy kinsmen death

frumt im die herzebæren nôt.
made to-him the heart-felt distress.

al die nâch Arnalde
all who after Arnalt

fuorn, die gâhten balde,
went, they hastened quickly,

123,15 dort ein storje, d'ander hie:
there a troop, the-other here:

zuo zim gesamenten sich die.
to him gathered themselves those.

er liez ir keinen fürbaz komn.
he let of-them none further come.

dennoch hetens unvernomn
still had-they unheard

wen sie jageten, dirre unt der,
whom they hunted, this-one and that-one,

123,20 dô durch des grâven schilt ein sper
when through the count's shield a spear

was wider von der tjoste brâht.
was back from the joust brought.

si vrâgeten 'wes habt ir gedâht?
they asked 'of-what have you thought?

uns sol der man entrîten.
from-us shall the man ride-away.

welt ir mit im niht strîten,
(if)-will you with him not fight,

123,25 wan lât irn uns doch fürbaz jagen.'
why-not let you-him us yet further hunt.'

Arnalt begund in rehte sagen
Arnalt began to-them rightly to-say

‘ez ist Willalm der markîs.
‘it is Willalm the marquis.

ine gestat des niht decheinen wîs,
I permit of-that not in-any way,

daz er reslagen werde
that he slain become

ûf Franzoyser erde.
on Frenchmen’s earth.

Er ist uns doch niht gar ein gast, 124,1
He is to-us yet not wholly a guest,

swie der zuht an im gebrast
however of-the courtesy on him lacked

den burgærn von Orlens.
to-the burghers of Orleans.

tumpheit, waz du si schaden wens,
foolishness, what thou to-them of-harm weenest,

die wellnt zuo dîme gebote sîn! 124,5
who will at thy command be!

waz zolles solt der bruoder mîn
what of-toll should the brother mine

geben als ein koufman?
give as a merchant?

swer rîterschaft gespehen kan,
whoever knighthood spy can,

der möht in zolles lâzen vrî.’
he might him of-toll let free.’

die dem grâven hielten bî, 124,10
those-who by-the count held by,

die marcten daz er weinde:
they marked that he wept:

si vrâgeten waz er meinde,
they asked what he meant,

dar umb er wær sô unvrô.
there for he were so unglad.

Arnalt sagt in rehte dô,
Arnalt told to-them rightly then,

124,15 daz im die Sarrazîne
that to-him the Saracens

drîzehne der mâge sîne
thirteen of-the kinsmen his

gevangen heten unt erslagen:
captured had and slain:

'nu erloubet daz ich müeze klagen.
'now permit that I may lament.

die fürsten alle wâren
the princes all were

124,20 almeistic von den jâren
almost of the years

daz ir necheiner gran noch truoc.
that of-them none beard yet bore.

mîn bruoder ungemach genuoc
my brother discomfort enough

het ân unsich erworben.
had without us gained.

sîn man sint erstorben,
his men are died,

124,25 dar zuo sîn wîp besezzen ist:
there to his woman besieged is:

des enweiz er niht, wie lange vrist
of-that knows he not, how long time

sich Oransche müg erwern,
itself Orange may defend,

od welhes trôstes si sich nern.
or with-what comfort they themselves save.

ez stêt gar an der hœhsten hant.'
it stands wholly at the highest hand.'

vil boten wart von im gesant:
many messengers were by him sent:

die strichen naht unde tac 125,1
they roamed night and day

hin zin an den sîn dienst lac:
away to-them in whom his service lay:

er mante mâge unde man.
he reminded kinsmen and men.

ouch streich der marcrâve dan.
also roamed the margrave thence.

gein dem âbende er ein klôster vant. 125,5
toward the evening he a cloister found.

er was den münchen unbekant:
he was to-the monks unknown:

doch pflâgen si sîn schône.
yet took-care they of-him fairly.

dâ ze Samargône
there at Samargone

in der houbetstat ze Persîâ,
in the capital at Persia,

sîn schilt was geworht aldâ: 125,10
his shield was wrought there:

des buckel was armüete vrî.
whose boss was of-poverty free.

Adramahût und Arâbî,
Adramahut and Arabi,

die rîchen stet in Môrlant,
the rich towns in Moorland,

sölhe pfelle sint in unbekant,
such silks are to-them unknown,

als sîn wâpenroc, mit steinen clâr, 125,15
as his tabard, with stones bright,

drûf verwieret her unt dar,
thereon set hither and thither,

daz man des tiwern pfelles mâl
that one the costly silk's painting

derdurch wol kôs al sunder twâl:
there-through well saw all without delay:

als was ouch drob daz kursît.
so was also above the surcoat.

Cristjâns ein alten tymît
Cristjans an old dimity

im hât ze Munleûn an gelegt;
to-him has at Munleun on laid;

dâ mit er sîne tumpheit regt,
there with he his foolishness stirs,

swer sprichet sô nâch wâne.
whoever speaks so after supposing.

er nam dem Persâne
he took from-the Persian

Arofel, der vor im lac tôt,
Arofel, who before him lay dead,

daz friwendîn friwende nie gebôt
what lady-friend to-friend never offered

sô spæher zimierde vlîz;
so cunning crest's diligence;

wan die der künec Feirafîz
except that-which the king Feirafiz

von Secundilln durch minne enpfienc:
from Secundille for love received:

diu kost für alle koste gienc.
that cost before all costs went.

Willalm Shunned at Court

XXX

Leaving his shield at the cloister, Willalm rides to Munleun, crowded for the feast with Frenchmen, Bretons, English, and Burgundians, with Flemings, Brabanters, and the duke of Lorraine. No one greets him; he sits alone with his horse under an olive tree and a linden, his unarmed face sooty and his hair tangled. The court wonders at the wild knight in rich silks. From the windows the queen knows her brother, fears he wants an army for Gyburc, and has the doors locked.

Grôz müede het in dar zuo brâht: 126,1
Great weariness had him there to brought:

den halben tac, die ganzen naht
the half day, the whole night

in dem klôster er beleip.
in the cloister he remained.

sîn unmuoze in fürbaz treip:
his restlessness him further drove:

des pîtens het in doch bevilt. 126,5
of-the waiting had him yet wearied.

aldâ bevalh er sînen schilt
there entrusted he his shield

und reit er gein Munlêûn.
and rode he toward Munleun.

manec Franzoys und Bertûn
many-a Frenchman and Breton

und vil der Engeloyse
and many of-the English

und der werden Burgunjoyse 126,10
and of-the worthy Burgundians

zer hôchkezît kômen dar.
to-the feast came thither.

ich mags iu niht benennen gar.
I can-them to-you not name wholly.

dâ was von tiuschem lande
there was from German land

Flæminge und Brâbande
Flemings and Brabanters

126,15 und der herzoge von Lohrein.
and the duke of Lorraine.

der marcrâve wart enein,
the margrave became agreed,

dâ wær von storje sölch gedranc,
there were of troops such throng,

daz des müese werden lanc,
that of-that must become long,

ê daz ein frumer wirt in în
before that a worthy host him in

126,20 næm: daz werben liez er sîn,
should-take: the striving let he be,

ûfes küneges hof er reit.
onto-the king's court he rode.

nâch sîme zoume niemen streit,
after his bridle no-one strove,

daz er daz ors enpfienge.
that he the horse should-receive.

er rite oder gienge,
he rode or went,

126,25 si wæren ze orse od ze fuoz,
they were on horse or on foot,

dâ bôt im niemen keinen gruoz.
there offered him no-one any greeting.

er sah dâ volkes ungezalt,
he saw there of-people uncounted,

kleine, grôz, jung unt alt:
small, great, young and old:

die begundenn alle vêhen.
they began all to-be-hostile.

erne wolt ouch in niht vlêhen,
he would also them not beseech,

den alten noch den kinden: 127,1
the old nor the children:

zeim ölboum [und] zeiner linden
to-an olive-tree [and] to-a linden

er kêrte. die dâ lâgen
he turned. those-who there lay

und sâzen gar, die pflâgen
and sat wholly, they took-care

daz si im den schate al eine 127,5
that they to-him the shade all alone

liezen: niht gemeine
left: not in-common

woltens mit im dâ hân.
would-they with him there have.

im wart ein sölh rûm getân,
to-him was a such room made,

daz al wît wart sîn stat:
that all wide became his place:

decheinen er ouch sitzen bat. 127,10
none he also sit bade.

er nam den zoum in eine hant,
he took the bridle in one hand,

den tiweren helm von im er bant
the costly helm from him he unbound

und sturzt in zuo zim ûfez gras.
and turned it to him onto-the grass.

swaz al der massenîe was,
whatever of-all the household was,

die begunden an in schouwen, 127,15
they began at him to-look,

in den venstern ouch die frouwen,
in the windows also the ladies,

wand im daz harnasch wonte mite.
for to-him the armor dwelt with.

si jâhn, ez wære ein vremder site
they said, it were a strange custom

daz er wâpen solde tragen,
that he arms should bear,

127,20 sine hôrten denne al êrste sagen
unless-they heard then all first say

daz ein turney wære genomn:
that a tournament were taken:

swelh ritter dâ hin wolde komn,
whichever knight there away would come,

der möhtz wol legen ûf einen soum.
he might-it well lay on a pack-horse.

der marcrâve et sînen zoum
the margrave just his bridle

127,25 het in der hende aldâ er saz.
had in the hand where he sat.

er begunde sich do entwâpen baz
he began himself then to-unarm better

von dem hersniere:
of the mail-hood:

daz zôch er von im schiere.
that drew he from him soon.

dô was sîn vel nâch râme var,
then was his skin nearly soot colored,

bart und hâr verworren gar.
beard and hair tangled wholly.

128,1 Vor dem künege man dô sagete,
Before the king one then said,

daz im doch niht behagete,
what to-him yet not pleased,

daz erbeizet wære ein man
that dismounted were a man

von eime schœnen castelân
from a fair castilian

zem ölboum und zer linden. 128,5
at-the olive-tree and at-the linden.

'erdenken noch ervinden
'devise nor discover

mac unser keiner wer daz sî.
may of-us none who that be.

rostic harnasch wont im bî,
rusty armor dwells to-him by,

er siht ouch wiltlîche.
he looks also wild.

tiwer unde rîche 128,10
precious and rich

ist swaz er ob dem îser hât.
is whatever he above the iron has.

sô liehtiu wâpenlîchiu wât
so bright armorial garment

wart ougen nie bekennet.
became to-eyes never known.

die pfelle unbenennet
the silks unnamed

sint al der kristenheite. 128,15
are to-all the Christendom.

ein heidenisch gereite
a heathen harness

lît ûf dem râvîte.
lies on the charger.

er zæme in eime strîte
he would-befit in a battle

michel baz denne an den tanz.
much better than at the dance.

ouch ist im ninder alsô glanz
also is to-him nowhere so bright

sîn bart, sîn vel, noch sîn hâr,
his beard, his skin, nor his hair,

daz man in dürfe nennen clâr.
that one him need call bright.

er vert ûz eime strîte her.
he fares out-of a battle hither.

ouch nimt uns wunder wes er ger,
also takes us wonder of-what he desire,

daz er sô kampflîche ist komn.
that he so battle-like is come.

wir heten gerne daz vernomn,
we would-have gladly that heard,

wiez umb den rîter stüende,
how-it about the knight should-stand,

sît wir sîn keine küende
since we of-him no tidings

haben noch nie gewunnen.
have still never gained.

ein ebenhiuze der sunnen
a match of-the sun

ist der wâpenroc untz kursît:
is the tabard and-the surcoat:

iewederes blic en widerstrît
each-one's gleam in rivalry

hât sô kostebæren glast.
has so costly gleam.

er ist der Franzoyser gast:
he is the Frenchmen's guest:

von swelhem lande er strîche,
from whichever land he sweep,

er tuot dem wol gelîche
he does to-that well alike

daz unbekennet ist sîn lîp.'
that unknown is his body.'

dô sprach der künec und des wîp
then spoke the king and his woman

'gê wir unde schouwen dar
'go we and look thither

zen venstern, unde nemen des war 129,10
to-the windows, and take of-that heed

waz er werbe od waz er meine,
what he seek or what he mean,

sît er gewâpent eine
since he armed alone

ûfs rîches hof sus ist geriten.'
onto-the realm's court thus is ridden.'

ein wolf mit alsô kiuschen siten
a wolf with so chaste manners

in die schâfes stîge siht 129,15
into the sheep's fold looks

(des mir diu âventiure giht),
(of-that to-me the adventure declares),

als dô der marcrâve sach.
as then the margrave looked.

diu künegîn zem künege sprach
the queen to-the king spoke

'den wir vor uns dort sitzen sehen,
'whom we before us there sit see,

mich dunket, hêrre, ich müge wol jehen, 129,20
me seems, lord, I may well declare,

ez sî mîn bruoder Willalm,
it be my brother Willalm,

der manegen jæmerlîchen galm
who many-a miserable cry

hât al den Franzeisen
has to-all the Frenchmen

gefrumt mit sînen reisen.
wrought with his journeys.

129,25 nu wil er abr ein niwez her,
now will he again a new host,

daz gein den heiden sî ze wer
which against the heathens be for defense

für der künegîn Gîburge minne.
for the queen Giburc's love.

ungerne wesse ich in hier inne.
unwillingly knew I him here within.

iwer deheiner kom hin für:
of-you none come out before:

besliezet vaste zuo die tür;
lock firmly to the door;

130,1 ob er ûzen klopfe dran,
if he outside knock thereon,

daz man in wîse iedoch hin dan.'
that one him direct yet away thence.'

daz si gebôt, daz was getân.
what she commanded, that was done.

der marcrâve, der trûric man,
the margrave, the mournful man,

130,5 het etz ors in sîner hant.
had just-the horse in his hand.

dennoch was er unbekant
still was he unknown

von manegen die dâ wâren.
by many who there were.

dâ kund er zuo gebâren,
there could he to behave,

als erz pillîchen dolte,
as he-it fittingly suffered,

daz ir decheiner wolte 130,10
that of-them none would

im bieten êre noch gemach.
to-him offer honor nor comfort.

manege storje er komen sach
many-a troop he come saw

ûf den hof und wider drabe:
onto the court and back there-off:

nâch sîner grôzen ungehabe
after his great distress

im niemen friwentlîch trœsten bôt, 130,15
to-him no-one friendly comfort offered,

der næme pflihte sîner nôt.
who should-take share of-his distress.

Wimar the Merchant

XXXI

When no one else greets Willalm, the merchant Wimar, born of knightly stock, invites him home and makes him ride while he walks. Willalm refuses the soft bed for grass and clover, and from a great meal and drink fit for an emperor takes only bread and water, keeping his vow. He tells Wimar who he is and what he has lost, and promises to repay him. Lying mournfully on the grass, he resolves to give the court, which left him ungreeted, cause to speak of it forever.

dô kom ein koufman von der stat,
then came a merchant from the town,

der in vil zühteclîchen bat
who him very courteously bade

durch aller koufliute êre
for all merchants' honor

130,20 mit im der dankêre.
with him of-the thanks-turning.

'ir habt doch ungemach erliten,
'you have yet discomfort suffered,

von swelhem lande ir sît geriten.
from whichever land you are ridden.

iuch solten ritter grüezen baz:
you should knights greet better:

sît ieslîcher des vergaz,
since each of-that forgot,

130,25 der iuch sus eine hât gesehen,
who you thus alone has seen,

nu lât den trôst an mir geschehen
now let the comfort in me happen

daz ich iuch diens müeze wern.
that I you of-service may grant.

hêrre, ich sol mit hulden gern
lord, I shall with goodwill desire

daz ir mir hœhet mîniu jâr.'
that you to-me heighten my years.'

der koufman hiez Wîmâr:
the merchant was-called Wimar:

131,1 der was von ritters art erborn.
he was of knight's nature born.

er sprach 'mich dunket unverlorn
he spoke 'me seems not-lost

daz ich iu zêren biute:
what I to-you for-honor offer:

gewert ir mich des hiute,
(if)-grant you me of-that today,

her nâch giht ieslîch mîn genôz 131,5
here after says each my peer

daz mîn prîs sî worden grôz.'
that my prize be become great.'

der marcrâve sprach alsô.
the margrave spoke thus.

'des ir gert, des pin ich vrô,
'what you desire, of-that am I glad,

und solz geschulden swenne ich mac,
and shall-it repay whenever I may,

sît mîn niemen vor dem künege pflac, 131,10
since of-me no-one before the king took-care,

marschalc noch ander man.
marshal nor other man.

die hânt des hoves unprîs getân,
they have of-the court dishonor done,

daz ich beleip sus wîslôs
that I remained thus guideless

ê daz mich iwer güete kôs
before that me your goodness chose

mit gruoze vor in allen. 131,15
with greeting before them all.

ez muoz mir missevallen:
it must to-me displease:

ich hân der mangen hie bekant,
I have of-them many here known,

die vil gerne mîner hant
who very gladly to-my hand

etswenne durch mîn gâbe nigen
sometime for my gift bowed

und mich nu grüezen hânt verswigen. 131,20
and me now greeting have kept-silent.

nu gêt ir vor, ich gên iu nâch.'
now go you before, I go you after.'

der koufman mit zühten sprach
the merchant with courtesy spoke

'ir sult rîten, ich sol gên.
'you shall ride, I shall go.

ich wolt ê wochen lanc hie stên.'
I would rather weeks long here stand.'

131,25 dô sprach des marcrâven munt
then spoke the margrave's mouth

'mir wære gesellekeit unkunt,
'to-me would-be companionship unknown,

soldet ir mîn garzûn sîn.
should you my groom be.

lât mich bî den zühten mîn:
let me by the courtesy mine:

ich gevolg iu wol ze fuoz,
I follow you well on foot,

gesellekeit ich leisten muoz.'
companionship I perform must.'

132,1 Der koufman liez im niht den strît:
The merchant left to-him not the dispute:

er muose et ûf daz râvît
he must just onto the charger

und mit im dannen rîten.
and with him thence ride.

mit wem er wolde strîten,
with whom he would fight,

132,5 des vrâgten se an der strâze
that asked they on the road

der kinde âne mâze,
of-the children without measure,

die dem marcrâven zogten nâch.
who the margrave drew after.

swer in alsô rîten sach,
whoever him so ride saw,

der vlôh in in der gazze
he fled him in the lane

und entweich vor sîme hazze. 132,10
and gave-way before his hatred.

ze hûse in brâhte Wîmâr.
to house him brought Wimar.

aldâ wart er ân allen vâr
there was he without all peril

entwâpent schiere. ê daz geschach,
unarmed soon. before that happened,

sô was dem orse sîn gemach
so was to-the horse its comfort

geschaffet vlîzeclîche. 132,15
provided diligently.

pflumîte und kulter rîche
feather-beds and quilts rich

ûf einen teppich hiez der wirt
onto a carpet bade the host

legen; daz doch der gast verbirt,
lay; what yet the guest forgoes,

daz er sô sanfte iht sæze.
that he so softly anything should-sit.

er vorht daz er vergæze 132,20
he feared that he should-forget

Gyburge nôt dâ se inne was.
Gyburc's distress where she in was.

er warp daz man im bræhte ein gras,
he strove that one him should-bring a grass,

'und lât mich walgen als ein rint.
'and let me wallow as a cow.

ob ich wart ie muoter kint,
if I became ever mother's child,

132,25 dô was diu werlt vol sorgen gar,
then was the world full of-cares wholly,

innen des mich diu gebar.
meanwhile that me she bore.

wirt, ich pin ein hêrre niht:
host, I am a lord not:

mîn flust mir anderr dinge giht.'
my loss to-me of-other things declares.'

pflumît, kultern, matraz,
feather-bed, quilts, mattress,

ûf der decheinez er dâ saz.
on them none he there sat.

133,1 Dem wirte tet sîn trûren wê.
To-the host did his mourning woe.

al grüene gras und niwer klê,
all green grass and new clover,

des wart dar vil undr in getragn.
of-that was thither much under him borne.

der wirt vil sêre begunde klagn,
the host very sorely began to-lament,

133,5 daz erz niht senfter næme,
that he-it not more-softly should-take,

als müeden man gezæme,
as weary man befitted,

daz er im willeclîchen bôt.
what he to-him willingly offered.

dem wirte was des gastes nôt
to-the host was the guest's distress

dennoch unbekennet,
still unknown,

133,10 diu im sider wart benennet.
which to-him later was named.

nu het der wirt daz gebotn,
now had the host that commanded,

daz was gebrâten und gesotn
that was roasted and boiled

vil niwer spîse reine,
much new food pure,

vische und vleisch gemeine,
fish and meat in-common,

beidiu daz wilde und ouch daz zam. 133,15
both the wild and also the tame.

der wirt die kost an sich sô nam,
the host the cost on himself so took,

soltz im lœsen sînen lîp,
should-it to-him release his body,

sone möht er selbe und ouch sîn wîp
so might he himself and also his woman

des nimmer baz genemen war.
of-that never better take heed.

do bereite man mit zühten dar 133,20
then prepared one with courtesy there

und rihte ein tavelen kleine
and set a table small

dem marcrâven eine.
for-the margrave alone.

dô der sîne hende getwuoc,
when he his hands washed,

der wirt für in mit zühten truoc
the host before him with courtesy bore

nâch koufmannes prîse 133,25
after merchant's prize

maneger slahte spîse
of-many kinds food

gesoten unde gebrâten.
boiled and roasted.

swelh armman sô berâten
whichever poor-man so provided

wær, für guot erz næme.
were, for good he-it would-take.

sölh trinken, daz gezæme
such drink, that befitted

134,1 dem keiser ze bieten,
to-the emperor to offer,

des wolte sich niht nieten
of-that would himself not take-pleasure

der marcrâve. daz was verlobt:
the margrave. that was vowed:

in dûhte, er hete dran getobt,
him seemed, he would-have there-on raved,

134,5 ob er iht æze mêr wan brôt
if he anything ate more than bread

und wazzer trunke. er wolt et nôt
and water drank. he would just distress

haben unz im diu hœhste hant
have until to-him the highest hand

ze Oransche erlôste liebez pfant.
at Orange released dear pledge.

der pfâwe vor im gebrâten stuont,
the peacock before him roasted stood,

134,10 mit salsen diu dem wirte kuont
with sauces which to-the host known

was, daz er bezzer nie gewan.
was, that he better never got.

den kapûn, den vasân,
the capon, the pheasant,

in galreiden die lamprîden,
in jellies the lampreys,

pardrîse begund er mîden.
partridges began he to-avoid.

der wirt sprach ‘hêrre, disem lant,
the host spoke ‘lord, to-this land,

wær dem bezzer spîse erkant,
were to-it better food known,

der wurt ir schôn von mir gewert.
of-it would-become you fairly by me granted.

saget mir ob ir iht anders gert:
tell me if you anything other desire:

dâ lât mich balde werben nâch.’
there let me quickly strive after.’

der marcrâf siufte unde sprach
the margrave sighed and spoke

‘lieber wirt, ez stêt mir sô
‘dear host, it stands to-me so

daz ich nimmer werde vrô
that I never become glad

unz an den urteillîchen tac,
until to the judgment-like day,

dâ diu gotes kraft wol füegen mac
where the God’s power well arrange may

daz mîn gelübde ein ende hât.
that my vow an end has.

ob mir sîn trôst die freude lât
if to-me his comfort the joy leaves

daz er mir dâ gelücke gît,
that he to-me there luck gives,

wirt, dâ nâch ist denne zît
host, there after is then time

daz ich sül guoter spîse lebn.
that I shall on-good food live.

irn durft mir niht wan wazzer gebn,
you need to-me nothing but water give,

und brôtes daz ich drîn gemer.
and of-bread that I therein dip.

ziu noch ze niemen ich des ger,
to-you nor to anyone I of-that desire,

daz ez gebezzert werde.
that it bettered become.

swaz wâges ûf der erde
whatever of-water on the earth

135,5 lebt, daz wil ich mîden:
lives, that will I avoid:

wand ich muoz kumber lîden,
for I must affliction suffer,

unz ich hân bezzeren trôst erkorn.
until I have better comfort chosen.

lieber wirt, ich hân verlorn
dear host, I have lost

hôhe mâge und werde man:
high kinsmen and worthy men:

135,10 dar zuo hân ich in angest lân
there to have I in fear left

ein wîp, der dort mîn herze ist bî:
a woman, whom there my heart is by:

mîn lîp ist hie vor freuden vrî.
my body is here of joys free.

nune vrâgt niht mêre und lâtz et sîn.
now ask not more and let-it just be.

iwer güete ist an mir worden schîn:
your goodness is in me become seen:

135,15 des wirt gehœht noch iwer prîs.
of-that becomes heightened still your prize.

von Provenze der markîs
of Provence the marquis

Willalm bin ich genant:
Willalm am I named:

getrag ich immer gebende hant,
(if)-bear I ever giving hand,

iu wirt vergolten disiu nar,
to-you becomes repaid this food,

swie swach ich hînte bî iu var.' 135,20
however poorly I tonight by you fare.'

der wirt sprach 'hêrre, wol mich wart,
the host spoke 'lord, well-for me became,

daz iwer her komendiu vart
that your hither coming journey

in mîn hûs ist gedigen.
into my house is come.

die iuch hie grüezen hânt verswigen,
those-who you here greeting have kept-silent,

des mugen die werden sich wol schemn. 135,25
of-that may the worthy-ones themselves well be-ashamed.

ir sult in iwer genâde nemn
you shall into your grace take

mîn armez dienst mit triuwen.
my poor service with faithfulness.

iwer kumber sol mich riuwen,
your affliction shall me rue,

unz ir an freuden habet gewin,
until you in joys have gain,

ob ich hân toufbæren sin.'
if I have baptism-worthy mind.'

Der wirt wol hôrte unde sach 136,1
The host well heard and saw

daz er von trûren ungemach
that he from mourning discomfort

dennoch pflac und het erliten:
still bore and had suffered:

ern wolt in dô niht fürbaz biten
he would him then not further bid

deheiner bezzeren spîse lebn. 136,5
on-any better food live.

er begunde im hertiu wastel gebn,
he began to-him hard wastel-bread to-give,

und trinken des diu nahtegal
and drink of-which the nightingale

lebt, dâ von ir süezer schal
lives, there from her sweet sound

ist werder dann ob se al den wîn
is worthier than if she all the wine

136,10 trunk der mac ze Bôtzen sîn.
drank which may at Bozen be.

der spîse wart ein teil verzert
of-the food was a part consumed

und senftez petten gar rewert.
and soft bed wholly refused.

der marcrâve sich ûf ein gras
the margrave himself onto a grass

leit, daz im ê komen was.
laid, which to-him before come was.

136,15 der wirt nam urloup. der fuor dan
the host took leave. he went thence

und liez den siufzebæren man
and left the sigh-laden man

ligen trûreclîche.
lie mournfully.

wart er ie freuden rîche,
became he ever of-joys rich,

daz was im worden gar ein troum:
that was to-him become wholly a dream:

136,20 sîn herze truoc den jâmers soum.
his heart bore the misery's pack.

der marcrâve dâhte dô
the margrave thought then

'sît mir mîn dinc ist komen sô,
'since to-me my thing is come so,

daz al die besten hie hânt lân,
that all the best-ones here have left,

unde ir selbr unprîs getân,
and to-themselves self dishonor done,

daz ir necheiner mir sprach zuo, 136,25
that of-them none to-me spoke to,

geleb ich unz morgen fruo,
(if)-live I until tomorrow early,

ich sol in füegen sölhe klage,
I shall to-them join such lament,

daz si immer mêr von dem tage
that they ever more from the day

dâ nâch ze sprechen hânt genuoc,
there after to speak have enough,

kint diu noch muoter nie getruoc.'
child whom yet mother never bore.'

Willalm Enters the Hall

XXXII

After a sleepless night Willalm arms and tells his host his sword shall split the king's scalp to the beard; the merchant sinks down in dismay. At court Willalm resolves instead to wait for his father, since killing the king would ruin the help promised Gyburc. The merchant tells the palace who he is; many greet him with joy, and he rebukes them for leaving him alone. Soon alone again, he goes armed before the king and his sister, and the king and princes resent his coming.

In zorne er âne slâfen lac, 137,1
In wrath he without sleeping lay,

unz ûf in schein der liehte tac.
until on him shone the bright day.

sîn harnasch lac bî im gar,
his armor lay by him wholly,

und Arofels swert daz lieht gevar.
and Arofel's sword the brightly colored.

137,5 er schuoht die îserhosen an.
he shod the iron-hose on.

dô kom sîn wirt, der koufman:
then came his host, the merchant:

er vrâgte in waz er wolde tuon.
he asked him what he would do.

dô sprach Heimrîches suon
then spoke Heimrich's son

'nu seht, ich wâpen disiu bein:
'now see, I arm these legs:

137,10 ich pin ouch worden des enein,
I am also become of-that agreed,

daz ich diz harnasch an wil legn,
that I this armor on will lay,

ob ich vor stichen od von slegn,
if I from thrusts or from blows,

deste baz iht müge genesen.
the better at-all may survive.

solt ich in dirre smæhe wesen,
should I in this contempt be,

137,15 dar zuo dunk ich mich ze wert.
there to think I myself too worthy.

mir wære diz und elliu swert
to-me would-be this and all swords

ummære um mich gebunden,
indifferent about me bound,

ob mich liezen unde funden
if me should-leave and should-find

in spotte die Franzoyser gar.'
in mockery the Frenchmen wholly.'

137,20 er bat den wirt nemen war,
he bade the host take heed,

wiez harnasch hinden stüende:
how-the armor behind should-stand:

vorn het ers selbe küende.
in-front had he-it self knowledge.

der wirt sprach ‘hêrre, ez stêt wol.
the host spoke ‘lord, it stands well.

mir ist leit daz ich iuch sehen sol
to-me is grievous that I you see shall

sliefen in sölh arbeit: 137,25
slip into such toil:

mir ist iwer ungemach vil leit.
to-me is your discomfort very grievous.

ob ir des gert, ich hân gewant,
if you of-that desire, I have garment,

daz al der Franzoyser lant
that all the Frenchmen's land

niht mac erziugen bezzer wât
not may produce better garment

denn iu mîn hant ze geben hât.’
than to-you my hand to give has.’

Der marcrâve zem wirte sprach 138,1
The margrave to-the host spoke

‘ich gihe noch des ich nähten jach.
‘I declare still of-what I last-night declared.

ir habt mir gunst erzeiget:
you have to-me favor shown:

ist mîn leben ungeveiget,
(if)-is my life undoomed,

mîn danc belîbet ungespart. 138,5
my thanks remains unspared.

durchs küneges swarte ûf sînen bart
through-the king's scalp onto his beard

diz swert sol durchverte gern:
this sword shall passage desire:

des wil i'n vor den fürsten wern.
of-that will I-him before the princes grant.

ich hân von im smæh unde spot
I have from him contempt and mockery

138,10 nâch miner flustbæren nôt.
after my loss-bringing distress.

ich mag iu einem daz wol sagn.'
I may to-you alone that well tell.'

der wirt begunde alsô verzagn,
the host began so to-despair,

daz er nider bî im seic
that he down by him sank

und der geinrede gar gesweic.
and of-the counter-speech wholly fell-silent.

138,15 der marcrâve zem orse sîn
the margrave to-the horse his

gienc. nu was ouch Volatîn
went. now was also Volatin

gesatelt unde erstrichen wol.
saddled and curried well.

'dirre herberge ich danken sol,'
'this lodging I thank shall,'

sprach der marcrâve, 'kumt ez sô.'
spoke the margrave, '(if)-comes it so.'

138,20 ûf dez ors saz er dô
onto the horse sat he then

und reit hin wider alze hant
and rode away back all at-once

dâ in der wirt des abents vant.
where him the host of-the evening found.

nu het der tac sich hôhe erhabn.
now had the day itself high raised.

stapfen, zelten unde drabn
to-step, to-amble and to-trot

ûf den hof begunde vil der diet. 138,25
onto the court began many of-the people.

ungedult dem marcrâven riet
impatience to-the margrave counseled

daz er stricte des orses zoum
that he tied the horse's bridle

vaste an ein ast von ölboum.
firmly to a branch of olive-tree.

dô wolt er nâch den andern gên,
then would he after the others go,

durch pâgen für den künec stên.
for quarrel before the king stand.

Nu dâht er 'sih ich disen zagen, 139,1
Now thought he '(if)-see I this coward,

den künec, wirt er von mir erslagen,
the king, (if)-becomes he by me slain,

kan mich sîn volc vor tôde sparen,
(if)-can me his people from death spare,

die fürsten sulen mir doch enpfaren.
the princes shall to-me yet escape.

waz ob sich krenket al mîn werben? 139,5
what if itself weakens all my striving?

sô muoz diu helfe gar verderben,
so must the help wholly perish,

als ich Gyburge enthiez,
as I to-Gyburc promised,

die ich in grôzer angest liez.
whom I in great fear left.

ich wil mîns vater beiten,
I will for-my father wait,

mit zwîvels arbeiten:
with doubt's toils:

die muoz ich haben unz an in.
them must I have until to him.

hât er dan väterlîchen sin,
(if)-has he then fatherly mind,

daz mag an mir wol werden schîn.
that may in me well become seen.

mir helfent ouch die bruoder mîn
to-me help also the brothers mine

und swaz ich werder mâge hân.'
and whatever I of-worthy kinsmen have.'

nu kom sîn wirt, der koufman:
now came his host, the merchant:

der sleich für in aldâ er saz,
he crept before him where he sat,

und huop sich inz gedrenge baz.
and lifted himself into-the throng further.

der sagte ûfem palas,
he told on-the palace,

wer dirre werde ritter was.
who this worthy knight was.

dô lief her ab die grêde
then ran hither down the steps

alt und junge bêde,
old and young both,

manec wert man der mit freude enpfienc
many-a worthy man who with joy received

den marcrâven, der gein in gienc
the margrave, who toward them went

und alsus hinz in allen sprach.
and thus toward them all spoke.

'swer mich hie nähten sitzen sach,
'whoever me here last-night sit saw,

der mîn gâbe enphangen hât,
who my gift received has,

ez was eins swachen muotes rât,
it was of-a weak spirit's counsel,

daz mich der liez al eine,
that me he left all alone,

dem mîn helfe ie was gemeine.
to-whom my help ever was common.

Trüegen mîne soume golt, 140,1
Should-bear my pack-horses gold,

sô wæret ir mir alle holt,
so would-be you to-me all devoted,

samît, pfelle und ander wât.
samite, silks and other garment.

vil orse diu mîn marke hât,
many horses which my march has,

sæht ir der manegez bî mir gên, 140,5
should-see you of-them many-a-one by me go,

sone dörft ich sitzen noch stên
so needed I sit nor stand

nindr, ezn wære um mich gedranc.
anywhere, unless-it were around me throng.

der hof sol haben undanc,
the court shall have no-thanks,

swenne ein fürste als smæhen gruoz
whenever a prince so contemptible greeting

von der massenîe enpfâhen muoz. 140,10
from the household receive must.

ir wænt daz ich verdorben sî:
you think that I ruined be:

nein, mir ist ander wille bî.'
no, to-me is other will by.'

sîn wâpenroc, sîn kursît,
his tabard, his surcoat,

an den beiden kôs man strît:
on the both saw one battle:

die wârn verhowen, etswâ verhurt.
they were hewn, somewhere charged-through.

sîn swert daz umb in was gegurt,
his sword which around him was girded,

dem wasz gehilze guldîn:
to-it was-the hilt golden:

sîn harnasch gap nâh roste schîn.
his armor gave after rust appearance.

dô sîn gezoc sô kleine
when his train so small

was, vil schiere al eine
was, very soon all alone

er ân die ritter gar gestuont.
he without the knights wholly stood.

daz was im etswenne unkuont.
that was to-him sometime unknown.

der künec ûfen palas
the king onto-the palace

kom, dâ manec fürste was,
came, where many-a prince was,

d'or hete messe vernomen:
he-before had mass heard:

ouch was diu künegîn dar komen.
also was the queen thither come.

der marcrâve den andern nâch
the margrave the others after

gienc, unz er den künic sach,
went, until he the king saw,

und sîne swester, küneges wîp.
and his sister, the-king's woman.

er truoc daz swert umb sînen lîp.
he bore the sword around his body.

Sînes komens hêten haz 141,1
His coming had hatred

der künec und swer dâ fürsten saz:
the king and whoever there of-princes sat:

ir necheiner was sô wol geborn,
of-them none was so well born,

sine widersæzen sînen zorn.
unless-they feared his wrath.

Heimrich and Irmschart Arrive

XXXIII

Willalm sits with his sword across his lap while the courtiers mutter that he should be banished to the ends of the earth and that he will demand an army. Heimrich and Irmschart arrive with seven thousand knights and four sons, and the king receives them with honor. Willalm resolves to speak, trusting his mother, father, and brothers to help him.

der marcrâve an den stunden, 141,5
the margrave at the hours,

dez swert niht ab gebunden
the sword not off unbound

ruct er für sich in die schôz.
pushed he before himself into the lap.

sîns sitzens dâ bî in verdrôz,
of-his sitting there by them irked,

ich wæne, ir ieslîchen,
I think, of-them each,

den armen und den rîchen. 141,10
the poor and the rich.

etslîcher wunschte in sus von im,
some wished him thus from him,

ze Kânach od ze Assim,
to Kanach or to Assim,

in die hitze ze Alamansurâ,
into the heat at Alamansura,

od widr ze Scandinâvîâ
or back to Scandinavia

übervroren in dem îse.
frozen-over in the ice.

etslîch fürste wîse
some prince wise

wunschte im aber denne des,
wished to-him again then of-that,

daz er wær ze Catus Ercules.
that he were at Gades of-Hercules.

sô wunschte in einer âne wer
so wished him one without defense

ûf den wert inz lebermer,
onto the island into-the curdled-sea,

der Palaker ist genant:
which Palaker is named:

‘sone wurder nimmer mêr bekant
‘so would-become-he never more known

decheinem Franzeise.
to-any Frenchman.

herverte und reise
campaigns and expeditions

die gein Oransche sint erbeten,
which toward Orange are bidden,

die hânt Francrîche erjeten
they have France weeded

von der guoten rîterschaft.
of the good knighthood.

ez enwart nie man sô künnehaft,
it became never man so kin-rich,

durch die wir dienen müezen.'
for whom we serve must.'

'nune wil er niemen grüezen,'
'now will he no-one greet,'

sprach einer: dern bekandes niht. 142,1
spoke one: he knew-it not.

'lâ sîn: dîn ouge hiute ersiht,'
'let be: thy eye today sees,'

antwurte im aber dirre dô,
answered him again this-one then,

'des etslîch fürste wirt unvrô.
'of-what some prince becomes unglad.

er hât gewunnen aber schaden. 142,5
he has gained again harm.

sîn swert beginnt in bluote baden,
his sword begins in blood to-bathe,

ê wir unsich hinnen scheiden.
before we ourselves hence part.

nu sint im aber die heiden
now are to-him again the heathens

geriten alze nâhen bî.
ridden all-too near by.

vermaldît Oransche sî, 142,10
accursed Orange be,

daz ir ie stein gemezzen wart.
that of-it ever stone measured was.

man muoz im eine hervart
one must to-him a campaign

noch hiute swern oder lobn,
still today swear or promise,

odr man gesiht in drumbe tobn.'
or one sees him for-it rage.'

142,15 dô sprach abr ein Franzoys
then spoke again a Frenchman

'mîn hêrre solt im Virmendoys
'my lord should to-him Vermandois

lîhen unde Arraz.
lend and Arras.

nu sehet, wie wunderlîch gelâz
now see, how wondrous bearing

hât der küene starke!
has the bold strong-one!

142,20 mîn hêrre im sîne marke
my lord to-him his march

alsus erstaten solde,
thus restore should,

ob er ruowe haben wolde.
if he rest have would.

sîn gebærde ist unbescheidenlîch.'
his bearing is unreasonable.'

Irmschart und Heimrîch
Irmschart and Heimrich

142,25 dâ kômn mit grôzme gesinde:
there came with great household:

vier fürstn ir zweier kinde,
four princes of-them two's children,

siben tûsent ritter oder mêr,
seven thousand knights or more,

die fuorte der alte fürste hêr.
them led the old prince proud.

dâ wart von kamerære stabn
there was by chamberlains' staves

vil kûme alsölher rûm erhabn,
very barely such room raised,

daz diu alde fürstîn Irmschart
that the old princess Irmschart

von Paveie ir fürvart
of Pavia her forward-way

ûf dem palas gewan.
on the palace gained.

ir volgete manec werder man.
her followed many-a worthy man.

dô si în kom gegangen,
when she in came walking,

si wart mit kusse enpfangen:
she was with kiss received:

daz tet des rœmschen küneges munt.
that did the Roman king's mouth.

ir tohter an der selben stunt
her daughter at the same hour

si mit freuden kuste:
she with joy kissed:

ir komens si wol luste.
of-her coming her well pleased.

dô der künec sîne swiger
when the king his mother-in-law

enpfienc, zuo ir tohter nider
received, to her daughter down

si saz. nu kom ouch Heimrîch,
she sat. now came also Heimrich,

der fürste krefte wol gelîch:
the prince to-strength well alike:

ein barûn truoc vor im sîn swert,
a baron bore before him his sword,

im volgete manec ritter wert.
him followed many-a knight worthy.

der künec sîne zuht begienc,
the king his courtesy performed,

er stuont ûf dô ern enpfienc,
he stood up when he-him received,

und fuort in selbe mit der hant
and led him himself with the hand

143,20 dâ im vil schône wart bekant
where to-him very fairly became known

der rœmschen küneginne kus;
the Roman queen's kiss;

dar nâch der künec in sazte alsus,
there after the king him set thus,

nâhe an sîne sîten.
near to his side.

an den selben zîten
at the same times

143,25 Heimrîches süne viere,
Heimrich's sons four,

von al den fürsten schiere
by all the princes soon

wart erboten werdeclîcher gruoz.
was offered worthy greeting.

ieslîch fürste sitzen muoz:
each prince sit must:

als tâten d'anderen alle.
so did the-others all.

gein der hôhgezîte schalle
toward the feast's clamor

144,1 vil teppch übr al den palas
many carpets over all the palace

lac, dar ûf geworfen was
lay, there on thrown was

touwic rôsen hende dicke:
dewy roses hand thick:

den wurdn ir liehte blicke
to-them became their bright gleams

zetreten: daz gap doch süezen wâz. 144,5
trodden: that gave yet sweet scent.

der marcrâve dennoch saz
the margrave still sat

als er zem êrsten dar was komn:
as he at-the first thither was come:

ir necheines gruoz het er vernomn,
of-them none's greeting had he heard,

die dâ gruozpære wâren.
who there greeting-worthy were.

dâ kunder zuo gebâren 144,10
there could-he thereto behave

als ir schiere sult gehœren.
as you soon shall hear.

sîne zuht begund er stœren,
his courtesy began he to-disturb,

der merken wolte sîniu wort,
who mark would his words,

diu er sprach vor dem künege dort.
which he spoke before the king there.

al swîgende er gedâhte 144,15
all silent he thought

'sît Terramêr mir brâhte
'since Terramer to-me brought

mit flust sô herzebæriu sêr,
with loss so heart-felt sores,

so bekant ich freude nimmer mêr,
so knew I joy never more,

wan der mâze ich ir hie sihe.
except the measure I of-it here see.

mîme gelücke ich des gihe, 144,20
to-my luck I of-that declare,

ez möhte noch ze krufte komn,
it might still to strength come,

swie vil mir freuden sî benomn.
however much to-me of-joys be taken.

hie sizt mîn künne almeistic gar,
here sits my kin almost wholly,

dar zuo ein wîp diu mich gebar.
there to a woman who me bore.

144,25 ich wæn diu nimmer süle verdagen,
I think she never shall keep-silent,

sine beginne Heimrîche sagen
unless-she begin to-Heimrich to-say

daz ich sî ir beider kint.
that I be of-them both child.

mîne bruoder die hie sint,
my brothers who here are,

erhœrent die mîn riuwe,
(if)-hear they my rue,

si begênt an mir ir triuwe.'
they perform on me their faithfulness.'

Willalm and the Queen

XXXIV

Willalm reproaches the king: he won Loys the Roman crown and now receives contempt. His four brothers greet him and urge him to temper his wrath. The king offers him anything in his land, but the queen objects; Willalm calls her far too proud, breaks the crown from her head, and would have beheaded her had Irmschart not stepped between them. The queen bolts herself in her chamber, Loys wishes himself in Paris, and she begs her daughter to win back her uncle's goodwill.

Er dâhte 'ich wilz nu wâgen.' 145,1
He thought 'I will-it now venture.'

dô stuont er ûf durch pâgen.
then stood he up for quarrel.

über manegen schreit er dan:
over many-a-one strode he thence:

dô stuont der zornebære man
then stood the wrathful man

für den künec und sprach alsô. 145,5
before the king and spoke thus.

'hêr künec, ir muget wol wesen vrô
'lord king, you may well be glad

daz iu mîn vater sitzet bî.
that to-you my father sits by.

nu wizzet, wærn iur eines drî,
now know, were of-you one three,

die wærn ze pfande mir gevarn:
they would-be as pledge to-me gone:

daz wil ich nu durch zuht bewarn. 145,10
that will I now for courtesy guard.

der segen über d'engel gêt,
the blessing over the-angels goes,

an swes arme diu hant stêt,
on whose arm the hand stands,

der teil ouch sînes segens swanc
who part also of-his blessing swung

über mînen vater alders blanc
over my father of-age white

145,15 und über die werden muoter mîn.
and over the worthy mother mine.

hêr künec, nu wænt ir kreftic sîn:
lord king, now think you mighty to-be:

gab ich iu rœmsche krône
gave I to-you Roman crown

nâch alsô swachem lône
for so poor reward

als von iu gein mir ist bekant?
as from you toward me is known?

145,20 daz rîche stuont in mîner hant:
the realm stood in my hand:

ir wârt der selbe als ir noch sît,
you were the same as you still are,

dô ich gein al den fürsten strît
when I against all the princes battle

nam, die iuch bekanten
took, who you knew

und ungern ernanten
and unwillingly named

145,25 daz si iuch ze hêrren in erkürn.
that they you as lord to-them should-choose.

si vorhten daz se an iu verlürn
they feared that they in you should-lose

ir werdekeit unde ir prîs:
their worthiness and their prize:

ine gestatt in niht deheinen wîs,
I permitted them not in-any way,

sine müesen iuch ze hêrren nemn.
unless-they must you as lord take.

dô kunde lasters mich gezemn.
then could of-reproach me befit.

Ouwê der missewende, 146,1
Alas of-the misdeed,

daz ich mîne hende
that I my hands

zwischen de iweren ie gebôt!
between the yours ever offered!

do genuzzet ir vil maneger nôt
then profited you very many-a distress

die ich durh iweren vater leit, 146,5
which I for your father suffered,

maneges sturmes, die ich streit:
of-many-a storm, which I fought:

ich hân ouch vil durch iuch gestriten.
I have also much for you fought.

nu hân ich siben jâr gebiten,
now have I seven years waited,

daz ich vater noch muoter nie gesach,
that I father nor mother never saw,

noch der decheinen, der man jach 146,10
nor of-them any, of-whom one declared

daz si mîn bruoder wæren.
that they my brothers were.

ich kund iuch wol beswæren:
I could you well burden:

durch mîne muoter lâz ichz gar.'
for my mother leave I-it wholly.'

sîner bruoder sprungen viere dar:
of-his brothers sprang four thither:

die begundenn schône enpfâhen 146,15
they began-him fairly to-receive

und dicke umbevâhen,
and often to-embrace,

swie ez dem künege wære bî,
however it to-the king were by,

Bertram und Buov von Kumarzî,
Bertram and Buove of Kumarzi,

Schilbert und Bernart der flôrîs.
Schilbert and Bernart the flowered.

146,20 die manten in durch sînen prîs,
they reminded him for his prize,

er solte zürnen mâzen.
he should wrath measure.

si giengen wider und sâzen:
they went back and sat:

der marcrâve dennoch stuont.
the margrave still stood.

dô sprach des rœmschen küneges muont
then spoke the Roman king's mouth

146,25 'hêr Willalm, sint irz sît,
'lord Willalm, since you-it are,

sô dunket mich des gein iu zît,
so seems to-me of-that toward you time,

daz ich bekenne iu fürsten reht:
that I acknowledge to-you prince's right:

wan sît ich was ein swacher kneht,
for since I was a weak boy,

sô lebt ich iwers râtes ie,
so lived I of-your counsel ever,

ouch liez mich iwer helfe nie.
also left me your help never.

147,1 Iwer zorn ist ân nôt bekant
Your wrath is without need known

gein mir. ir wizzet, al mîn lant,
toward me. you know, all my land,

swes ir drinne gert, daz ist getân.
whatever you therein desire, that is done.

ich mac gâbe und lêhen hân:
I may gift and fief have:

daz kêrt mit fuoge an iwern gewin.' 147,5
that turn with seemliness to your gain.'

sîn swester sprach, diu künegin,
his sister spoke, the queen,

'ouwê wie wênc uns denne belibe!
'alas how little to-us then would-remain!

sô wære ich d'êrste dier vertribe.
so would-be I the-first whom-he should-drive-out.

mir ist lieber daz er warte her,
to-me is dearer that he wait here,

dan daz ich sînre genâde ger.' 147,10
than that I of-his grace desire.'

des worts diu künegîn sêre enkalt.
for-the word the queen sorely paid.

swaz er den künec ê geschalt,
whatever he the king before scolded,

des wart ir zehenstunt dô mêr,
of-that became her ten-times then more,

und jach si wære gar ze hêr.
and declared she were wholly too proud.

vor al den fürsten daz geschach, 147,15
before all the princes that happened,

die krône err von dem houbte brach
the crown he-her from the head broke

und warf se daz diu gar zebrast.
and threw it that it wholly burst.

do begreif der zornbære gast
then seized the wrathful guest

bî den zöpfen die künegîn.
by the braids the queen.

147,20 er wolt ir mit dem swerte sîn
he would from-her with the sword his

daz houbt hân ab geswungen:
the head have off swung:

wan derzwischen kom gedrungen
except there-between came pressed

ir beider muoter Irmenschart:
of-them both mother Irmenschart:

des wart ir leben dâ gespart.
of-that became her life there spared.

147,25 vil kûm diu küneginne gewant
very barely the queen wrested

ir zöpfe ûz sîner starken hant,
her braids out-of his strong hand,

und huop sich dannen drâte
and lifted herself thence quickly

in ir kemenâte.
into her chamber.

dô si kom innerhalp der tür,
when she came inside the door,

dô hiez si balde sliezen für
then bade she quickly lock before

148,1 ein îsnînen rigel starc:
an iron bolt strong:

dennoch vor vorhten si sich barc.
still for fear she herself hid.

dort ûze der künec Lôys
there outside the king Loys

wær zEtampes ode ze Pârîs
would-have at-Etampes or at Paris

148,5 oder ze Orlens gewesn,
or at Orleans been,

od swa er et möhte sîn genesn,
or wherever he just might be saved,

gerner denne dâ bî im.
more-gladly than there by him.

‘ditz laster âne schult ich nim
‘this reproach without guilt I take

von dem marcrâven. derst mîn man:
from the margrave. he-is my man:

swaz ich dem hete getân, 148,10
whatever I to-him had done,

der möhtz von mir den fürsten klagn.
he might-it of me to-the princes lament.

lît mîn wîp von im erslagn,
(if)-lies my woman by him slain,

daz ist ein ungedientiu nôt
that is an undeserved distress

gein sölher rede als ich im bôt
toward such speech as I to-him offered

und der i’m wolte sîn bereit.’ 148,15
and which I-to-him would be ready.’

durh zuht, durh vorhte in allen leit
for courtesy, for fear to-them all grievous

was unfuog diu dâ geschach.
was misbehavior which there happened.

dort inne es künges tohter sprach
there within the king’s daughter spoke

zir muoter ‘frowe, wie kumestuo?
to-her mother ‘lady, how comest-thou?

wem gefuor ie künegîn sô zuo? 148,20
to-whom fared ever queen so to?

mînem vater dem daz rîche
to-my father to-whom the realm

dient, hart ungelîche
serves, very unlike

kumstu sînem hôhen namn.
comest-thou to-his high name.

du springest sô daz dir die lamn
thou springest so that thee the lambs

148,25 möhten niht gevolgen.
might not follow.

wer ist dir dûze erbolgen?'
who is to-thee out-there angered?'

si sprach 'daz ist der œheim dîn.
she spoke 'that is the uncle thine.

hilf mir hulde, liebiu tohter mîn.'
help me to-goodwill, dear daughter mine.'

Heimrich's Promise

XXXV

Willalm refuses his father's kiss and begs him for help. Heimrich promises it at once and asks about the battle; Willalm tells of the heathen host, names Vivianz and Mile as dead, and lists the eleven princes captured, and the hall weeps. Irmschart rebukes the men for weeping like women and urges them to give and lend. Willalm again reviles his sister, saying Tybalt was long her knight, and claims Gyburc as love's payment for what Tybalt borrowed.

der fürste ûz Narbôn dô gienc
the prince out-of Narbonne then went

alrêrst da er sînen sun enpfienc.
first-of-all where he his son received.

149,1 Versagens urloup sô bater,
Of-refusing leave so bade-he,

dâ in Heimrîch sîn vater
when him Heimrich his father

enpfâhn und küssen wolde.
receive and kiss would.

er sprach als er solde
he spoke as he should

‘mîn kus ûf Oransch ist belibn: 149,5
‘my kiss on Orange is remained:

dâ hât mich Tybalt von getribn.
there has me Tybalt from driven.

den rehten kus ze Oransche ich liez,
the right kiss at Orange I left,

dô Terramêr die sîne hiez
when Terramer the his-ones bade

mir rezeigen grôzen zorn.
to-me show great wrath.

ich hân von sîner kraft verlorn 149,10
I have from his strength lost

des ich immer unregetzet bin,
of-what I ever uncompensated am,

ez entuo dîn manlîcher sin
unless-it do thy manly mind

und dîn ûz erweltiu triuwe,
and thy out chosen faithfulness,

sô muoz ich herzen riuwe
so must I heart's rue

vil gâhes bringen an den tôt: 149,15
very hastily bring to the death:

ich liez Gyburge in sölher nôt.
I left Gyburc in such distress.

mîn zwîvel giht, sol ichz gar sagn,
my doubt declares, (if)-shall I-it wholly say,

daz mîne mâge an mir verzagn.
that my kinsmen in me despair.

nu hilf mir durch die stæten kraft
now help me for the steadfast power

der dritten geselleschaft. 149,20
of-the third fellowship.

ich meine daz der vater bat
I mean that the father bade

den sun an sîn selbes stat:
the son in his own place:

des was der geist ir bêder wer.
of-that was the spirit of-them both's warrant.

durch die drî namen ich ger
for the three names I desire

149,25 daz du dîne tugent bekennest
that thou thy virtue acknowledge

und dir mich ze kinde nennest:
and to-thee me as child name:

sô stêt dîn helfe âne wanc
so stands thy help without wavering

mit trôste mîner vreude kranc.
with comfort to-my joy weak.

nu verzage niht durh der heiden maht:
now despair not for the heathens' might:

du hâst prîs inz alter brâht.'
thou hast prize into-the age brought.'

150,1 Der vater sprach 'wie stêt daz dir,
The father spoke 'how stands that to-thee,

ob du zwîvel hâst gein mir?
if thou doubt hast toward me?

dînen kumber wil ich leiden:
thy affliction will I share:

od dâ von muoz mich scheiden
or there from must me part

150,5 grôz überlesteclîchiu nôt,
great overburdening distress,

od ein sô starc gebot
or a so strong command

daz die sêl vom lîbe nimt.
which the soul from-the body takes.

dîner manheit missezimt,
to-thy manhood misbefits,

ob du zwîvel gein mir tregst
if thou doubt toward me bearest

und unser triuwe under legst.
and our faithfulness under layest.

gar dîne flust und dîne klage
wholly thy loss and thy lament

al balde ûf mîne helfe sage.
all quickly on my help say.

waz swerte drumbe erklingen sol!
what swords for-it resound shall!

der hœhsten hant getrûwe ich wol,
to-the highest hand trust I well,

daz si drucke und ziehe mir den arm.
that it press and draw to-me the arm.

manec heidensch herze, diu noch warm
many-a heathen heart, which still warm

sint, diu werdent drumbe kalt.
are, they become for-it cold.

ob der werde künec Tybalt
if the worthy king Tybalt

ûf dîner marke lît mit her,
on thy march lies with host,

man sol mich pî dir sehen ze wer.
one shall me by thee see for defense.

wâ nu die von mir sint erborn?
where now those-who from me are born?

ditz laster habt mit mir rekorn.
this reproach have with me chosen.

mîn sun ist gesuochet niht:
my son is attacked not:

ich pin der des lasters giht.
I am he-who of-the reproach declares.

swaz im ze schaden ist getân,
whatever to-him for harm is done,

des wil ich mit im pflihte hân.
of-that will I with him share have.

sag an, kœm du mit rîterschaft
say on, camest thou with knighthood

an si? welh was der heiden kraft?
on them? which was the heathens' strength?

wie tetz mîn junc geslehte?'
how did-it my young lineage?'

der marcrâf sagt im rehte
the margrave told him rightly

'ir hers mich bevilte.
'their host me wearied.

der zende ûz zwispilte
the tens out-of doubled

ame schâchzabel ieslîch velt
on-the chessboard each field

mit cardamôm, den zwigelt
with cardamom, which twofold

mit dem prüeven wære gezalt,
with the reckoning were counted,

Terramêr und Tybalt
Terramer and Tybalt

heten mangern rîter dâ,
had more knights there,

und Arofel von Persyâ,
and Arofel of Persia,

und Tesereyz, den ich ersluoc,
and Tesereyz, whom I slew,

het ouch rîter dâ genuoc.
had also knights there enough.

mir wart erslagen ûf Alischanz
to-me was slain on Alischanz

der geflôrierte Vivîanz
the flowered Vivianz

und Mîle mîner swester kint.
and Mile my sister's child.

ob ir zweier mâge in vreuden sint,
if of-them two kinsmen in joys are,

die hânt vil untriwe erkorn. 151,15
they have much unfaithfulness chosen.

gevangen unde sus verlorn
captured and thus lost

ich dannoch einlef fürsten hân.
I still eleven princes have.

den heiden muos ich sige lân,
to-the heathens must I victory leave,

dô Gautiers und Gaudîn,
when Gautiers and Gaudin,

Hûnas und Gybalîn, 151,20
Hunas and Gybalin,

Bertram und Gêrart,
Bertram and Gerart,

Hûes und Witschart,
Hues and Witschart,

und ouch mîn neve Jozzeranz,
and also my nephew Jozzeranz,

und der Burgunjoys Gwigrimanz:
and the Burgundian Gwigrimanz:

daz eilfte was Sansôn: 151,25
the eleventh was Sanson:

mit poynder maneger hurte dôn
with charge of-many-a onset's tune

und maneger niwer storje komn
and of-many-a new troop's coming

hât sî im strîte mir benomn,
has them in-the battle from-me taken,

daz ich niht weiz der eilver nôt.
that I not know of-the eleven distress.

Myle und Vivîanz sint tôt.'
Myle and Vivianz are dead.'

152,1 Drî starke karrâsche unde ein wagen
Three strong carts and a wagon

möhtenz wazzer niht getragen,
might-the water not carry,

daz von der rîter ougen wiel.
which from the knights' eyes welled.

Heimrîch stuont kûm daz er niht viel.
Heimrich stood hardly that he not fell.

152,5 dâ wart an den stunden
there was at the hours

manec clâriu hant gewunden,
many-a bright hand wrung,

daz si begunden krachen.
that they began to-crack.

von herzen frœlîch lachen
from heart gladly laughing

durch Vivîanzen wart verswigen:
for Vivianz became silenced:

152,10 sînen mâgen jâmer was gedigen.
to-his kinsmen misery was come.

dô sprach von Paveie Irmenschart
then spoke of Pavia Irmenschart

'wie ist iwer ellen sus bewart?
'how is your valor thus guarded?

ir tragt doch manlîchen lîp:
you bear yet manly body:

sult ir nu weinen sô diu wîp
(if)-shall you now weep as the women

oder als ein kint nâch dem ei, 152,15
or as a child after the egg,

waz touc helden sölh geschrei?
what avails heroes such crying?

welt ir manlîche lebn,
(if)-will you manly live,

sô müezt ir lîhen unde gebn,
so must you lend and give,

und helfet dem der zuns ist komn,
and help him who to-us is come,

des flust wir alle hân vernomn. 152,20
whose loss we all have heard.

dâ hab wir mit im an verlorn.
there have we with him in lost.

die von Heimrîch sint erborn,
those-who from Heimrich are born,

ob sîn künne ir prîs wil tuon,
if his kin their prize will do,

sô wirt Willalm mîn suon
so becomes Willalm my son

ergetzet swaz im wirret. 152,25
compensated whatever him troubles.

swen zageheit des irret,
whomever cowardice of-that hinders,

der möhte sanfter wesen tôt.'
he might more-gently be dead.'

dem marcrâven zorn gebôt
to-the margrave wrath commanded

daz er dennoch sîne swester schalt,
that he still his sister scolded,

diu etswâ unschulde enkalt.
who sometime innocence paid.

153,1 Die minne veile hânt, diu wîp,
Those-who love for-sale have, the women,

rœmscher küneginne lîp
of-Roman queen body

wart dick nâch in benennet.
was often after them named.

die namn het ich bekennet,
the names would-have I known,

153,5 ob ich die wolte vor iu sagen:
if I them would before you tell:

nu muoz ich si durh zuht verdagen.
now must I them for courtesy keep-silent.

er schalt se et mêre denne genuoc.
he scolded her just more than enough.

ob er ie manheit getruoc,
if he ever manhood bore,

oder ob er ie gedâhte
or if he ever thought

153,10 daz er sîn dienst brâhte
that he his service brought

durch herzen gir in wîbe gebot,
for heart's desire into woman's command,

ob er freude oder nôt
if he joy or distress

ie enpfienc durh wîbes minne,
ever received for woman's love,

an sînem manlîchem sinne
in his manly mind

153,15 was doch die kiusche zuht betrogen.
was yet the chaste courtesy deceived.

ê wart nie rîter baz gezogen
before became never knight better bred

und âne valsch sô kurtoys.
and without falseness so courteous.

er jach, Tybalt der Arâboys
he declared, Tybalt the Arab

wære ir rîter manegen tac.
were her knight many-a day.

'dem werden künege ouch si wol mac 153,20
'to-the worthy king also she well may

bieten êr mit minnen lône.
offer honor with love's reward.

er hât si dicke schône
he has her often fairly

mit armen umbevangen.
with arms embraced.

deist noch mêr regangen
that-is still more befallen

ir man ze smæhe dan durch sie. 153,25
to-her husband for contempt than for her.

Tybalde ich Gyburge nie
from-Tybalt I Gyburc never

het enpfuort, wan daz ich rach
would-have abducted, except that I avenged

daz unserem künege hie geschach.
what to-our king here happened.

swaz Tybalt hie geborget hât,
whatever Tybalt here borrowed has,

Gyburc daz minnen gelt mir lât.'
Gyburc that love's payment to-me leaves.'

Alyze

XXXVI

The king's daughter Alyze enters, slender as a twig and richly adorned, and at the sight of her Willalm's wrath is silenced. She falls at its feet, and he raises her, says that she has laid worthiness upon him, and refuses only her kiss, since Terramer's power has disinherited him of kisses.

154,1 Dô kom des küneges tohter
Then came the king's daughter

Alyze. done mohter
Alyze. then could-be

sîne zuht nimmêr zebrechen:
his courtesy never break:

swaz er zornes kunde sprechen,
whatever he of-wrath could speak,

154,5 der wart vil gar durch si verswigen.
it became very wholly for her silenced.

swes ir muoter was bezign
of-whatever her mother was accused

von im, wærz dannoch ungetân,
by him, were-it still undone,

ez wære ouch dâ nâch fürbaz lân.
it would-be also there after further left.

diu junge reine süeze clâr,
the young pure sweet bright-one,

154,10 mange kurze scheiteln truoc ir hâr,
many-a short parting bore her hair,

krisp unz in die swarten.
curled until into the scalp.

swers rehte wolde warten,
whoever-it rightly would observe,

si was selbe swankel als ein rîs,
she was herself slender as a twig,

geflôriert in mangen wîs.
flowered in many ways.

mit spæhen borten kleine, 154,15
with skillful borders small,

die verwiert wârn mit gesteine,
which set were with gems,

het ieslîch drümel sîn sunder bant,
had each strand its separate band,

daz man niht ze vaste drumbe want,
that one not too firmly around-it wound,

als ez ein krône wære.
as it a crown were.

Alyz diu sældenbære, 154,20
Alyz the fortunate,

man möht ûf eine wunden
one might onto a wound

ir kiusche hân gebunden,
her chastity have bound,

dâ daz ungenande wære bî:
where the unnamed were by:

belibe diu niht vor schaden vrî,
remained it not from harm free,

si müese enkelten wunders. 154,25
it must pay for-wonder.

einen gürtel brâht von Lunders,
a girdle brought from London,

wol geworht, lanc unde smal
well wrought, long and narrow

(des drum tet ûf die erden val:
(its end made onto the earth fall:

diu rinke ein rubîn tiure),
the clasp a ruby costly),

dâ mit was diu gehiure
there with was the gracious-one

155,1 umbevangen an der krenke.
embraced at the waist.

noch baz denne ichs gedenke
still better than I-it think

lât si getubieret sîn.
let her adorned be.

si gap sô minneclîchen schîn,
she gave so lovely appearance,

155,5 des lîhte ein vreuden siecher man
of-which perhaps a of-joys sick man

wider hôhen muot gewan.
back high spirit gained.

ir brust ze nider noch ze hôch.
her breast too low nor too high.

der werlde vîentschaft si vlôch.
the world's enmity she fled.

ir lîp was wunsch des gernden
her body was wish of-the desiring-one

155,10 und ein trôst des vreuden wernden.
and a comfort of-the of-joy warding-one.

swem ir munt ein grüezen bôt,
to-whomever her mouth a greeting offered,

der brâhte sælde unz an den tôt.
he brought fortune until to the death.

von der meide kom ein glast,
from the maiden came a gleam,

daz der heimlîch und der gast
that the household-one and the guest

mit gelîcher volge jâhen 155,15
with equal following declared

daz si nie gesâhen
that they never saw

decheine magt sô wol gevar.
any maiden so well colored.

gein ir spranc snellîche dar
toward her sprang quickly thither

ir œheim Buov von Komarzî
her uncle Buov of Komarzi

und dennoch anderr fürsten drî: 155,20
and still other princes three:

die machten rûm der clâren.
they made room for-the bright-one.

alle die dâ wâren
all who there were

begunden alle gemeine jehen,
began all in-common to-declare,

daz dem grôz sælde wære geschehen,
that to-him great fortune were happened,

swen dâ reichte ir ougen blickes swanc: 155,25
whomever there reached her eyes' glance's swing:

dem wart dar nâch sîn trûren kranc.
to-him became there after his mourning weak.

âne mantel in ir rocke gienc
without mantle in her gown went

diu magt, dô si mit zuht enpfienc
the maiden, when she with courtesy received

ir œheim. dô daz geschach,
her uncle. when that happened,

vor sînen fuozen man si sach.
before his feet one her saw.

156,1 Sîn ougen begunden wallen,
His eyes began to-well,

dô er die magt sach vallen
when he the maiden saw fall

nider an sîne füeze.
down to his feet.

'enkelden ichs niht müeze
'pay I-it not may

156,5 wider got,' sprach er hinz ir.
before God,' spoke he toward her.

'wie kumstu, niftel, sus zuo mir?
'how comest-thou, niece, thus to me?

jâ wære dem künege Terramêr
indeed would-be to-the king Terramer

dîn fuozvallen alze hêr.
thy foot-falling all-too proud.

du bist des rœmschen küneges kint:
thou art the Roman king's child:

156,10 swaz hie rœmscher fürsten sint,
whatever here of-Roman princes are,

die sulen mich haben deste wirs.
they shall me hold the worse.

niftel, nu gestate mirs,
niece, now permit me-it,

daz ich in dîme gebote lebe:
that I in thy command live:

dîn güete mir den rât nu gebe.
thy goodness to-me the counsel now give.

156,15 ob du mich niht spottes werst,
if thou me not of-mockery defend,

sô stant ûf: swes du an mich gerst,
so stand up: whatever thou of me desirest,

des wil ich dir ze hulden pflegen.
of-that will I to-thee for goodwill take-care.

du hâst mir werdekeit durchlegen.'
thou hast to-me worthiness laid-through.'

diu magt stuont ûf, er vienc si zim.
the maiden stood up, he caught her to-him.

er sprach 'mit urloube ich nim 156,20
he spoke 'with leave I take

dîn lieht antlütze in mîne hant.
thy bright countenance into my hand.

mîn kus dir schiere wære bekant,
my kiss to-thee soon would-be known,

wan daz ich kuss enterbet pin.
except that I of-kiss disinherited am.

mîn beste minneclîch gewin,
my best lovely gain,

den hât mir Terramêres kraft 156,25
that has to-me Terramer's strength

umbelegen mit sölher rîterschaft,
surrounded with such knighthood,

daz mir der kus nu wildet.
that to-me the kiss now grows-strange.

got hât dich doch gebildet,
God has thee yet shaped,

dâ von der walt sich swenden muoz,
there from the forest itself vanish must,

enpfæht ein wert man dînen gruoz.'
(if)-receives a worthy man thy greeting.'

Alyze Makes Peace

XXXVII

Alyze asks Willalm to forgive her mother, and he agrees for her sake, explaining that he made the king and that the queen has turned the king's help from him. Irmschart sends Alyze with Buove and Scherins to tell the queen of their kin's grief, then vows an army for Orange at her own cost, eighteen mules' load of bezants for anyone who will take gold, and her own arms. He asks her instead to send his father and her aid, and she promises gold, horses, and arms.

157,1 Sô si aller beste kunde
As she of-all best could

Alyze ir rede begunde,
Alyze her speech began,

sô daz doch weinen was derbî.
so that yet weeping was there-by.

dô sprach diu magt valscheite vrî
then spoke the maiden of-falseness free

157,5 'ouwê mir dîner werdekeit,
'alas for-me for-thy worthiness,

diu noch nie unprîs erleit!
which still never dishonor suffered!

wem liez diu kiuschlîche zuht?
to-whom left the chaste courtesy?

nu war hât wîplîch êre fluht,
now whither has womanly honor flight,

wan hin zer mannes güete?
except away to-the man's goodness?

157,10 œheim, dîn gemüete
uncle, thy spirit

hât sich ze gar verkêret.
has itself too wholly turned.

wer hât dich zorn gelêret
who has thee wrath taught

gein der tumben muoter mîn?
toward the foolish mother mine?

diu doch dîn swester solte sîn,
she yet thy sister should be,

ob sich diu kan versprechen, 157,15
if herself she can mis-speak,

wiltu daz danne rechen,
(if)-wilt-thou that then avenge,

dâ von sich krenket unser art,
there from itself weakens our nature,

dâ von sint beide unbewart
there from are both unguarded

ir werdekeit und dîn prîs.
her worthiness and thy prize.

ob ich dich dunke nu sô wîs, 157,20
if I thee seem now so wise,

du solt si mîn geniezen lân,
thou shalt her of-me profit let,

verkius swaz si dir hât getân.
forgive whatever she to-thee has done.

des lâz ein teil durch mich geschehen
of-that let a part for me happen

alhie, daz ez die fürsten sehen.
here, that it the princes see.

der selben bete ich fürbaz man 157,25
the same request I further remind

durch dîne muoter (diust mîn an)
for thy mother (she-is my grandmother)

und durch Gyburg die vrouwen mîn,
and for Gyburg the lady mine,

diu mich als ir kindelîn
who me as her little-child

hât dicke an ir arm genomn.
has often on her arm taken.

diust mir leider nu ze verre komn.'
she-is to-me alas now too far come.'

158,1 Der marcrâve sprach 'liebez kint,
The margrave spoke 'dear child,

in dîn gebot dich underwint
into thy command thee undertake

mîns lîbes der hie vor dir stêt,
of-my body which here before thee stands,

der ninder rîtet noch engêt
which nowhere rides nor goes

158,5 unz ich mit dînen hulden var.
until I with thy goodwill fare.

nimstu bekenneclîche war,
takest-thou recognizably heed,

wie mîn dîn muoter hât gepflegn?
how of-me thy mother has taken-care?

diu möhte sich wol hân bewegn
she might herself well have resolved

des sich der künec gein mir bewac,
of-what itself the king toward me resolved,

158,10 der mîn doch nie alsô gepflac
who of-me yet never so took-care

als ez em rîche zæme.
as it to-the realm befitted.

bin ich ir ungenæme,
(if)-am I to-her unwelcome,

doch möhte mîn wol werden rât,
yet might for-me well become counsel,

wan daz si nu und dicke hât
except that she now and often has

mirs küneges helfe erwendet. 158,15
to-me-the king's help turned-away.

si wær des ungeschendet,
she would-be of-that undisgraced,

ob si jæhe 'deist der bruoder mîn.'
if she should-declare 'that-is the brother mine.'

ez enmugen niht allez künege sîn:
it can not all kings be:

si solte der fürsten schônen.
she should of-the princes spare.

der næhst bî rœmscher krônen, 158,20
the nearest by Roman crown,

ich wæne iedoch daz sî mîn nam.
I think yet that be my name.

bin ich gedigen in ir scham,
(if)-am I come into her shame,

die smæhe ich mir selbe erkôs,
the contempt I to-me self chose,

dô ich den keiser Karl verlôs.
when I the emperor Charles lost.

getorst ich ir ze swester jehen, 158,25
dared I to-her as sister declare,

sô hete man mich baz ersehen
so would-have one me better seen

von ir munde enpfangen.
from her mouth received.

do ich für si kom gegangen,
when I before her came walking,

gein ir gruoze ich dô niht neic:
toward her greeting I then not bowed:

daz was des schult daz sin versweic.
that was of-that guilt that she-it kept-silent.

159,1 Waz solten d'andern denne tuon?
What should the-others then do?

ich pin iedoch des selben suon,
I am yet of-the same son,

der si für eine tohter zôch:
who her for a daughter reared:

si möhte wol geleben noch
she might well live still

159,5 deiz wurde ein genôzschaft.
that-it should-become a peership.

der künec hât alle sîne kraft
the king has all his power

niht wan von mîner hant bejagt.
nothing but from my hand won.

wære ich eine an im verzagt,
were I alone in him despaired,

die in ze hêrren müezen hân,
who him as lord must have,

159,10 ez wære et von in ungetân.
it would-be just by them undone.

ich antwurte imz rîche,
I handed to-him-the realm,

dâ die fürsten al gelîche,
where the princes all alike,

die minren und die mêrren,
the lesser and the greater,

et al die landes hêrren,
just all the land's lords,

159,15 in sicherheite lebeten
in surety lived

und hazzes gein im strebeten.
and of-hatred toward him strove.

niftel, daz tet ich durch sie.
niece, that did I for her.

nu stên ich alsô vor dir hie,
now stand I so before thee here,

daz ich durch dîne komende tugent,
that I for thy coming virtue,

und die du hâst in dîner jugent, 159,20
and that-which thou hast in thy youth,

dîner muoter schulde lâze varn.
thy mother's guilt let fare.

ich wil ouch zorn gein ir bewarn.
I will also wrath toward her guard.

bit si her ûz zuo den fürsten komn.
bid her hither out to the princes come.

hab iemen hie von mir vernomn
(if)-has anyone here from me heard

dâ wandel nâch gehœre, 159,25
where amends after belongs,

ê daz ich gar zestœre
before that I wholly destroy

dem künege sîne hôchgezît,
for-the king his feast,

so ergib ich mich ân allen strît
so yield I me without all dispute

gevangenlîche in dînen rât:
captive-like into thy counsel:

dîn gebot den slüzzel hât.'
thy command the key has.'

Irmschart diu alde, 160,1
Irmschart the old,

'nâch dîner muoter balde,'
'after thy mother quickly,'

sprach si ze Alyzen der magt.
spoke she to Alyze the maiden.

‘wirt nu niht von ir geklagt
‘(if)-becomes now not by her lamented

160,5 diu dürren herzebæren sêr
the dry heart-felt sores

die durch Tybalden Terramêr
which for Tybalt Terramer

an dîme geslähte hât getân,
on thy lineage has done,

ir sol getrûwen niemer man.
her shall trust never man.

ganc mit ir, Buov von Komarzî,
go with her, Buov of Komarzi,

160,10 und Schêrîns von Pantalî.
and Scherins of Pantali.

saget ir bescheidenlîche dort
tell her reasonably there

den unverzerten jâmers hort
the unconsumed misery's hoard

der ûf unserem künne ligt.
which on our kin lies.

ob daz ir herze ringe wigt,
if that her heart lightly weighs,

160,15 sô ist ir wîplîch êre
so is her womanly honor

zergangen immer mêre.’
perished ever more.’

Alyze mit urloube dan
Alyze with leave thence

fuor, mit ir die zwêne man,
went, with her the two men,

Buove unde Schêrîns.
Buove and Scherins.

‘mit rîchem solde wil ich zins 160,20
‘with rich pay will I tribute

von mînem frîen lîbe gebn.
from my free body give.

waz touc mir doch mîn altez lebn?’
what avails me yet my old life?’

sus sprach von Paveie Irmschart.
thus spoke of Pavia Irmschart.

‘ze Oransche ein hervart
‘to Orange a campaign

ich von mîner koste tuon 160,25
I from my cost make

dir ze helfe, lieber suon.
to-thee as help, dear son.

mîn hort ist ungerüeret:
my hoard is untouched:

des wirt nu vil zefüeret,
of-that becomes now much scattered,

kan iemen golt enpfâhen,
(if)-can anyone gold receive,

swem daz niht wil versmâhen,
whomever that not will disdain,

en teile durch dich, liebez kint, 161,1
in part for thee, dear child,

swaz ahtzehen merrint
whatever eighteen pack-mules

bysande mugen geziehen.
of-bezants can draw.

ich wil dir niht enpfliehen:
I will thee not flee:

harnasch muoz an mînen lîp. 161,5
armor must onto my body.

ich pin sô starc wol ein wîp,
I am so strong well a woman,

daz ich pî dir wâpen trâge.
that I by thee arms bear.

der ellenthafte, niht der zage,
the valorous-one, not the coward,

mac mich pî dir schouwen:
may me by thee behold:

161,10 ich wil mit swerten houwen.'
I will with swords hew.'

'frouwe,' sprach der markîs,
'lady,' spoke the marquis,

'sît iwer triwe und iwer prîs
'since your faithfulness and your prize

sô volleclîchen rât mir gît,
so fully counsel to-me gives,

sô dunket mich des gein iu zît
so seems to-me of-that toward you time

161,15 daz ir ouch hœret mînen rât.
that you also hear my counsel.

ich weiz wol daz ir triwe hât.
I know well that you faithfulness have.

sendet mir mînen vater dar:
send me my father thither:

der kan wol hers nemen war,
he can well of-host take heed,

er strîtet ouch swa's nôt geschiht.
he fights also wherever-it distress happens.

161,20 der helm ist iu benennet niht,
the helm is to-you named not,

noch ander wâpen noch der schilt.
nor other arms nor the shield.

ob iuch des, vrouwe, niht bevilt,
if you of-that, lady, not wearies,

gebt mir sus iwer stiure.'
give me thus your aid.'

do gelobt im diu gehiure
then promised to-him the gracious-one

von silber und von golde 161,25
of silver and of gold

und von anderm rîchem solde
and of other rich pay

schœniu ors und wâpen lieht:
fair horses and arms bright:

‘sun, ich wil dich triegen nieht:
‘son, I will thee deceive not:

des antwurte ich dir genuoc,
of-that hand I to-thee enough,

vil mêr denne ichs noch ie gewuoc.’
very more than I-it still ever mentioned.’

BOOK IV

The Queen Repents

XXXVIII

The poet defends Willalm's violence by the love and misery he bore. Fearing a new storm, the queen will not unbolt her door until Alyze tells her the quarrel is over; then Scherins tells her of the deaths at Alischanz. The queen, grieving for Vivianz, says she would rather have been beheaded, offers her treasure as pay to any soldiers who will avenge their kin, resolves to ask the king and his men for help, and goes out to Willalm.

Welt ir nu hœren wiez gestê 162,1
Will you now hear how-it stands

umb den zorn den ir hôrtet ê,
about the wrath which you heard before,

wer den ze suone brâhte,
who it to reconciliation brought,

wie dem marcrâven nâhte
how to-the margrave neared

helfe unde hôher muot, 162,5
help and high spirit,

und wie ir lîp unde ir guot
and how her body and her goods

und ir gunst mit herzen sinne
and her favor with heart's mind

diu rœmisch küneginne
the Roman queen

mit triwe ergap an sîn gebot?
with faithfulness gave-up to his command?

des was dem marcrâven nôt, 162,10
of-that was to-the margrave need,

daz Gyburge wol gelanc,
that Gyburc well succeeded,

wan in minne und jâmer twanc:
for him love and misery constrained:

waz phandes hete er lâzen dort!
what of-pledge had he left there!

nu prüevet ouch den grôzen mort
now consider also the great murder

der ûf Alischanz geschach,
which on Alischanz happened,

dar zuo daz vorhtlîch ungemach
there to the fearful discomfort

dâ Gyburc inne beleip,
where Gyburc in remained,

diu in nâch helfe von ir treip.
who him after help from her drove.

Gyburc was sîn liebstez pfant:
Gyburc was his dearest pledge:

nâch ir im sinne und vreude swant.
after her to-him mind and joy vanished.

ungedulteclîch er muoste lebn.
impatiently he must live.

ein esse im niemen übergebn
an ace him no-one over-give

kunde an sô bewandem spil.
could in so turned game.

diu flust der mâge twanc in vil,
the loss of-the kinsmen constrained him much,

noch mêr diu nôt der Gyburc phlac.
still more the distress which Gyburc bore.

mitten in sîm herzen lac
middle in his heart lay

gruntveste der sorgen fundamint.
ground-firm of-the cares foundation.

er möht erbarmen die halt sint
he might move-to-pity those-who even are

des wâren gelouben âne,
of-the true faith without,

juden, heiden, publicâne.
Jews, heathens, publicans.

Mich müet ouch noch sîn kumber. 163,1
Me troubles also still his affliction.

dunk i'emen deste tumber,
(if)-seem I-to-anyone the-more foolish,

die smæhe lîd ich gerne.
the contempt suffer I gladly.

swenne ich nu rede gelerne,
whenever I now speech learn,

sô sol ich in bereden baz, 163,5
so shall I him excuse better,

war umbe er sîner zuht vergaz,
what for he his courtesy forgot,

dô diu künegîn sô brogte,
when the queen so boasted,

daz er si drumbe zogte.
that he her for-it pulled.

des twanc in minne und ander nôt
to-that constrained him love and other distress

unde mâge und manne tôt. 163,10
and kinsmen's and men's death.

Alîze was nu wider komn,
Alize was now back come,

und het ir muoter wol vernomn
and had her mother well heard

daz des marcrâven zorn
that the margrave's wrath

endehaft was verkorn:
finally was forgiven:

163,15 doch wolte si se niht lâzen în.
yet would she her not let in.

si widersaz den mâ vesîn,
she resisted the bad neighbor,

ir bruodr, den argen nâchgebûr.
her brother, the evil neighbor.

si vorhte daz ein ander schûr
she feared that an other storm

ûf si vallen solte:
onto her fall should:

163,20 durch daz si niht enwolte
for that she not would

den rigel dannen sliezen.
the bolt thence unlock.

'jâ möht ich niht geniezen
'indeed might I not profit

des küneges noch der fürsten sîn,
of-the king nor of-the princes his,

dar zuo des werden vater mîn.
there to of-the worthy father mine.

163,25 tohter, hüet daz mir dîn vride
daughter, guard that to-me thy peace

iht verscherte mîne lide.'
at-all cut-up my limbs.'

Alyze sprach 'mir stêt hie bî
Alyze spoke 'to-me stand here by

Schêrîns und Buov von Kumarzî:
Scherins and Buove of Kumarzi:

die hânt dort suone enpfangen:
they have there reconciliation received:

der zorn ist gar zergangen.'
the wrath is wholly perished.'

Si liez die maget wol gevar 164,1
She let the maiden well colored

dar în. duo saget ir rehte gar
there in. then told her rightly wholly

den grôzen jâmer Schêrîns
the great misery Scherins

und wie mit tôde gâben zins
and how with death gave tribute

ûf Alischanz ir mâge: 164,5
on Alischanz her kinsmen:

'und dô der künec sô trâge
'and when the king so sluggishly

den marcrâven hiute enpfienc,
the margrave today received,

dô er durch klage für in gienc,
when he for lament before him went,

frouwe, des enkultet ir.'
lady, for-that paid you.'

'ôwê,' sprach si, 'het er mir 164,10
'alas,' spoke she, 'had he to-me

daz houbet mîn hin ab geslagen!
the head mine away off struck!

sone dorft ich nu niht langer klagen:
so would-need I now not longer lament:

daz wære ein kurzlîcher tôt.
that would-be a brief death.

ich muoz die berhaften nôt
I must the fruitful distress

und den wuocher der sorgen 164,15
and the usury of-the cares

den âbent und den morgen,
the evening and the morning,

beidiu tag unde naht,
both day and night,

ob mir ie triwe wart geslaht,
if to-me ever faithfulness was born,

tragen nâch mîme künne.
bear after my kin.

swer mir nu guotes günne,
whoever to-me now good grants,

der wünsche et daz ich sterbe
he wish just that I die

ê der jâmer mir rewerbe
before the misery to-me procure

alsô herzebæriu leit,
so heart-felt sorrows,

daz der unsin die wîpheit
that the madness the womanhood

an mir iht entêre.
in me anything dishonor.

hân ich von Terramêre
(if)-have I from Terramer

die hôhen flust ûf Alischanz,
the high loss on Alischanz,

ey beâs âmîs Vivîanz,
ah fair friend Vivianz,

wie vil noch unsippiu wîp
how many still unrelated women

dînen geflôrierten lîp
thy flowered body

suln klagen durch die minne!
shall lament for the love!

pflac mîn bruoder sinne,
practiced my brother sense,

der was vergezzen an der zît
it was forgotten at the time

duo du under schilde gæbe strît:
when thou under shield gavest battle:

der was noch dîner jugende ein last. 165,5
it was still for-thy youth a burden.

mir sol nâch dîme tôde gast
to-me shall after thy death a-stranger

immer sîn der hôhe muot.
ever be the high spirit.

nu wol her die wellen guot!
now well hither who want goods!

des wil i'n geben alsô vil,
of-that will I-them give so much,

daz ander küngîn ir zil 165,10
that other queens their goal

niht durfen für mich stôzen.
not need before me thrust.

mînen jâmer den grôzen
my misery the great

ræch ich, möht ich, schiere.
would-avenge I, might I, soon.

wâ nu soldiere?
where now soldiers?

swaz der in rœmschem rîche sî, 165,15
whatever of-them in Roman realm be,

den künde, Buov von Kumarzî,
to-them proclaim, Buove of Kumarzi,

der rœmschen küneginne solt:
the Roman queen's pay:

und denke ob si dir wæren holt,
and think if they to-thee were devoted,

unser mâge die wir hân verlorn.
our kinsmen whom we have lost.

was mînem bruoder hiute zorn 165,20
was to-my brother today wrath

daz ich in sô swache enpfienc,
that I him so poorly received,

wîslîch erz doch ane vienc
wisely he-it yet on began

daz ich mîn leben brâhte dan.
that I my life brought thence.

ich sol den künec und sîne man
I shall the king and his men

165,25 helfe und genâde bitn:
for-help and for-grace bid:

sint die mit manlîchen sitn,
(if)-are they with manly manners,

daz richet unser ungemach.'
that avenges our discomfort.'

si gienc her ûz, dâ gein ir sprach
she went hither out, where toward her spoke

der marcrâve Willalm:
the margrave Willalm:

trûrc was sîner stimme galm.
mournful was his voice's sound.

The Queen's Lament

XXXIX

Willalm prays that Christ, who wore the crown of thorns, may soften his sister's anger, and asks her to lament their thirteen kinsmen slain by Terramer and to give him some comfort. She laments Vivianz, likens her grief to Anfortas's wound, promises to comfort her brother as she can, calls on Irmschart to lament with her, and tells her brothers they are one body. Irmschart answers that she and Heimrich share the loss, and that the queen must now lament the battle to the king.

'Nu müeze senften iweren zorn 166,1
'Now may soften your wrath

der ame kriuze het den dorn
he-who at-the cross had the thorn

ûf dem houpte zeiner krône.
on the head as-a crown.

welt ir nâch sîme lône
(if)-will you after his reward

mit decheime dienste ringen, 166,5
with any service wrestle,

ir sult die triwe bringen
you shall the faithfulness bring

für in ame urteillîchem tage,
before him at-the judgment-like day,

daz ir nâch den sît in klage,
that you after them are in lament,

die wârn und iu verchsippe sint,
who were and to-you blood-kin are,

iwer bruoder unde iur swester kint, 166,10
your brother and your sister's child,

drîzehen von iwer art,
thirteen of your nature,

die mir Terramêrs übervart
whom from-me Terramer's crossing

nam: er vant uns doch mit wer.
took: he found us yet with defense.

sunderstorje unt sunderher
separate-troop and separate-host

166,15 und mir von sunderlande komn
and to-me from separate-land come

ieslîcher, die hât mir benomn
each, those has from-me taken

der hôhe rîche Terramêr.
the high rich Terramer.

nu tuot gein sîner zeswen kêr,
now make toward his right-hand turn,

der Adâmen worhte:
who Adam wrought:

166,20 iwer künn daz unrevorhte,
your kin the unafraid,

gotes unverzagtiu hantgetât,
God's undaunted handiwork,

die mir Terramêr getœtet hât,
whom for-me Terramer killed has,

die ergebt an gotes bärme grôz,
them give-up to God's mercy great,

und mant in daz er durch uns gôz
and remind him that he for us poured

166,25 ûf d'erde ûz sînen wunden bluot.
onto the-earth out-of his wounds blood.

ob er nu helfeclîche tuot,
if he now helpfully does,

so erbarme ich sîne gotheit.
so move-to-pity I his godhead.

vrouwe, ez solt ouch iu sîn leit
lady, it should also to-you be grievous

daz ich pin trûrens unrelôst,
that I am of-mourning unreleased,

und gæbet mir etslîchen trôst.'
and should-give me some comfort.'

'Ôwê wem solt ich trœsten gebn, 167,1
'Alas to-whom should I comfort give,

ode war zuo touc mîn lebn?
or where to avails my life?

mîn funden vreude ist flüstec,
my found joy is lost,

mîn hœhe ist niderbrüstec:
my height is broken-down:

mir wehset nu gelîche ein leit 167,5
to-me grows now alike a sorrow

der Anfortases arbeit,
to-the Anfortas's toil,

der quâl von sîner wunden,
to-the torment from his wound,

die er ze mangen stunden
which he at many hours

bî grôzer rîcheite truoc.
by great wealth bore.

ich het ouch werdekeit genuoc 167,10
I had also worthiness enough

von der rœmschen hœhe kür,
from the Roman height's choice,

ê ich ûf Alischanz verlür
before I on Alischanz should-lose

den undersatz der hœhe mîn:
the prop of-the height mine:

der muoz nu sîgende sîn.
it must now sinking be.

167,15 wie hân ich armez wîp verlorn
how have I poor woman lost

helde die von mir reborn
heroes who from me born

wâren unde ouch ich von in!
were and also I from them!

ouwê vreude, dîn gewin
alas joy, thy gain

gît andm orte smæhen lôn.
gives at-other place contemptible reward.

167,20 ey Heimrîch von Narbôn,
ah Heimrich of Narbonne,

waz was erblüet ûz dîner fruht
what was blossomed out-of thy fruit

kiusche, milte, manheit, zuht!
chastity, generosity, manhood, courtesy!

mirst ze fruo misselungen
to-me-is too early misfortuned

an dem clâren jungen,
in the bright young-one,

167,25 den diu küngîn Gyburc mir benam
whom the queen Gyburc from-me took

und in rezôch als ez ir zam.
and him reared as it her befitted.

diu süeze von sîm blicke
the sweetness from his glance

noch manegem wîbe dicke
still to-many-a woman often

sol füegen klagehafte nôt.
shall join lamentable distress.

ey wie getorste dich der tôt
ah how dared thee the death

168,1 ie gerüeren, Vivîanz,
ever touch, Vivianz,

unt daz er lât mîn herze ganz?
and that he leaves my heart whole?

bruoder markîs, trûric man,
brother marquis, mournful man,

ich sol dich trœsten als ich kan,
I shall thee comfort as I can,

dar nâch als ez mir drumbe stêt. 168,5
there after as it to-me for-it stands.

nu geloube daz mir nâhe gêt
now believe that to-me near goes

diu swære vlust unserr art.
the heavy loss of-our nature.

wâ nu, von Paveie Irmenschart?
where now, of Pavia Irmenschart?

gedenke ob du mich habst getragn,
think if thou me hast borne,

hilf mir diz leit mit triwen klagn.' 168,10
help me this sorrow with faithfulness lament.'

abe sprach diu künegîn
but spoke the queen

'mîne bruoder die hie sîn,
'my brothers who here are,

gedenket daz wir sîn ein lîp.
think that we are one body.

ir heizet man, ich pin ein wîp:
you are-called man, I am a woman:

dan ist niht underscheiden, 168,15
there-in is not distinction,

niht wan ein verch uns beiden.'
nothing but one life to-us both.'

'trage wir triuwe under brust,
'(if)-bear we faithfulness under breast,

wir klagen unser gemeine flust,
we lament our common loss,

Heimrîs und ich, wir zwei,'
Heimris and I, we two,'

168,20 sprach Irmschart von Pavei,
spoke Irmschart of Pavia,

'mîne süne hie od swâ si sint.
'my sons here or wherever they are.

ir sît mîn frouwe und ouch mîn kint.
you are my lady and also my child.

wir loben des got und sagen im danc,
we praise of-that God and say to-him thanks,

daz iuch nu ân valschen kranc
that you now without false weakness

168,25 erbarmet unser fliesen.
moves-to-pity our losing.

alrêrst nu sul wir kiesen
first-of-all now shall we see

ob irz der fürsten vrouwe sît:
whether you-it of-the princes lady are:

sô klagt ûf Alischanz den strît
so lament on Alischanz the battle

dem der rœmisch krône tregt,
to-him who Roman crown bears,

ob in iwer dienst erwegt.'
if him your service stirs.'

The Brothers' Vows

XL

Heimrich commends his sons to the queen. She kneels with her brothers before the king and begs him to help Willalm; he rebukes her for pleading for the man who dishonored him, but agrees to consider it. The queen promises to equip with goods anyone who will fight, and the brothers Bernart, Bertram, Gybert, and Buove each vow their help, Bertram weeping for his sister's son Mile and for Vivianz, and Buove promising a thousand armored horses for Orange.

'Frouwe,' sprach dô Heimrîs, 169,1
'Lady,' spoke then Heimris,

'mînen sun den markîs
'my son the marquis

und swaz ir ander bruoder hât,
and whatever you other brothers have,

die sol durch wîplîchen rât
them shall for womanly counsel

nu bevogten iwer hant.' 169,5
now protect your hand.'

dâ stuont Bernart von Brubant
there stood Bernart of Brubant

und Buove von Cumarzî
and Buove of Cumarzi

unde Gybert, die drî:
and Gybert, the three:

der vierde was Bertram:
the fourth was Bertram:

diu künegîn die alle nam, 169,10
the queen them all took,

die vieln dem künege an sînen fuoz.
they fell to-the king at his foot.

si sprach ‘durh nôt ich werben muoz
she spoke ‘for distress I strive must

helfe sô helflîche,
for-help so helpfully,

diu den fürsten unt dem rîche
which for-the princes and for-the realm

169,15 werb nâch hôhem prîse,
strive after high prize,

daz ir dem markîse
that you to-the marquis

gestêt durch iwer êre,
stand for your honor,

sô daz ir Terramêre
so that you Terramer's

ze Oransche leger wendet.
at Orange camp turn-away.

169,20 iuch und daz rîche er schendet.’
you and the realm he disgraces.’

‘frouwe, ir vart mit tumben sitn,’
‘lady, you fare with foolish manners,’

sprach der künec, ‘welt ir dem helfe bitn,
spoke the king, ‘will you for-him help bid,

der an iu hât entêret mich.
who in you has dishonored me.

het er baz enthalten sich,
had he better restrained himself,

169,25 daz gediend ich, möht ich dienst hân.
that would-serve I, might I service have.

er ist iwer bruodr und ist mîn man:
he is your brother and is my man:

waz moht iu daz ze staten komn?
what could to-you that to avail come?

er hât mir êre ein teil genomn.
he has from-me honor a part taken.

daz muoz nu sîn. stêt ûf,' sprach er:
that must now be. stand up,' spoke he:

'ich berâte mich umb iwer ger.'
'I take-counsel myself about your desire.'

Ûf stuont diu sêre klagende. 170,1
Up stood the sorely lamenting-one.

dâ von was si bejagende
there from was she winning

daz si ir bruoder helfe erwarp;
that she her brother help won;

des sît ûf Alischans erstarp
of-which later on Alischans died

manec werder Sarrazîn. 170,5
many-a worthy Saracen.

alsô sprach diu künegîn.
thus spoke the queen.

'swaz ich hie fürsten mâge hân,
'whatever I here of-princes kinsmen have,

die gelîch ich dem armman,
them liken I to-the poor-man,

den grâven und den barûn.
the counts and the barons.

ob halt ein wackerr garzûn 170,10
if even a sturdy groom

von mîme geslähte wære erborn,
from my lineage were born,

derne hete sippe niht verlorn.
he would-have kinship not lost.

swer mir diz leit hilfet tragen,
whoever to-me this sorrow helps bear,

der sol mir billîch armuot klagen:
he shall to-me rightly poverty lament:

den verteg ich alsô mit habe, 170,15
him equip I so with goods,

daz er niht darf wenken abe.
that he not needs swerve away.

daz sî den vremden ouch benant,
that be to-the strangers also named,

er sî rittr od sarjant,
he be knight or sergeant,

turkopel, od swer ze strîte tüge.'
turcopole, or whoever for battle avails.'

170,20 ob diz mære iht verre flüge?
whether this tale anything far should-fly?

ez warp mit kraft die helfe grôz,
it strove with strength the help great,

dês diu süeze Gyburc wol genôz.
of-which the sweet Gyburc well profited.

dô sprach Bernart von Brubant
then spoke Bernart of Brubant

'ob ich helflîche hant
'if I helpful hand

170,25 mit gâbe odr in strîte
with gift or in battle

ie truoc ze heiner zîte,
ever bore at any time,

die hân ich noch (es wirt nu nôt)
that have I still (it becomes now need)

und wil se füern in sîn gebot,
and will it lead into his command,

mîns bruoder der uns trûrc ist komn:
of-my brother who to-us mournful is come:

ich hân die flust mit im genomn.'
I have the loss with him taken.'

171,1 Dô sprach sîn bruoder Bertram
Then spoke his brother Bertram

'mirst vreude wilde und sorge zam.
'to-me-is joy wild and care tame.

ouwê war kom mîn hôher muot?
alas whither came my high spirit?

ich hân starken lîp und fürsten guot,
I have strong body and princes' goods,

und ze mîme gebot die rîterschaft
and at my command the knighthood

der gêrt sol sîn diu gotes kraft:
whose honored shall be the God's power:

daz mac mich allez niht entsagen,
that may me all not free,

ine müeze in mîme herzen tragen
unless-I must in my heart bear

leit, daz immer twinget
sorrow, which ever constrains

unz mich mîn bruoder bringet
until me my brother brings

an die stat dâ ich râche tuon
to the place where I vengeance do

umbe Mîlen mîner swester suon
for Mile my sister's son

und umb den clâren Vivîanz.
and for the bright Vivianz.

ouwê,' sprach er, 'Alischanz,
alas,' spoke he, 'Alischanz,

daz de ie sô breit und ouch sô sleht
that thou ever so broad and also so level

würd, dâ mîner vreude ir reht
should-become, where of-my joy its right

ûf wart gebrochen!'
up was broken!"

sîn ougen wârn entlochen,
his eyes were unlocked,

daz ieslîch zaher den andern dranc:
that each tear the other pressed:

171,20 ir valln im ûf der wæte klanc.
their fall to-him on the garment rang.

dô sprach sîn bruoder Gybert
then spoke his brother Gybert

'bin ich an daz ampt wert
'(if)-am I in the office worthy

under schilt und mit dem sper,
under shield and with the spear,

bruoder, des bin ich dîn wer.
brother, of-that am I thy warrant.

171,25 unde ob ich gedienet hân
and if I served have

inder sô getriwen man,
anywhere so faithful man,

daz ich in nu gemanen mac
that I him now remind may

ob ie sîn trôst an mir gelac,
if ever his comfort on me lay,

des wirstu innen, sol ich leben.
of-that becomest-thou aware, (if)-shall I live.

ich wil ouch ûz fürsten henden geben.'
I will also out-of princes' hands give.'

172,1 Dô sprach Buov von Kumarzî
Then spoke Buove of Kumarzi

'alrêrst bin ich nu worden vrî
'first-of-all am I now become free

vor vreuden. daz muoz immer wern:
of joys. that must ever last:

welhes trôstes sold ich gern?
what comfort should I desire?

172,5 mir ist vreude und trôst erstorben:
to-me is joy and comfort died:

mir hât Tybalt erworben
to-me has Tybalt won

mîns hôhen muotes siecheit
of-my high spirit's sickness

und daz unzergangen leit
and the unperished sorrow

und siuftic mîniu komendiu jâr:
and sighing my coming years:

daz muoz mir geben grâwiu hâr. 172,10
that must to-me give gray hair.

nu prüeve swem daz sî bekant,
now consider to-whom that be known,

ob von eime strît toufbæriu lant
whether from one battle baptism-worthy lands

ie so manegen helt verrêrten
ever so many-a hero shed

und den jâmer sus gemêrten.
and the misery thus increased.

bin ich die lenge in sölher klage, 172,15
(if)-am I the length in such lament,

sô wænt mîn bruodr ich sî ein zage.
so thinks my brother I be a coward.

mîn helfe ist im doch stæte,
my help is to-him yet steadfast,

swaz mir tuot oder tæte
whatever to-me does or should-do

diu sorge mit ir überlast.
the care with its overburden.

ich wil im manegen werden gast 172,20
I will to-him many-a worthy guest

hin ze Oransche füeren
away to Orange lead

und alsô mit swerten rüeren
and so with swords touch

daz si Gyburc hœre klingen.
that them Gyburc hear ring.

für wâr ich wil im bringen
for true I will to-him bring

172,25 tûsent gewâpendr orse dar,
thousand armored horses thither,

die man siht an mîner schar,
which one sees in my company,

und drûf liute die durch mich
and thereon people who for me

bietent slag unde stich,
offer blow and thrust,

oder swie der heiden strîtes gert,
or however the heathen of-battle desires,

er füere bogen oder swert.'
he carry bow or sword.'

The Feast

XLI

Heimrich asks the king to hold his feast in spite of their grief, and the king agrees. In her chamber the queen has young ladies and squires unarm Willalm; he begs to be spared fine clothes while he grieves for Gyburc, but she makes him wear silk over his unwashed skin. At the feast he asks for the merchant Wimar as his companion, rewards him with two hundred marks, and eats only black bread dipped in water. He recalls his vow to Gyburc.

173,1 Zem künege sprach dô Heimrîch
To-the king spoke then Heimrich

'hêrre, nu tuot dem gelîch
'lord, now do to-that alike

daz ir hôhgezît hât.
that you feast have.

durch unser klage daz niht lât:
for our lament that not leave:

got mag uns wol ergetzen. 173,5
God may us well compensate.

heizt die fürsten setzen
bid the princes seat

und dienen âne schande.
and serve without disgrace.

hie sint von mangem lande
here are from many-a land

fürsten wert unde hôch:
princes worthy and high:

swie vreude uns fliuhet oder flôch, 173,10
however joy us flees or fled,

mich und mîn geslehte,
me and my lineage,

swer die geste handelet rehte,
whoever the guests treats rightly,

des sulen si niht enkelten:
for-that shall they not pay:

wan si hânts genozzen selten.'
for they have-it profited seldom.'

der künec zen ambtliuten sprach 173,15
the king to-the officials spoke

'durch der wirtîn ungemach
'for the hostess's discomfort

und durch die ander die hie klagen
and for the others who here lament

schulen wir des niht gar verzagen:
shall we of-that not wholly despair:

ich wil die hôhgezît hân.
I will the feast have.

seht wie ir mîne werde man
see how you my worthy men

wol setzet, unde nemet des war
well seat, and take of-that heed

daz ir dise und die [hôhen] gar
that you these and the [high-ones] wholly

setzet nâch mînen êren:
seat after my honor:

ir sult iuch selbe lêren.
you shall you yourselves teach.

des ist nu tâlanc niht ze fruo.'
of-that is now today not too early.'

balde wart gegriffen zuo,
quickly was grasped to,

mit spæhem getihte
with skillful composition

wunderlîchiu tischgerihte
wondrous table-dishes

man ûf ze vier orten truoc
one up at four corners bore

und gap mit zuht dâ nâch genuoc.
and gave with courtesy there after enough.

Diu künegîn zir bruoder gienc:
The queen to-her brother went:

ir hant er in die sînen vienc.
her hand he into the his-one caught.

er hetz harnasch dennoch an.
he had-the armor still on.

si fuorte den siuftebæren man
she led the sigh-laden man

mit ir ze kemenâten wider.
with her to chamber back.

zuo ein ander si dernider
to one another they there-down

vors küneges bette an eine stat
before-the king's bed at a place

in diu künegîn sitzen bat.
them the queen sit bade.

juncfrouwen und junchêrrelîn
young-ladies and little-young-lords

sus gebôt diu künegîn, 174,10
thus commanded the queen,

daz siz harnasch und diu wâpenkleit
that they-the armor and the arms-clothes

von im næmn. dâ was bereit
from him should-take. there was ready

von pfelle kleider tiure.
of silk clothes costly.

Alîze diu gehiure
Alize the gracious

zir muoter sprach 'heiz bringen her 174,15
to-her mother spoke 'bid bring hither

gewant daz durch mîns vater ger
garment which for my father's desire

im selbem hiute wart gesniten:
for-him self today was cut:

mînen œheim solt duz tragen biten.'
my uncle shalt thou-it wear beg.'

mit zuht der marcrâve sprach
with courtesy the margrave spoke

'vrœlîch gewant und guot gemach, 174,20
'joyful garment and good comfort,

des wil ich haben mangel,
of-that will I have lack,

die wîl diu sorge ir angel
the while the care its hook

in mîn herze hât geschoben.
into my heart has pushed.

mit swerten wart von mir gekloben
with swords was from me cloven

174,25 freude und hôhgemüete.
joy and high-spirit.

vrowe, durch iwer güete,
lady, for your goodness,

nu erlât mich guoter kleide,
now release me from-good clothes,

die wîl mir alsô leide
the while to-me so grievous

durch flust und nâch Gyburge sî.'
for loss and after Gyburc be.'

'des lasters wurde ich nimmer vrî,
'of-the reproach would-become I never free,

175,1 soldestu nacket bî mir gên.
shouldst-thou naked by me go.

bruoder, kanstu dich verstên
brother, canst-thou thee understand

wiez dîne genôze meinden?
how-it thy peers meant?

vil spât si sich vereinden
very late they themselves agreed

175,5 daz si mir drumbe gæben prîs.'
that they to-me for-it should-give prize.'

si gebôt daz der markîs
she commanded that the marquis

den pfelle von Adramahût
the silk of Adramahut

leite übr ungestrichen hût.
should-lay over unwashed skin.

dô wârens ungelîche lieht.
then were-they unequally bright.

der marcrâve engerte nieht
the margrave desired not

daz sîn bart vel oder hâr
that his beard skin or hair

iht wære wan nâch îser var:
anything were except after iron colored:

Alyze was im ungelîch.
Alyze was to-him unlike.

er fuort die küneginne rîch
he led the queen rich

her ûz: ir tohter gienc vor ir.
hither out: her daughter went before her.

niht baz wart bescheiden mir,
not better was explained to-me,

wie die fürsten sâzen
how the princes sat

innen des dô se âzen.
meanwhile that when they ate.

der künec sazte einhalp sîn wîp
the king seated on-one-side his woman

und Alyzen diu den clâren lîp
and Alyze who the bright body

truoc. dar nâch er niht vergaz,
bore. there after he not forgot,

sîn sweher anderthalben saz,
his father-in-law on-the-other-side sat,

und des wîp vrowe Irmschart.
and his woman lady Irmschart.

ir sun, der harnaschvarwen bart
her son, who armor-colored beard

truoc, den bat si zuo zir komn.
bore, him bade she to her come.

der sprach ‘mir hât Tybalt benomn
he spoke ‘to-me has Tybalt taken

swaz ich gesellen mohte hân:
whatever I of-companions might have:

mînen wirt, den koufman,
my host, the merchant,

den heizet mir ze gesellen gebn.’
him bid to-me as companion give.’

dô mohte Wîmâr gerne lebn,
then could Wîmar gladly live,

176,1 wan er ans rîches tische saz
for he at-the realm’s table sat

und mit den hœhsten fürsten az,
and with the highest princes ate,

und rœmischer krône.
and Roman crown.

zwei hundert marc ze lône
two hundred marks as reward

176,5 gap der marcrâve dem wirte:
gave the margrave to-the host:

Irmschart daz wênic irte.
Irmschart that little hindered.

wand er în nam sâbents in,
for he in took in-the-evening him,

dâ von wuohs zwivalt gewin
there from grew twofold gain

Wîmâre, guot und êre.
to-Wîmar, goods and honor.

176,10 der marcrâve niht mêre
the margrave not more

necheiner spîse gerte,
any food desired,

wan swarzez brôt er merte
except black bread he dipped

in ein wazzer, swenne er tranc:
into a water, whenever he drank:

dâ stuont ein brunne, der wol klanc
there stood a spring, which well sounded

ûz einem nazzen kruoge. 176,15
out-of a wet jug.

daz marcten ouch genuoge:
that marked also many:

diene wessen niht durch waz er leit
they knew not for what he suffered

von zadel sölhe arbeit.
from want such toil.

Gyburc des sicherheit enpfienc,
Gyburc of-that surety received,

dô si zer porten mit im gienc, 176,20
when she to-the gate with him went,

ê daz er sæze ûfez ors.
before that he should-sit onto-the horse.

swie sîn swâger Fâbors
however his brother-in-law Fabors

ze Oransche marschalc wære gewesen
at Orange marshal were been

(ân ir danc was er genesen),
(without their thanks was he survived),

swie manec tûsent si dervor 176,25
however many-a thousand they there-before

heten zieglîchem tor,
had at-each gate,

dô er von Gyburge schiet,
when he from Gyburc parted,

ir minne gebôt unde riet
her love commanded and counseled

daz sîn gelübde ân allen kranc
that his vow without all weakness

gein ir stuont und âne wanc.
toward her stood and without wavering.

The Plea Before the King

XLII

When the king is sated, Willalm describes his ruined march and Gyburc's danger and demands help at once. The king says he will consider it, and Willalm leaps over the table, offering to resign his fiefs. The king offers help, the queen urges him on, and the king complains of the dishonor Willalm did him. Heimrich and his sons urge the king to defend the realm as Charles's son.

177,1 Durch daz er mîden wolde
For that he avoid would

swaz man truoc od tragen solde
whatever one bore or bear should

für in, daz wilde und daz zam,
before him, the wild and the tame,

gepigmentet clâret alsam,
spiced claret likewise,

177,5 den met, den wîn, daz môraz:
the mead, the wine, the mulberry-wine:

durch der necheinez er vergaz
for of-them none he forgot

sîner gelübde. swer im küssen bôt,
his vow. whoever to-him kissing offered,

sô dâht er an des kusses nôt,
so thought he on the kiss's distress,

der im ze Oransche was beliben,
which to-him at Orange was remained,

und wie er von dem was vertriben. 177,10
and how he from it was driven.

er het ouch ander manec flust:
he had also other many-a loss:

durch daz was herzenhalp sîn brust
for that was on-the-heart-side his breast

wol hende breit gesunken
well hand broad sunk

und sîn vreude in riwe ertrunken.
and his joy in rue drowned.

er dâhte 'nu ist der künec sat: 177,15
he thought 'now is the king sated:

des in diu künegîn hiute bat,
of-what him the queen today bade,

er beginnets uns nu lîhte wern.
he begins-it to-us now perhaps to-grant.

ich wil genâde und helfe gern.
I will grace and help desire.

daz trunken houbet lîhte tuot
the drunken head easily does

des nüehter man gewan nie muot. 177,20
of-what sober man gained never spirit.

ist daz er helfe mir gelobt,
(if)-is that he help to-me promises,

die fürsten diuht dâ wære getobt,
the princes it-would-seem there should-be raved,

ob er die gelübde bræche
if he the vow should-break

und swaz er an mir ræche.'
and whatever he on me should-avenge.'

Dô sprach er 'hêrre, der fürsten vogt, 177,25
Then spoke he 'lord, the princes' lord,

sich hât mîn dinc an iuch gezogt.
itself has my thing to you drawn.

ir sît selbe überriten:
you are self overridden:

ich sol iuch pillîchen biten
I shall you rightly bid

daz ir rœmscher krône ir rîche wert,
that you of-Roman crown its realm defend,

dar umbe ich vreude hân verzert.
there for I joy have consumed.

178,1 Iwerr kinde mâge sint verlorn,
Your children's kinsmen are lost,

ich pin gesuochet ze allen torn.
I am attacked at all gates.

het ich bürge oder lant,
had I castles or land,

die stênt in Terramêres hant.
they stand in Terramer's hand.

178,5 mîne vische in Larkant sint tôt.
my fish in Larkant are dead.

von treten hât die selben nôt
from treading has the same distress

al mîne wisen und diu sât.
all my meadows and the sown-field.

swaz diu marke nutzes hât,
whatever the march of-use has,

die ich hân vome rîche,
which I have from-the realm,

178,10 daz lît nu jæmerlîche.
that lies now miserably.

mîne mûre sint zebrochen:
my walls are broken:

diu fiur sint unberochen,
the fires are unextinguished,

ez brinnet al mîn marke.
it burns all my march.

ob Nôê in der arke
if Noah in the ark

grôzen kumber ie gewan, 178,15
great affliction ever gained,

den selben mac Gyburc wol hân
the same may Gyburc well have

von rîterschefte überfluot.
from knighthood's overflow.

Terramêr gewalt mir tuot.
Terramer violence to-me does.

etswenne het ich veltstrît,
sometime had I field-battle,

unz an die flustbæren zît 178,20
until to the losing time

daz ich nu wart în getân.
that I now was in done.

geloubet des, daz Baligân
believe of-that, that Baligan

nie gefuorte grœzer her
never led greater host

gein iwerem vater über mer.
against your father over sea.

dâ gegen hœret ander maht. 178,25
there against belongs other might.

ich hân si des wol innen brâht,
I have them of-that well aware brought,

daz noch da'rgienge rîterschaft,
that still there-would-go knighthood,

hete mînen willen iwer kraft.
had my will your strength.

noch wert mich: ich pin werlîch:
still defend me: I am warlike:

tuot ellenthafte dem gelîch
do valorously to-that alike

179,1 als ander künge ie tâten.'
as other kings ever did.'

'des wil ich mich berâten,'
'of-that will I myself take-counsel,'

sus antwurte Lôys.
thus answered Loys.

'berâten?' sprach der markîs:
'take-counsel?' spoke the marquis:

179,5 'welt irz niht snelleclîche tuon,
'(if)-will you-it not quickly do,

sô wurdet ir nie Karles suon.'
so became you never Charles's son.'

übern tisch er balde spranc.
over-the table he quickly sprang.

er sprach 'ich sags iu kleinen danc:
he spoke 'I say-it to-you little thanks:

ir müezet gein den vînden varn,
you must against the enemies fare,

179,10 und enturret nimmer daz gesparn.
and dare never that spare.

wer solt iwer man sîn?
who should your man be?

diu marke unt de ander lêhen mîn,
the march and the other fiefs mine,

daz sî ledic iu benant.'
that be free to-you named.'

Bernart von Brubant
Bernart of Brubant

179,15 und der wîse Gybert
and the wise Gybert

und ander sîne bruoder wert
and other his brothers worthy

sprungen dar und wanten daz.
sprang thither and averted that.

der künec gedulteclîche saz:
the king patiently sat:

der gezogen und der wîse
the bred-one and the wise-one

sprach zem markîse 179,20
spoke to-the marquis

'wolt ir êrenz rîche,
'would you honor-the realm,

sô möht ir willeclîche
so might you willingly

mîn helfe gerne enpfâhen.
my help gladly receive.

wil iu daz versmâhen,
(if)-will to-you that disdain,

sô dien ich aber anderswar: 179,25
so serve I again elsewhere:

so ist deste minner iwer schar
so is the less your company

gein der heidenschefte.
against the heathendom.

muoz abr ich mit mîner krefte
(if)-must however I with my strength

iu dienen zundanke,
to-you serve unthanked,

sô bin ichz der muotes kranke.'
so am I-it the of-spirit weak-one.'

De küneginne sprach derzuo 180,1
The queen spoke thereto

vil baz denne smorgens fruo,
very better than in-the-morning early,

dô si der marcrâve umbe zôch
when her the margrave around drew

und sîme zorne kûme enpflôch.
and his wrath barely escaped.

des was nu suone worden:
of-that was now reconciliation become:

si sprach nâch swester orden
she spoke after sister's order

'ey rœmscher künec, hêrre mîn,
'ah Roman king, lord mine,

waz touc iur tohter liehter schîn
what avails your daughter's bright appearance

und ir süezer minneclîcher munt?
and her sweet lovely mouth?

dem wirt diu wirde nimmer kunt,
to-it becomes the dignity never known,

als ob ir mâge lebeten,
as if her kinsmen should-live,

die ie nâch prîse strebeten.
who ever after prize strove.

ir rehtiu tât, ir werder muot
their right deed, their worthy spirit

hulf uns vil baz denne iwer guot.
would-help us very better than your goods.

wir zwuo sîn mit in erslagen:
we two are with them slain:

nu helfet unser sterben klagen:
now help our dying lament:

sone sît ir von uns beiden
so are you from us both

der helfe niht gescheiden,
of-the help not parted,

ir ensült uns leisten triuwe.
you unless-shall to-us perform faithfulness.

nu habt ouch eigen riuwe 180,20
now have also own rue

nâch den die iwer rîche
after those who your realm

werten werlîche.
defended warlike.

nu lât se alle juden sîn,
now let them all Jews be,

die durh den trûregen bruoder mîn
who for the mournful brother mine

iwer lant ze werne sint verlorn: 180,25
your land to defend are lost:

wart ie triwe an iu geborn,
became ever faithfulness in you born,

ir sult durch triwe klagen sie.
you shall for faithfulness lament them.

der rœmsche keiser Karl nie
the Roman emperor Charles never

eins tages sô manegen helt verlôs,
in-one day so many-a hero lost,

die man ze fürsten ûz erkôs.'
whom one as princes out chose.'

'Vrouwe, ich wær des lîhte ermant, 181,1
'Lady, I would-be of-that perhaps reminded,

iwer mâge die durch wer mîn lant
your kinsmen who for defense my land

ame tôde sint erfunden,
at-the death are found,

daz ich die zallen stunden
that I them at-all hours

solte klagen und dâ nâch rechen, 181,5
should lament and there after avenge,

swenne ich möchte daz gezechen.
whenever I might that compass.

nu hœrt ir wol wiez drumbe vert.
now hear you well how-it for-it goes.

ich pin hie selbe kûme ernert:
I am here self barely saved:

sô sît ir ouch vor mir gezogt
so are you also before me drawn

181,10 von dem der mich der fürsten vogt
by him who me the princes' lord

nante (ich wæne ir hôrtetz wol),
named (I think you heard-it well),

von dem dult ich sô smæhe dol.
from him suffered I so contemptible pain.

ob ie fürste wart mîn man,
if ever prince became my man,

an dem hat er missetân,
in him has he misdone,

181,15 und ze vorderst an der krônen:
and at foremost at the crown:

wie sol ich des lônen?
how shall I that reward?

verkiuse ichz, man sol mich ein zage
(if)-forgive I-it, one shall me a coward

mîne kunftlîche tage
my future days

dar nâch immer nennen.
there after ever name.

181,20 muoz ich an im rekennen
(if)-must I in him recognize

daz erz mit guoten witzen tuo,
that he-it with good wits do,

daz ist uns beiden alze fruo.
that is to-us both all-too early.

ob ich in helfe lâze,
if I them help leave,

daz kumt uns niht ze mâze:
that comes us not to measure:

sô fliuh ich ê i'n vîent sehe. 181,25
so flee I before I-the enemy see.

ieslîch man durh triwe jehe,
each man for faithfulness declare,

waz er tæte, und stüendez im
what he would-do, and stood-it to-him

als mir, waz râtes ich nu nim.
as to-me, what counsel I now take.

der muoz vil eben mezzen dar,
he must very evenly measure there,

ob er mir werdekeit bewar.'
if he for-me worthiness guard.'

Man nam die tische gar hin dan. 182,1
One took the tables wholly away thence.

manec rîche, manec arm man,
many-a rich, many-a poor man,

die alten und die jungen
the old and the young

gar dar nâher drungen.
wholly there nearer pressed.

si wolten vrâgen mære, 182,5
they would ask tidings,

durch waz sô balde wære
for what so quickly should-be

der marcrâve übern tisch gevaren.
the margrave over-the table fared.

etslîche wolten daz bewaren
some would that guard

daz sîn hant dar nâch iht mêr
that his hand there after anything more

wær mit zogen alsô hêr. 182,10
were with pulling so proud.

Heimrîch und des gesinde
Heimrich and his household

vor dem Karls kinde
before the Charles's child

mit grôzer zuht stuonden:
with great courtesy stood:

werben si beguonden
to-strive they began

182,15 daz er helfe wurde ermant.
that he for-help should-be reminded.

dicke Karl wart genant:
often Charles was named:

des ellen solt er erben,
whose valor should he inherit,

und niht die tugent verderben,
and not the virtue ruin,

diu im von arde wære geslaht:
which to-him by nature were born:

182,20 daz er dæhte ans rîches pfaht:
that he should-think on-the realm's law:

diu lêrte inz rîche schirmen
it taught him-the realm to-protect

und nimmer des gehirmen
and never of-that to-rest

ern wurbe es rîches êre.
unless-he strove for-the realm's honor.

'welt ir nu Terramêre
'(if)-will you now to-Terramer

182,25 ze wüesten staten iwer lant,
to lay-waste allow your land,

des wirt diu kristenheit geschant
of-that becomes the Christendom disgraced

und der touf entêret.
and the baptism dishonored.

ob iuch iemen anders lêret
if you anyone otherwise teaches

wan daz ir iuch untz rîche wert,
than that you yourself and-the realm defend,

dem ist vil untriwe beschert.
to-him is much unfaithfulness allotted.

Swerz bezzer weiz, des selben jeher.' 183,1
Whoever-it better knows, of-the same declare-he.'

The Muster

XLIII

The king promises to go or send such an army that Willalm's defense will be the better. Irmschart presses him to avenge Vivianz, and he offers pay and fiefs to all who will serve; the princes swear to the campaign, and the king forgives the margrave. The realm declares rightless any knight who will not help, and men ride from every side to muster at Munleun in ten days. Heimrich rides away, while Willalm stays with the queen, who has his wounds tended until he is healed.

dô sprach der künc ze sîme sweher
then spoke the king to his father-in-law

'ich hilf iu durh mîn selbes prîs,
'I help you for my own prize,

swie iwer sun der markîs
however your son the marquis

sich hab an mir vergâhet 183,5
himself have against me rushed

und sîne zuht genâhet
and his courtesy neared

hin zer missewende.
away to-the misdeed.

ich var odr ich sende
I go or I send

in iwer helfe alsölhez her,
into your help such host,

183,10 daz deste bezzer wirt sîn wer.'
that the better becomes his defense.'

'hêrre und ouch mîn hœhster suon,
'lord and also my highest son,

iwerm kinde ze êren sult irz tuon,
to-your child for honor shall you-it do,

und durh mîn tohter, iwer wîp,
and for my daughter, your woman,

daz ir Vivîanzes lîp
that you Vivianz's body

183,15 rechet,' sprach frou Irmenschart.
avenge,' spoke lady Irmenschart.

'nu füeget iwer hervart
'now arrange your campaign

mit der fürsten helfe alsô
with the princes' help so

dês diu süeze Gyburc werde vrô,
that-of-it the sweet Gyburc become glad,

diu iwerr helfe wartet,
who for-your help waits,

183,20 wan ir nu wênic zartet
for her now little caress

Terramêr und Tîbalt.
Terramer and Tibalt.

die mir tôt hânt gevalt
they to-me dead have felled

almeistic mîne nâchkomn.
almost my descendants.

si habent iu friwende vil benomn,
they have from-you friends many taken,

die iwern hof wol êrten 183,25
who your court well honored

swâ si zuo ziu kêrten.'
wherever they to you turned.'

'frowe, mîn ander muoter,
'lady, my second mother,

sô werder noch sô guoter,'
so worthy nor so good,'

sprach der künc, 'die sint mir umbekant:
spoke the king, 'they are to-me unknown:

liute in glîch noch nie bevant
people to-them alike still never perceived

weder mîn hœren noch mîn sehen, 184,1
neither my hearing nor my seeing,

den man vor ûz sô dorfte jehen
to-whom one before out so needed declare

prîss in sölher hœhe:
of-prize in such height:

ir lobes fürgezœhe
their praise's precedence

muoz an dem jungst erschinen tage 184,5
must at the last appearing day

dennoch sîn mit niwer sage.
still be with new tale.

er was wol liebhalp mîn kint:
he was well on-the-dear-side my child:

al die durh mich in râche sint
all who for me in vengeance are

umbe Vivîanzes sterben,
for Vivianz's dying,

die lâz ich gein mir werben: 184,10
them let I toward me strive:

swaz ieslîchem sî gelegen,
whatever to-each be suited,

dâ wil ich sînes willen phlegen
there will I of-his will take-care

mit gâb, mit lêhn, mit eigen.
with gift, with fief, with property.

ich wil nu helden zeigen
I will now to-heroes show

184,15 daz ich des rîches hant hie trage.
that I the realm's hand here bear.

mînen solt sol mich der zage
my pay shall me the coward

lâzen geben den werden.
let give to-the worthy-ones.

ich hân sô breit der erden,
I have so broad of-the earth,

daz ieslîch fürste reichet dar,
that each prince reaches thither,

184,20 nimt sîn mîn hant mit günste war.'
(if)-takes of-him my hand with favor heed.'

etslîche nâmen sînen solt:
some took his pay:

etslîche wârn im sus sô holt,
some were to-him thus so devoted,

daz si die hervart swuoren
that they the campaign swore

und al gemeine fuoren,
and all in-common went,

184,25 swaz fürsten dar zer hôhgezît
whatever of-princes thither to-the feast

kom. ouch wart des künges nît
came. also was the king's envy

ûf den marcgrâven verkorn:
on the margrave forgiven:

der von Karle was erborn,
he-who from Charles was born,

der begienc dâ Karles tücke.
he performed there Charles's wonts.

daz was Gyburge gelücke.
that was Gyburc's luck.

Turkopel, sarjande, 185,1
Turcopoles, sergeants,

in der Franzoyser lande,
in the Frenchmen's land,

swaz mit al den fürsten rîter sint,
whatever with all the princes knights are,

und die Heimrîch und sîniu kint
and those-whom Heimrich and his children

dâ heten, beide jung unt alt, 185,5
there had, both young and old,

die ze keiner helfe wârn gezalt,
who to no help were counted,

die sagete man gar rehtelôs,
them declared one wholly rightless,

durch daz der touf die smæhe kôs
for that the baptism the contempt chose

von der heidenschefte,
from the heathendom,

sine wertenz mit ir krefte. 185,10
unless-they defended-it with their strength.

diu urteil vor dem rîche
the judgment before the realm

wart gesprochen endelîche
was spoken finally

und gevolget von den hœsten.
and followed by the highest.

ich enruoche umb die bœsten,
I care-not about the worst,

und op dâ inder was ein zage: 185,15
and if there anywhere was a coward:

der samnunge zil ich sage.
of-the gathering goal I tell.

des rîchs gebot unt de urteil
the realm's command and the judgment

tet kunt, ein sac unt ein seil
made known, a sack and a rope

wærn schiere ûf gebunden.
were soon up bound.

185,20 an den selben stunden
at the same hours

was dâ diu beste rîterschaft
was there the best knighthood

über al der Franzeiser kraft,
over all the Frenchmen's strength,

und heten ouch alle harnasch dâ:
and had also all armor there:

was ez aber anderswâ,
was it however elsewhere,

185,25 dâ wart balde nâch gesant.
there was quickly after sent.

die strâzen wurden gar berant
the roads became wholly ridden

von den rîtern selbe und von ir boten.
by the knights themselves and by their messengers.

si wolden Terramêres goten
they would to-Terramer's gods

niwiu mære bringen
new tidings bring

und Gyburg helfen dingen
and to-Gyburc help to-bargain

186,1 durch des marcrâven klage.
for the margrave's lament.

ze Munlêûn am zehenden tage
at Munleun on-the tenth day

vor dem berge ûf dem plân
before the mountain on the meadow

dâ wolt der künec sîne man
there would the king his men

schouwen unde in danken, 186,5
see and to-them thank,

den starken und den kranken,
the strong and the weak,

al dar nâch si wâren komen.
all there after they were come.

dâ wart urloup genomen,
there was leave taken,

und schiet sich diu hôhkezît.
and parted itself the feast.

der künec diu phant hiez machen quît. 186,10
the king the pledges bade make quit.

über al manz versuochte:
over all one-it tried:

swer sîner gâbe ruochte,
whoever of-his gift cared,

diu was gewegen al bereit.
it was weighed all ready.

durch wider komen dannen reit
for back coming thence rode

ungezaltiu mahinante. 186,15
uncounted baggage-train.

rîter, sarjante,
knights, sergeants,

dise quâmen hiute, morgen die:
these came today, tomorrow those:

beidiu dort unde hie,
both there and here,

swen man westen [oder] ôsten komen sach,
whomever one west [or] east come saw,

186,20 der vant rîch lant unt guot gemach.
he found rich land and good comfort.

der künec ze Munlêûn beleip,
the king at Munleun remained,

unz er die zehen tage vertreip.
until he the ten days passed.

Heimrîch was dan geriten,
Heimrich was thence ridden,

und het der marcrâve erbiten
and had the margrave waited

186,25 bî der künegîn sîner frouwen.
by the queen his lady.

diu hiez vil dicke schouwen
she bade very often behold

mit triwen sîne wunden,
with faithfulness his wounds,

die Gyburc hete verbunden.
which Gyburc had bound.

er wart dâ sîner wunden heil
he became there of-his wounds healed

und durch des küneges helfe geil.
and for the king's help glad.

Rennewart

XLIV

One evening the king, the queen, and their daughter come to the palace windows, and Willalm sits by Alyze, watching the youths joust. A squire passes with a tub of water that would have burdened three mules, and is mocked; a charge knocks the tub over. His nobility shows through his kitchen-colored clothes, like gold in a puddle. When riders and men on foot empty the refilled tub, Rennewart hurls a squire against a stone pillar, killing him, and the rest flee.

Eins âbnds der künic komen was 187,1
One evening the king come was

zen vensteren ûfem palas,
to-the windows on-the palace,

und diu künegîn und sîn tohter.
and the queen and his daughter.

al die wîle enmohter
all the while could-he

niht bezzer kurzwîle sehen: 187,5
not better pastime see:

des muose der margrâve jehen,
of-that must the margrave declare,

der dâ bî Alyzen saz.
who there by Alyze sat.

sich huop ie baz unde baz
itself lifted ever better and better

zwischen dem palase und der linden
between the palace and the linden

daz man sah von edelen kinden 187,10
that one saw by noble children

mit scheftn ûf schilde tjostieren,
with shafts on shields jousting,

dort sich zweien, hie sich vieren,
there themselves pair-off, here themselves four-up,

hie mit poynder rîten,
here with charge riding,

dort mit pûschen strîten.
there with clubs fighting.

dâ sprungen rîter sêre:
there leapt knights sorely:

ze der zît was êre,
at the time was honor,

der den schaft verre schôz,
who the shaft far shot,

des ouch dâ mangen niht verdrôz:
of-which also there many-a-one not wearied:

sô liefen dise die barre.
so ran these the bars.

von der manger slahte harre
from the many kinds of-waiting

wart versûmet lîhte ein man
was neglected perhaps a man

der über den hof wolte gân.
who over the court would go.

dâ wart von knehten vil geschrît,
there was by servants much cried,

die dâ hielden diu runcît:
who there held the nags:

man sluoc dâ mange tambûr.
one struck there many-a drum.

dâ wære ein ungefriunt gebûr
there would-be an unbefriended peasant

vil lîhte in dem schalle
very perhaps in the clamor

gedigen zeinem balle
come into-a ball

von hurte her unde dar.
from onset hither and thither.

dô nam der marcgrâve war
then took the margrave heed

daz ein knappe kom gegangen: 188,1
that a squire came walking:

der wart mit spotte enphangen:
he was with mockery received:

der truoc ein zuber wazzers vol.
he bore a tub of-water full.

ob ich sô von im sprechen sol
if I so of him speak shall

daz mirz niemen merke, 188,5
that me-it no-one mark,

wol sehs manne sterke
well six men's strength

an sîn eines lîbe lac.
in his one body lay.

des küneges küchen er sô phlac,
of-the king's kitchen he so took-care,

daz er wazzers truoc al eine
that he of-water bore all alone

des die koche al gemeine 188,10
of-what the cooks all in-common

bedorften zir gereitschaft.
needed for-their preparation.

dâ drî mûle mit ir kraft
where three mules with their strength

under wærn gestanden,
under would-have stood,

zwischen sînen handen
between his hands

truog erz als ein küsselîn. 188,15
bore he-it as a little-cushion.

ouch gab nâch küchenvarwe schîn
also gave after kitchen-color appearance

sîn swach gewant und ouch sîn hâr.
his poor garment and also his hair.

man nam sîn niht ze rehte war,
one took of-him not to right heed,

nâch sînre geschickt, nâch sîner art.
after his build, after his nature.

188,20 etswâ man des wol innen wart,
somewhere one of-that well aware became,

unt viel daz golt in den phuol,
and fell the gold into the puddle,

daz ez nie rost übermuol:
that it never rust over-soiled:

der ez schouwen wolte dicke,
whoever it behold would often,

ez erzeigt etswâ die blicke
it showed somewhere the gleams

188,25 daz man sîn edelkeit bevant.
that one its nobility perceived.

swer noch den grânât jâchant
whoever still the garnet jacinth

wirfet in den swarzen ruoz,
throws into the black soot,

als im des dâ nâch wirdet buoz,
as to-him of-that there after becomes amends,

errzeiget aber sîn rœte.
it-shows however its redness.

verdacter tugent in nœte
of-covered virtue in distress

189,1 pflac Rennewart der küchenvar.
had Rennewart the kitchen-colored.

nu merket wie der adelar
now mark how the eagle

versichert sîniu kleinen kint.
assures-himself-of his little children.

sô si von schalen komen sint,
when they from shells come are,

er stêt in sîme neste
he stands in his nest

und kiust vor ûz daz beste:
and chooses before out the best:

daz nimt er sanfte zwischen die klâ
that takes he gently between the claws

und biutetz gein der sunnen aldâ:
and offers-it toward the sun there:

ob ez niht in die sunnen siht,
if it not into the sun looks,

daz im diu zageheit geschiht,
that to-it the cowardice happens,

von neste lât erz vallen.
from nest lets he-it fall.

sus tuot ern andern allen,
thus does he-to-the others all,

op ir tûsent möhten sîn.
if of-them thousand might be.

daz in der sunnen hitze schîn
that-which into the sun's heat shine

siht mit bêden ougen,
looks with both eyes,

daz wil er âne lougen
that will he without denial

denne zeime kinde hân.
then as-a child have.

Rennewart der starke man
Rennewart the strong man

was wol ins aren nest erzogen,
was well in-the eagle's nest reared,

189,20 niht drûz gevellet, drab gevlogen
not there-out-of fallen, there-off flown

unt gestanden ûf den dürren ast.
and stood onto the dry branch.

sîner habe aldâ gebrast
of-his goods there lacked

den vogeln dien solden niezen:
to-the birds who should enjoy:

des moht ouch die verdriezen.
of-that might also them vex.

189,25 ich mæze iu dinges dar genuoc
I measure to-you of-thing there enough

gein dem der den zuber truoc,
toward him who the tub bore,

wan deiz iu von im smâhet.
except that-it to-you of him disdains.

nu kom im dar genâhet
now came to-him thither neared

mit hurt ein poynder daz niht liez,
with onset a charge which not stopped,

den zuber man im umbe stiez.
the tub one to-him over thrust.

190,1 Daz vertruog er als ein kiuschiu maget,
That bore he as a chaste maiden,

und wart von im ouch niht geklaget.
and was by him also not lamented.

'in schimphe man sus tuon sol,'
'in sport one thus do shall,'

dâht er und brâht in aber vol.
thought he and brought it again full.

dennoch was in niht spottes buoz. 190,5
still was to-them not of-mockery amends.

von disen ze ors, von jenen ze fuoz
by these on horse, by those on foot

wart er vil gehardieret
was he much assailed

unt alsô gepungieret,
and so charged,

daz sîn voller zuber swære
that his full tub heavy

wart aber wazzers lære; 190,10
became again of-water empty;

dâ von im kiusche ein teil zesleif.
there from to-him chastity a part slipped.

einen knappen dô begreif
a squire then seized

der starke, niht der kranke:
the strong-one, not the weak-one:

er dræt in zeime swanke
he whirled him with-a swing

an eine steinîne sûl, 190,15
against a stone pillar,

daz der knappe, als ob er wære fûl,
that the squire, as if he were rotten,

von dem wurfe gar zespranc.
from the throw wholly burst.

umbe in was ê grôz gedranc:
around him was before great throng:

die liezen in gar eine
they left him wholly alone

und fluhen al gemeine. 190,20
and fled all in-common.

Willalm Asks for Rennewart

XLV

The king says the servant is noble and well behaved but refuses baptism, and that merchants brought him over the sea from Persia. Willalm asks for him and receives him with Alyze's help. Rennewart pretends not to understand French, but in Chaldean he tells Willalm he is from Mecca, has despaired of Mahmet, and is ashamed of his kitchen life. He gladly pledges to serve the margrave and avenge his losses, and Willalm promises him whatever he desires.

der marcrâve zem künege sprach
the margrave to-the king spoke

'sâht ir, hêrre, waz geschach
'saw you, lord, what happened

ûf dem hof an dem sarjant
on the court to the sergeant

der treit daz küchenvar gewant?'
who wears the kitchen-colored garment?'

190,25 der künic sprach 'ich hânz gesehen.
the king spoke 'I have-it seen.

ez ist im selten ê geschehen
it is to-him seldom before happened

daz man in fünde in unsiten.
that one him should-find in ill-manners.

er hât von kinde hie gebiten
he has from child here waited

in mîme hove mit grôzer zuht:
in my court with great courtesy:

er begienc nie sölh ungenuht.
he committed never such impropriety.

191,1 Ich weiz wol daz er edel ist:
I know well that he noble is:

mîn sin ervant ab nie den list,
my mind found however never the cunning,

einvaltic noch spæhe,
simple nor clever,

von wirde noch von smæhe,
of dignity nor of contempt,

der in übergienge
which him should-overcome

daz er den touf enphienge.
that he the baptism should-receive.

ich hân unfuoge an im getân:
I have impropriety on him done:

got weiz wol daz ich willen hân,
God knows well that I will have,

op er enphienge kristenheit,
if he received Christianity,

mir wære al sîn kumber leit.
to-me would-be all his affliction grievous.

in brâhten koufliute über sê:
him brought merchants over sea:

die heten in gekoufet ê
they had him bought before

in der Persen lande.
in the Persians' land.

nie dehein ouge erkande
never any eye knew

flæteger antlüz noch lîp:
fairer countenance nor body:

geêret wær daz selbe wîp
honored would-be that same woman

diu in zer werlde brâhte,
who him into-the world brought,

op der touf im niht versmâhte.'
if the baptism to-him not disdained.'

der marcgrâve zem künege trat,
the margrave to-the king stepped,

191,20 umbe den knappen er in bat,
for the squire he him bade,

er solt in im ze stiure gebn.
he should him to-him as aid give.

'waz ob ich, hêrre, im sîn lebn
'what if I, lord, to-him his life

baz berihte, op ich mac?'
better order, if I may?'

der künec versagens gein im phlac.
the king refusing toward him practiced.

191,25 Alyze bat in mêre
Alyze bade him more

sô lange und ouch sô sêre,
so long and also so sorely,

unz in der künec gewerte
until him the king granted

des er umbe den knappen gerte.
of-what he about the squire desired.

der marcgrâve nâch Rennewart
the margrave for Rennewart

sant: der was noch âne bart.
sent: he was still without beard.

192,1 Dô der in den palas gienc,
When he into the palace went,

mit grôzer zuht erz an fienc.
with great courtesy he-it on began.

doch was im schamlîche leit
yet was to-him shamefully grievous

daz sô swach was sîn kleit:
that so poor was his garment:

192,5 ez versmâhte eime garzûn.
it disdained to-a groom.

do der marcgrâve in prîsûn
when the margrave in prison

gevangen lac dâ ze Arâbî,
captive lay there at Arabi,

Caldeis und Côatî
Chaldean and Coati

lernt er dâ ze sprechen.
learned he there to speak.

done wold ouch niht zebrechen 192,10
then would also not break

der knappe sîniu lantwort:
the squire his native-speech:

Franzoyser sprâche kund er hort.
French of-speech knew he hoard.

do der marcgrâve in komen sach,
when the margrave him come saw,

en franzoys er im zuo sprach
in French he to-him to spoke

mit der jungen künegîn urloup. 192,15
with the young queen's leave.

do gebârter als er wære toup
then behaved-he as he were deaf

unt als ers niht verstüende:
and as he-it not understood:

er het ouch guote küende,
he had also good knowledge,

swaz iemen sprach, man oder maget:
whatever anyone spoke, man or maiden:

der gegenrede wart niht gesaget 192,20
of-the counter-speech was nothing said

von sînem edelem munde.
from his noble mouth.

der marcgrâf dâ ze stunde
the margrave there at-the hour

sprach Caldeis und heidensch zim.
spoke Chaldean and heathen to-him.

'die bêde sprâch ich wol vernim,'
'the both languages I well hear,'

192,25 sus antwurt im der knappe dô.
thus answered him the squire then.

des was der marcgrâve vrô.
of-that was the margrave glad.

dô sprach er 'trûtgeselle mîn,
then spoke he 'dear-companion mine,

ich wæn du bist ein Sarrazîn.
I think thou art a Saracen.

nu sag mir umb dîn geslehte
now tell me about thy lineage

unt dîn her komen rehte.'
and thy hither coming rightly.'

193,1 Er vrâgete in her unde dâ.
He asked him here and there.

er sprach 'ich bin von Meckâ,
he spoke 'I am from Mecca,

dâ Mahmeten heilikeit
where Mahmet's holiness

sînen lîchnamen treit
his body bears

193,5 al swebende ân under setzen.
all floating without under setting.

der mac mich wol ergetzen
he may me well compensate

swar an ich hie vertwâlet bin,
wherever in I here neglected am,

hât er gotlîchen sin.
(if)-bas he godly mind.

doch hân ich im sô vil geklagt,
yet have I to-him so much lamented,

daz ich sîner helfe bin verzagt, 193,10
that I of-his help am despaired,

und hân michs nu gehabt an Krist,
and have me-it now held to Christ,

dem du undertænic bist.
to-whom thou subject art.

mich dunket des, du sîst getouft.
me seems of-that, thou art baptized.

sît ich her wart verkouft,
since I hither was sold,

sô hân ich smæhlîch arbeit 193,15
so have I contemptible toil

gedolt. der künic selbe streit
suffered. the king himself strove

gein mir und hiez mich lêren,
against me and bade me teach,

ich solde mich bekêren.
I should myself convert.

nu ist mir der touf niht geslaht:
now is to-me the baptism not natural:

des hân ich tac unde naht 193,20
for-that have I day and night

gelebet wol dem ungelîche,
lived well to-that unlike,

op mîn vater ie wart rîche.
if my father ever became rich.

eteswenne ich in den werken bin,
sometimes I in the works am,

daz mir diu schame nimt den sin:
that to-me the shame takes the mind:

wand ich leb in lekerîe. 193,25
for I live in scullery.

sol iemmer wert âmîe
(if)-shall ever worthy sweetheart

mînen lîp umbevâhen,
my body embrace,

daz mac ir wol versmâhen:
that may to-her well disdain:

wan ich bin wirden niht gewent,
for I am to-dignities not accustomed,

unt hân mich doch dar nâch gesent.'
and have me yet there after yearned.'

194,1 Dem marcgrâven wol behagete
To-the margrave well pleased

daz der junge unverzagete
that the young undaunted-one

in alsô smæhlîchem leben
in so contemptible life

mit zuht nâch wirde kunde streben.
with courtesy after dignity could strive.

194,5 er sprach 'dîn schame gar verbir.
he spoke 'thy shame wholly forgo.

der künec hât dich gegeben mir:
the king has thee given me:

ob du mich diens wider werst,
if thou me of-service in-return grant,

ich bereit dich schône swes du gerst.'
I prepare thee fairly whatever thou desirest.'

im neig und sprach der Sarrazîn
to-him bowed and spoke the Saracen

194,10 'sol ich in iwerm gebote sîn,
'(if)-shall I in your command be,

ir muget an mir behalten prîs.
you may in me keep prize.

hêr, sît irz der markîs,
lord, (if)-are you-it the marquis,

der daz geflôrierte her
who the flowered host

von den komenden über mer
by the coming-ones over sea

hât verloren in strîte, 194,15
has lost in battle,

sô bin ich iu bezîte
so am I to-you in-time

in iwer helfe alhie gegebn:
into your help here given:

die wil ich rechen, sol ich lebn.
them will I avenge, (if)-shall I live.

ziwerm râte wil ich phlihten:
to-your counsel will I pledge-myself:

ir muget mich wol berihten 194,20
you may me well order

swenne ich in swacher fuore bin
whenever I in poor bearing am

(jugent hât dicke kranken sin):
(youth has often weak mind):

und heizet mir gereitschaft tuon.'
and bid to-me equipment make.'

dô sprach Heimrîches suon
then spoke Heimrich's son

'swes du gerst unt swaz du wilt, 194,25
'whatever thou desirest and whatever thou wilt,

hân ichz, niemer michs bevilt,
(if)-have I-it, never me-it wearies,

ich gib dirz,' sprach der milte man.
I give thee-it,' spoke the generous man.

'ir muget die kost lîhte hân,
'you may the cost easily have,

als ich nu ger von iwerr hant,
as I now desire from your hand,

swie iwer marke sî verbrant.'
however your march be burned.'

The Pole

XLVI

Rennewart pledges his service to Willalm. A Jew of Narbonne, left behind by Irmschart, equips Willalm's men and pays for Rennewart's clothes. Rennewart refuses horse and armor and asks for a great square pole of hornbeam bound with steel, too heavy for six men to carry. After ten days the army gathers in tents on the plain below the mountain, and the princes the king receives there marvel that Willalm risked so small a host against Terramer without waiting for the king's help.

195,1 Ir enweders wort nieman verstuont:
Of-them either's word no-one understood:

sine wârn dâ man noch wîbe kuont,
they were there to-man nor to-woman known,

der doch die stimme hôrte.
who yet the voice heard.

under râme der geflôrte,
under soot the flowered-one,

195,5 des vel ein towic rôse was,
whose skin a dewy rose was,

ob ez im rosteshalp genas,
if it on-his rust-side survived,

er sprach 'hêr, wie sol ich nu varn?
he spoke 'lord, how shall I now fare?

swaz ir heizet mich bewarn,
whatever you bid me guard,

des phlig ich als ich phlegen kan.
of-that take-care I as I take-care can.

sô lieben hêrrn ich nie gewan:
so dear lord I never gained:
iwer hulde sî mîn lôn.'
your goodwill be my reward.'
einen juden von Narbôn
a Jew from Narbonne
liez dâ diu fürstinne Irmenschart:
left there the princess Irmenschart:
der solte gein der hervart
he should toward the campaign
bereiten des marcgrâven diet.
prepare the margrave's people.
swem sîn kumber daz geriet
to-whomever his affliction that counseled
daz er sich halden wolde
that he himself hold would
an in, von rîchem solde
to him, of rich pay
si der jude werte
them the Jew granted
ieslîchen swes er gerte.
to-each whatever he desired.
er sant ouch Rennewarten dar,
he sent also Rennewart thither,
und bat den juden nemen war,
and bade the Jew take heed,
daz er dem jungen sarjant
that he to-the young sergeant
harnasch ors unt gewant
armor horse and garment
gæbe, unz er selbe spræche
should-give, until he himself should-speak
daz nihtes im gebræche.
that of-nothing to-him should-lack.

Rennwart kom dar gegangen
Rennwart came thither walking

und iesch et eine stangen:
and demanded just a pole:

die wold er gein den vînden tragen;
that would he against the enemies carry;

daz diu wurde wol beslagen
that it should-be well shod

196,1 mit starken spangen stähelîn:
with strong clasps of-steel:

unt ein surkôt von kämbelîn.
and a surcoat of camlet.

mit guoten schuohn und hosen von sein
with good shoes and hose of say

sîniu wol geschicten bein
his well shaped legs

196,5 wurden wol berâten.
became well provided.

er gienc dâ snîdær nâten
he went where tailors sewed

wît unt blanc lînîn gewant:
wide and white linen garment:

daz galt im gar des juden hant
that paid for-him wholly the Jew's hand

durch des marcgrâven êre.
for the margrave's honor.

196,10 er bôt im dennoch mêre,
he offered him still more,

harnasch, ors und lanzen starc:
armor, horse and lances strong:

er enbehielt niht noch verbarc,
he kept-back nothing nor hid,

wan daz ern schône werte
except that he-him fairly granted

al des er an im gerte,
all of-what he of him desired,

als ander soldiere. 196,15
as other soldiers.

dô sprach der knappe schiere
then spoke the squire soon

‘ich wil ze fuoze in den strît.
‘I will on foot into the battle.

harnasch unde runzît
armor and nag

daz geb mîn herre den dies gern.
that give my lord to-those who-it desire.

ir sult mich einer stangen wern, 196,20
you shall me with-a pole grant,

vierekke, einr hagenbuochen;
four-cornered, of-a hornbeam;

ob sehs man versuochen
if six men try

daz si si hin wellen tragen,
that they it away will carry,

daz die von ir swære klagen;
that they of its heaviness lament;

und ob michs sibne wolden heln, 196,25
and if me-it seven would hide,

daz si ir doch möhten niht versteln
that they of-it yet might not steal

von der swære ir laste.
for the heaviness of-its load.

der smit sol si vaste
the smith shall it firmly

beslahen mit starken banden,
shoe with strong bands,

sleht und blôz zen handen.'
smooth and bare at-the hands.'

197,1 Sus wart bereitet Rennewart
Thus was equipped Rennewart

und manic anderr gein der vart,
and many-a other toward the journey,

allez von des juden hant.
all from the Jew's hand.

hie dem rîter, dort dem sarjant
here to-the knight, there to-the sergeant

197,5 der marcgrâf rotten meister gap.
the margrave troops' master gave.

der samnunge urhap
of-the gathering beginning

sich huop nâch den zehen tagen.
itself lifted after the ten days.

man sah dâ rîlîch ûf geslagen
one saw there richly up pitched

anz velt, dâ der berc erwant,
on-the field, where the mountain ended,

197,10 treif unde tulant,
tents and pavilions,

ekub unde preymerûn.
round-tents and broad-tents.

ouch sah der Heimrîches sun
also saw the Heimrich's son

manic hôh gezelt gesniten wît
many-a high tent cut wide

gein der fürsten künfte zît,
toward the princes' coming's time,

197,15 die dâ kômen durch des rîchs gebot.
who there came for the realm's command.

Gyburc möhte loben got,
Gyburc might praise God,

hete si gesehen und ouch vernomn
had she seen and also heard

diz kreftic rîterlîche komn.
this mighty knightly coming.

der künec hin ab mit valken reit,
the king away down with falcons rode,

über al daz gevilde breit 197,20
over all the field broad

enphieng er die fürsten sunder.
received he the princes separately.

die erbarmete unt nam wunder
them pitied and took wonder

umb des marcgrâven mâge,
about the margrave's kinsmen,

daz er sich selbe en wâge
that he himself self in balance

liez mit eim sô kleinem her, 197,25
let with a so small host,

daz er des rœmschen küneges wer
that he of-the Roman king's defense

niht beite ûf sîner marke,
not waited on his march,

dô Terramêr der starke
when Terramer the strong

in sô mangen treimunden
in so many dromonds

was dâ kumende funden.
was there coming found.

The March from Munleun

XLVII

The army is ordered to march to Orleans. Rennewart's hair is singed in the kitchen and he smashes the cooks' kettles with his pole; Willalm calms him with the promise of new clothes and a haircut. The queen, who keeps a troop of her own at her own cost, and her daughter ride out with the host toward Orleans. Rennewart oversleeps and forgets his pole, which the cooks have carried off; when he runs back for it, he breaks down the kitchen doors and the chief cook lies dead.

198,1 Dô si der marcgrâve enphienc,
When them the margrave received,

etslîcher sîne zuht begienc,
some his courtesy performed,

daz er mit herzen klagete
that he with heart lamented

kumber den er in sagete.
affliction which he to-them told.

198,5 die werden begunden sprechen,
the worthy-ones began to-speak,

si woldenz gerne rechen
they would-it gladly avenge

durch in unt durh daz rîche,
for him and for the realm,

unt si tætenz ouch pillîche.
and they should-do-it also rightly.

des küneges rüefær al den scharn
the king's crier to-all the companies

198,10 gebôt, si solden smorgens varn
commanded, they should in-the-morning fare

gein Orlens ûf die strâze.
toward Orleans onto the road.

do der künec ze guoter mâze
when the king in good measure

mit den valken was geriten,
with the falcons was ridden,

dâ wart niht langer dô gebiten.
there was not longer then waited.

Munleûn ist der berc sô hôch: 198,15
Munleun is the mountain so high:

ê daz diu sunne im entflôch,
before that the sun from-it fled,

er reit hin ûf, bî schœnem tage.
he rode away up, by fair day.

nu vant der marcgrâf mit klage
now found the margrave with lament

sînen jungen starken sarjant.
his young strong sergeant.

dem was sîn hâr unt sîn gewant 198,20
to-him was his hair and his garment

in der küchen besenget.
in the kitchen singed.

ez enwart dô niht gelenget,
it became then not lengthened,

den selben schimph mit schimph er rach.
the same sport with sport he avenged.

mit der stangn er durch die kezzel stach:
with the pole he through the kettles thrust:

kein haven was dâ sô êrîn, 198,25
no pot was there so brazen,

er müese ouch zebrochen sîn.
it must also broken be.

der küchenmeister kûme entran:
the kitchen-master barely escaped:

zornic was der junge man.
wrathful was the young man.

der marcgrâf senfte im sînen muot,
the margrave softened to-him his spirit,

als dicke ein vriunt dem andern tuot,
as often a friend to-the other does,

199,1 und sprach 'ich gib dir andriu kleit.
and spoke 'I give thee other clothes.

dir was dîn hâr ouch alze breit:
to-thee was thy hair also all-too broad:

daz sul wir nider strîchen
that shall we down stroke

und den ôren glîchen
and to-the ears even

199,5 schôn alum mit eime snite.
fairly all-around with a cut.

nu hab zuhtbære site,
now have courteous manners,

unt kêr dich niht an dise klage.
and turn thee not to this lament.

morgen vruo, so ez êrste tage,
tomorrow early, when it first dawns,

sô man die banier binde
when one the banners binds

199,10 an, dâ mîn gesinde
on, where my household

under sulen trecken
under shall march

für die stat, sô heiz dich wecken
before the town, so bid thee wake

dînen wirt, und heb dich an die vart.'
thy host, and lift thee onto the journey.'

daz lobte der junge Rennewart.
that promised the young Rennewart.

der künec ze Munlêûn die naht 199,15
the king at Munleun the night

beleip. der het sich vor bedâht,
remained. he had himself before bethought,

er wolde ze Orlens rîten,
he would to Orleans ride,

dâ daz her an allen sîten
where the host on all sides

zer jungsten samenunge,
to-the last gathering,

der alte und der junge 199,20
the old and the young

kômen, die im des swuoren,
came, who to-him of-that swore,

daz si ze helfe fuoren
that they as help went

dem gelouben unt dem toufe,
to-the faith and to-the baptism,

und von ir soldes koufe
and from her pay's purchase

diu küngîn sunderrotte phlac 199,25
the queen separate-troop kept

und sich der kost alsô bewac
and herself of-the cost so resolved

daz wert man gerne greif dar zuo.
that worthy man gladly grasped there to.

si was bereit des morgens vruo
she was ready of-the morning early

mit manger juncfrouwen:
with many-a young-lady:

si wolten ze Orlens schouwen
they would at Orleans behold

wie der künic dâ belibe, 200,1
how the king there should-remain,

und wie erz her fürbaz tribe,
and how he-the host further should-drive,

und wer des wære houbetman.
and who of-it were captain.

diu naht ouch enden began,
the night also to-end began,

200,5 daz man den tac kôs al grâ.
that one the day saw all gray.

dô sah man her unde dâ
then saw one here and there

von velde und ûz den porten,
from field and out-of the gates,

ich mein gein al den orten
I mean toward all the places

swâ gein Orlens diu strâze lac,
wherever toward Orleans the road lay,

200,10 diu wart getretet wol den tac.
it was trodden well the day.

dô zogt ouch dan diu künegîn
then drew also thence the queen

und ir tohter, diu sô liehten schîn
and her daughter, who so bright appearance

gap daz ich die heide
gave that I the heath

mit ir mangem underscheide,
with its many-a difference,

200,15 des si noch phliget und ouch dô phlac,
of-which it still takes-care and also then took-care,

gein ir niht gelîchen mac.
toward her not liken may.

disen ze orse und jenen ze fuoz,
these on horse and those on foot,

den allen werdeclîcher gruoz
to-them all worthy greeting

von dem marcgrâven geschach,
from the margrave happened,

den man bî strâzen halden sach 200,20
whom one by roads halt saw

ûf sîm ors Volatîne.
on his horse Volatin.

er warte ob al die sîne
he waited whether all the his-ones

ûz Munlêûn noch wæren komen.
out-of Munleun yet were come.

die heten sich sô für genomen,
they had themselves so before taken,

daz sûmen was von in gespart. 200,25
that tarrying was by them spared.

niwan sîn friunt Rennewart
only his friend Rennewart

der kom geheistieret hie
he came running here

sô verre nâch daz dise unt die
so far after that these and those

im sêre wârn gevirret.
to-him sorely were distant.

in het der slâf verirret.
him had the sleep misled.

Doch was er herzenlîche vrô 201,1
Yet was he heartily glad

daz er den marcgrâven dô
that he the margrave then

vor im ze orse halden sach,
before him on horse halt saw,

der sînen gruoz gein im ouch sprach
who his greeting toward him also spoke

201,5 und vrâgt in ‘wa ist diu stange dîn?’
and asked him ‘where is the pole thine?’

Rennewart sprach ‘hêrre mîn,
Rennewart spoke ‘lord mine,

der hân ich vergezzen dort.
it have I forgotten there.

ez was ein helflîchez wort,
it was a helpful word,

daz mich der stangen hât ermant.
that me of-the pole has reminded.

201,10 hêrre, ir sît des ungeschant,
lord, you are of-that undisgraced,

ob ir mîn hie bîtet.
if you for-me here wait.

ez frumt iu swâ ir strîtet,
it profits you wherever you fight,

op ich die stangen bringe.’
if I the pole bring.’

er sprach ze dem jungelinge
he spoke to the youth

201,15 ‘ich beit dîn, wilt du schiere komn.
‘I wait for-thee, (if)-wilt thou soon come.

hâstu iemen hinder dir vernomn,
(if)-hast-thou anyone behind thee heard,

der mich an winde,
who me on seeks,

dem sage daz er mich vinde.
to-him say that he me find.

rîtr und ander soldiere
knights and other soldiers

201,20 brinc mit dir wider schiere,
bring with thee back soon,

und vergiz niht dîner stangen.'
and forget not thy pole.'

'nu lât iuch niht erlangen,'
'now let you not long,'

sprach Rennewart der snelle.
spoke Rennewart the quick.

mit küchenvarwem velle
with kitchen-colored hide

was er ûf einer hackebanc 201,25
was he on a chopping-bench

die naht âne der koche danc
the night without the cooks' thanks

gelegen. die heten hin getragen
lain. they had away carried

sîne stangen. die begund er klagen.
his pole. that began he to-lament.

Der tür er wênc deheine liez,
Of-the doors he little any left,

mit den fuozen er si nider stiez.
with the feet he them down thrust.

der küchenmeister lac dâ tôt: 202,1
the kitchen-master lay there dead:

die anderen koche dolten nôt,
the other cooks suffered distress,

swaz ir dâ heime was beliben.
whatever of-them there at-home was remained.

unlange het er daz getriben,
not-long had he that driven,

unz er sîne stangen vant: 202,5
until he his pole found:

die warf er von hant ze hant
it threw he from hand to hand

als ein swankele gerten.
as a swaying switch.

nu het ouch sîns geverten
now had also for-his companion

gebiten dort der markîs.
waited there the marquis.

202,10 den dûhte daz daz selbe rîs
him seemed that that same branch

sölhen würfen wær ze swære
for-such throws were too heavy

und dem kranken ungebære.
and for-the weak-one unbearable.

sus kom der starke soldier:
thus came the strong soldier:

vor hunden ein wildez tier
before hounds a wild beast

202,15 wær niht baz ersprenget.
would-be not better started.

ez wart dô niht gelenget,
it became then not lengthened,

der marcgrâve reit hin nâch,
the margrave rode away after,

Rennewart lief vor: dem was ouch gâch.
Rennewart ran before: to-him was also haste.

The Shield in the Fire

XLVIII

The host lodges at a cloister that burned when Willalm left his shield there, a shield worth more than the cloister. When the king says Willalm seems too old to adorn himself so, Willalm says he won his crest from Arofel, king of Persia and Terramer's brother, who offered thirty elephants laden with gold for his life and was beheaded. He names others he slew: Thesereiz, the sweet one whose death grieved Terramer further, who led a host out of five kingdoms, and the rich Sicilian of Palermo, whom he slew unwillingly.

dem her was herberge genomen
to-the host was lodging taken

und was der künic selbe komen 202,20
and was the king himself come

zeime klôster, daz verbran
to-a cloister, which burned

dô der marcgrâve dan
when the margrave thence

schiet und sînen schilt dâ liez.
parted and his shield there left.

ze tûsent marken der geniez
at thousand marks the income

was, der dem klôster galt 202,25
was, which to-the cloister paid

(sus was sîn urbor gezalt):
(thus was its revenue counted):

op iuch des mæres niht bevilt,
if you of-the tale not wearies,

sô koste mêr der eine schilt
so cost more the one shield

der in dem fiure was verlorn,
which in the fire was lost,

dan daz klôster mit den urborn.
than the cloister with the revenues.

203,1 Der marcgrâve reit ouch dar
The margrave rode also thither

und nam des grôzen schaden war,
and took of-the great harm heed,

den er untz klôster dâ gewan.
which he and-the cloister there gained.

nu hete der appet kunt getân
now had the abbot known made

203,5 dem künige und der künigîn,
to-the king and to-the queen,

wie rehte kostebæren schîn
how right costly appearance

der schilt gap von gesteine,
the shield gave of gems,

und daz anders enkeine
and that other none

drûf verwieret lâgen,
thereon set lay,

203,10 wan die grôzer koste phlâgen.
except those-which greater cost bore.

der künec zem marcgrâven sprach,
the king to-the margrave spoke,

dô er in vor im sitzen sach
when he him before him sit saw

(dâ saz mêr rîter ungezalt)
(there sat more knights uncounted)

‘dar zuo dunket ir mich zalt,
‘there to seem you to-me too-old,

daz iu ûf tôtbæren strît 203,15
that to-you on deadly battle

iwer muot die volge gît
your spirit the following gives

daz ir iuch zimiert alsô.'
that you yourself adorn so.'

der marcgrâf saget im rehte dô
the margrave told him rightly then

'swaz ich zimierde phlige,
'whatever I of-crest practice,

die erwarp mîn hant mit eime sige 203,20
it won my hand with a victory

an dem künec von Persîâ.
on the king of Persia.

der bôt mir für sîn sterben dâ
he offered to-me for his dying there

drîzec helfande,
thirty elephants,

die man geladen bekande
which one laden recognized

mit dem golt von Kaukasas. 203,25
with the gold of Caucasus.

al anders mir ze muote was:
all otherwise to-me in spirit was:

sîns sterbens mich baz luste,
of-his dying me better pleased,

wand ich smorgens kuste
for I in-the-morning kissed

Vivîanzen dicke alsô tôt.
Vivianz often so dead.

ez half in niht swaz er mir bôt:
it helped him not whatever he to-me offered:

ich enthoubte den künic wol geborn. 204,1
I beheaded the king well born.

des hât diu minne mir verlorn
for-that has the love for-me lost

sînen schilt kostebære.
his shield costly.

er was ouch mir ze swære:
it was also to-me too heavy:

204,5 in solte der geprîste tragen,
it should the praised-one bear,

den ich drunder hân erslagen.
whom I thereunder have slain.

got weiz wol daz al sîn sin
God knows well that all his mind

ie was gerende ûf den gewin
ever was desiring for the gain

daz im diu minne lônde.
that him the love rewarded.

204,10 deheiner kost er schônde:
of-no cost he spared:

sîn herze im des niht werte,
his heart him of-that not forbade,

lîp und guot er zerte,
body and goods he consumed,

der newederz vor prîs er sparte,
of-which neither before prize he spared,

vor valschheit der bewarte.
before falseness them guarded.

204,15 swaz mir nu tuot Terramêr,
whatever to-me now does Terramer,

ich hân im doch daz herzesêr
I have to-him yet the heart-sore

an dem werden künge alsô gesant,
in the worthy king so sent,

dâ von im jâmer wirt bekant:
there from to-him misery becomes known:

der ze Samargône
who at Samargone

in Persîâ die krône 204,20
in Persia the crown

vor den edelen fürsten truoc,
before the noble princes bore,

mîn hant iedoch den selben sluoc,
my hand yet the same slew,

sînen bruoder den getiwerten,
his brother the precious-one,

vor wîben den gehiwerten.
before women the gracious-one.

ich hân der minnen hulde 204,25
I have of-the love goodwill

verloren durch die schulde:
lost for the guilt:

ob ich minne wolde gern,
if I love would desire,

ich mües ir durch den zorn enbern,
I must it for the wrath forgo,

wand ich Aroffel nam den lîp,
for I from-Aroffel took the body,

den immer klagent diu werden wîp.
whom ever lament the worthy women.

Ich half noch Terramêre 205,1
I helped still Terramer

fürbaz gein herzesêre:
further toward heart-sore:

mîn tjost im sluoc den süezen:
my joust to-him slew the sweet-one:

wie möht ich daz gebüezen
how might I that amend

205,5 wîben, die noch mêr verlurn
to-women, who still more lost

an im, ob si ze rehte kurn?
in him, if they by right should-choose?

dâ was der minne urbor verhert,
there was the love's revenue ravaged,

mit sîme tôde ir gelt verzert.
with his death its payment consumed.

Thesereiz der geprîste,
Thesereiz the praised-one,

205,10 sîn herze in alsô wîste:
his heart him so directed:

wart nâch minne ie dienst ersehen,
was after love ever service seen,

man muose im volgen unde jehen
one must him follow and declare

daz ers phlac und guoten willen truoc.
that he-it practiced and good will bore.

Thesereiz der het ie genuoc
Thesereiz he had ever enough

205,15 prîss für sîne genôze.
of-prize before his peers.

er fuort ouch her daz grôze
he led also host the great

ûz fümf künicrîchen.
out-of five kingdoms.

ich enmac im niht gelîchen
I may to-him not liken

niemen under krône,
anyone under crown,

der baz nâch wîbe lône 205,20
who better after women's reward

runge denne der Arâboys.
should-wrestle than the Arab.

der rîche Seciljoys
the rich Sicilian

was geborn von Palerne.
was born of Palermo.

mîn hant in sluoc ungerne
my hand him slew unwillingly

durch sîne hôhe werdekeit. 205,25
for his high worthiness.

ouwê daz i'm niht entreit,
alas that I-him not rode-away-from,

dô der gezimierte
when the adorned-one

mich vil gehardierte.
me much assailed.

mîn tjost was im doch unbekant,
my joust was to-him yet unknown,

unz Arabele wart genant,
until Arabel was named,

bî der minne er mirz gebôt: 206,1
by the love he to-me-it commanded:

dâ von was kümftic im sîn tôt.
there from was coming to-him his death.

The King's Charge to the Princes

XLIX

Willalm finishes the account of the kings he slew, Talimon, Poufameiz, Turpiun, and others, of the heathens past counting, and of his flight, and asks the king to stand by him. The king is glad of the vengeance, and the queen praises it. At Orleans Willalm wins the townsmen the king's favor over the judge's death. The king gives pay, stays behind himself, entrusts his host and authority to Willalm, and bids all obey him; the queen pledges help to any who stand by her brother.

Von Boctân rois Talimôn
Of Boctan king Talimon

was noch durch der wîbe lôn
was still for the women's reward

206,5 gezieret baz dan Thesereiz:
adorned better than Thesereiz:

vor dem bestuont mich Poufemeiz
before him attacked me Poufemeiz

der künec von Ingulîe,
the king of Ingulie,

unt Turpîûn, die drîe,
and Turpiun, the three,

der rîche von Falturmîê:
the rich-one of Falturmie:

206,10 den tet ich allen glîche wê,
to-them did I all alike woe,

Tschoyûse dez leben ûz in sneit.
Tschoyuse the life out-of them cut.

Arfiklant ouch mit mir streit,
Arfiklant also with me fought,

und des bruoder Turkant:
and his brother Turkant:

Turkânîe was ir lant.
Turkanie was their land.

der newedern half sîn krône, 206,15
of-them neither helped his crown,

ine gæbe im daz ze lône
unless-I gave to-him that as reward

als ich Vivîanzen ligen sach,
as I Vivianz lie saw,

den ich sît an Arofelle rach.
whom I later on Arofel avenged.

âne rüemen wil ichz sagen,
without boasting will I-it say,

der heiden hât mîn hant erslagen, 206,20
of-the heathens has my hand slain,

ob ichz rehte prüeven kan,
if I-it rightly reckon can,

mêr denn mîn houbet und die gran
more than my head and the strands

der hâre hab mit sunderzal.
of-the hair have with separate-number.

mit schaden behapten si daz wal,
with harm held they the slaughter-field,

dâ von ich schumphentiure leit: 206,25
there from I discomfiture suffered:

daz enwas niht ân ir arbeit:
that was not without their toil:

si mugens noch lange zeigen.
they may-it still long show.

daz erziug ich mit den veigen,
that witness I with the doomed-ones,

als ouch mîn stiefsun Ehmereiz,
as also my stepson Ehmereiz,

wæn ich, wol die wârheit weiz.
think I, well the truth knows.

Von dem maneger slahte wuofe, 207,1
From the many kinds' wailing,

ir herzeichens ruofe,
their war-cry's calling,

und daz ich heidnisch wol verstuont,
and that I heathen well understood,

dâ von wart mir rehte kuont
there from became to-me rightly known

207,5 wer sî wâren, dirre unt der,
who they were, this-one and that-one,

dô si mit poynder kômen her.
when they with charge came hither.

ich sluog ie die geflôrten
I struck ever the flowered-ones

an die die rotte hôrten,
to whom the troops belonged,

unz ich beleip gar helfelôs.
until I remained wholly helpless.

207,10 die fluht ich dô für sterben kôs:
the flight I then before dying chose:

ich flôh ab sô werlîche,
I fled however so warlike,

dês gêrt ist rœmisch rîche,
of-which honored is Roman realm,

unt daz Terramêr von Muntespîr
and that Terramer of Muntespir

mangen amazûr und eskelîr,
many-a almansur and eskelier,

207,15 die mîne genôze wâren,
who my peers were,

mac suochen ûf den bâren.
may seek on the biers.

nu habt ir, hêrre, an mir getân
now have you, lord, in me done

daz arme und rîche, iwer man,
that poor and rich, your men,

an mir suln nemen bilde,
in me shall take example,

die ligent ûf disem gevilde, 207,20
who lie on this field,

und dar zuo die dâ heime sint.
and there to those-who there at-home are.

wære ich, hêrre, iwer kint,
were I, lord, your child,

mîn flust möht iu niht nâher gên.
my loss might you not nearer go.

ir welt iu selbn an mir gestên.
you will to-yourselves self in me stand-by.

ich hân vil rehte iu gesagt 207,25
I have very rightly to-you told

wie diu zimierde ist bejagt,
how the crest is won,

der schilt unt daz kursît:
the shield and the surcoat:

und des wâpenroc noch gît
and whose tabard still gives

alsô kostebæren schîn,
so costly appearance,

des selben was ouch Volatîn.'
of-the same was also Volatin.'

Manegen dûht sîn arbeit grôz: 208,1
To-many seemed his toil great:

durch daz si smæres niht verdrôz,
for that they of-the-tale not wearied,

die dâ sâzen unde stuonden,
who there sat and stood,

wand si selten ie befuonden
for they seldom ever found

ze keiner slahte stunde
at any of-kind hour

lüge von sînem munde.
lie from his mouth.

der künic was der râche vrô:
the king was of-the vengeance glad:

ouch sprach diu künegîn alsô.
also spoke the queen thus.

‘daz in heidenschaft doch eteslich wîp
‘that in heathendom yet some woman

des clâren Vivîanzes lîp
the bright Vivianz’s body

mit mir sol beriezen,
with me shall weep-for,

des muost du geniezen,
of-that must thou profit,

bruoder, immer wider mich;
brother, ever toward me;

und daz dîn manlîch gerich
and that thy manly vengeance

ouch an den hôhen ist geschehen,
also on the high-ones is happened,

sô daz dich Tybalt hât gesehen
so that thee Tybalt has seen

ze weren rœmisch êre,
to defend Roman honor,

und daz du Terramêre
and that thou Terramer

vergulte alsô sîn übervart
repaidst so his crossing

mit sînem schaden ungespart.’
with his harm unspared.’

die fürstn und ander küneges man
the princes and other the-king's men

die fuorn ze herbergen dan.
they went to lodgings thence.

si wârn ze hove aldâ belibn,
they were at court there remained,

unz si den âbent hin getribn.
until they the evening away drove.

etslîche wârn durch schouwen 208,25
some were for beholding

dar komen für die vrouwen,
thither come before the ladies,

etslîch ouch sus durh mære.
some also thus for tidings.

wer jener unt dirre wære?
who that-one and this-one were?

ob ich des hab vergezzen,
if I of-that have forgotten,

des vrâgt ir umbesezzen.
of-that ask their neighbors.

Des morgens, do ez begunde tagen, 209,1
Of-the morning, when it began to-dawn,

hie die karrûne, dort der wagen,
here the carts, there the wagon,

der hôrt man vil dâ krachen.
of-them heard one many there crack.

regen und ûf machen
to-stir and up to-make

sich daz her begunde. 209,5
itself the host began.

an der selben stunde
at the same hour

wart von den gesten,
was by the guests,

den êrsten und den lesten,
the first and the last,

al die strâzen gein Orlens beriten.
all the roads toward Orleans ridden.

vil banier mit tiweren sniten
many banners with costly cuts

dâ kom an allen sîten,
there came on all sides,

als ob dâ rîter snîten,
as if there knights should-snow,

dem künige und dem markîs.
to-the king and to-the marquis.

etslîche kômen durch ir prîs,
some came for their prize,

etslîche hetens vor gesworn,
some had-it before sworn,

durh daz ir reht niht wære verlorn.
for that their right not should-be lost.

der marcgrâve moht âne zol
the margrave might without toll

durch Orlens nu rîten wol:
through Orleans now ride well:

in habete nu dâ niemen zuo.
him held now there no-one to.

es was von êrste in ouch ze vruo.
it was from first to-them also too early.

doch erwarb er in des küneges hulde,
yet won he for-them the king's goodwill,

und dâ schulde wider schulde
and there guilt against guilt

stuont, umbe des rihtæres tôt,
stood, for the judge's death,

und daz âne schulde nôt
and that without guilt distress

sîn eines lîp von in gewan. 209,25
his alone body from them gained.

mit ir schaden schiet er dan
with their harm parted he thence

und pärlîch ûf ir koste,
and openly on their cost,

in strîte, und mit der tjoste
in battle, and with the joust

diu Arnalten valte nider:
which Arnalt felled down:

si bekanten schiere ein ander sider.
they knew soon one another since.

Roys Lôys was ouch rœmscher vogt: 210,1
King Loys was also Roman lord:

von dem wart daz niht für gezogt,
by him was that not forth delayed,

dô er hin ze Orlens was komen,
when he away to Orleans was come,

sîns soldes wart dâ vil genomen
of-his pay was there much taken

und willeclîch von im gegeben. 210,5
and willingly by him given.

er sprach zin allen ‘muoz ich leben,
he spoke to-them all ‘(if)-may I live,

ich rîche iuch umb diz ungemach.’
I enrich you for this discomfort.’

ze al den werden er sus sprach,
to all the worthy-ones he thus spoke,

unt sunder zuo den fürsten.
and separately to the princes.

‘nu sît in den getürsten, 210,10
‘now be among the daring-ones,

daz ir manet ellens iwer man.
that you remind of-valor your men.

allez daz ich hiute hân,
all that I today have,

daz sî mit iu gemeine.
that be with you in-common.

vil gerne ich iu bescheine
very gladly I to-you show

210,15 daz ich mich triwen hin ze iu versihe
that I me of-faithfulness away to you expect

und mîner helfe wider gihe.
and my help again declare.

iwer neheiner habez für leit
of-you none have-it for sorrow

und merkz ouch niht für zageheit,
and mark-it also not for cowardice,

ob ich hie belîbe.
if I here remain.

210,20 an mîn eines lîbe
on my alone body

lît niht wan eines mannes trôst:
lies nothing but one man's comfort:

ir werdet sus al baz erlôst.
you become thus all better released.

ob iuch kumber twinget,
if you affliction constrains,

al nâher ir gedinget.
all nearer you hope.

210,25 muget ir niht haben veltstrît,
(if)-can you not have field-battle,

de marke hât vil bürge wît:
the march has many castles wide:

gebet ûz den porten rîterschaft.
give out-of the gates knighthood.

ir wizzet wol mîn besten kraft
you know well my best strength

hinder mir ze tiuschen landen:
behind me in German lands:

ich lœs iuch schier von banden.
I loose you quickly from bonds.

Mîn êre und ouch mîn liebez her 211,1
My honor and also my dear host

unt dar zuo sîn selbes wer
and there to its own defense

bevilh ich sîner manheit,
entrust I to-his manhood,

in des helf mir grôziu leit
in whose help to-me great sorrows

an wîbes mâgen sint getân, 211,5
on woman's kinsmen are done,

der ich immer mangel hân.
of-which I ever lack have.

swâger, gêt her nâher mir.
brother-in-law, go hither nearer me.

ich weiz nu lange wol daz ir
I know now long well that you

wol kunnet her leiten.
well can host lead.

ich wil iuch hie bereiten 211,10
I will you here equip

mîns gebotes und mînre gewalt.
with-my command and my might.

die ze keiner helfe sîn gezalt
those-who to no help are counted

ûf dise vart dem rîche,
on this journey to-the realm,

die bitet al gelîche,
them bid all alike,

211,15 die hôhen unt die nideren,
the high and the low,

daz si mîn gebot niht wideren,
that they my command not oppose,

alle mîne massenîe.
all my household.

der dienestman und der vrîe,
the serving-man and the free-one,

marschalke, al de ambetliute,
marshals, all the officials,

211,20 ich bevilh iu allen hiute
I entrust to-you all today

den marcgrâven an mîner stat,
the margrave in my place,

der mich durch kumber helfe bat.'
who me for affliction for-help bade.'

dô sprach diu küneginne
then spoke the queen

'gan mir got der sinne,
'(if)-grant me God of-the mind,

211,25 swer mînem bruoder nu gestêt,
whoever my brother now stands-by,

swaz den immer an gêt
whatever him ever on goes

mit kumberlîcher tæte,
with grievous deed,

mîn herze gît die ræte
my heart gives the counsels

daz ich daz wendic mache
that I that turned make

mit helfeclîcher sache.'
with helpful thing.'

Rennewart Takes Leave of Alyze

L

The princes, who would rather serve a peer than a royal official, name a marshal, cupbearer, steward, and chamberlain and pledge to obey Willalm; the king gives him the realm's banner and the cry of Munschoy. Heimrich and his sons make their own way toward Orange. Rennewart takes leave of the king and of Alyze, who asks him to forgive her father and kisses him. Willalm hurries on, fearing Tybalt will win Gyburc, and by night his distress near the Saracens shows him a fire.

Des ze Munlêûn was ê gesworn, 212,1
What at Munleun was before sworn,

daz was hie ze Orlens niht verlorn.
that was here at Orleans not lost.

die fürsten sunder niht verdrôz,
to-the princes separately not irked,

sine spræchen, einem ir genôz
unless-they spoke, to-one their peer

dem wærn si gerner undertân 212,5
to-him should-be they more-gladly subject

dan keime des küneges ambetman.
than to-any of-the king's official.

ein marschalc solde fuoter gebn:
a marshal should fodder give:

die des trinkens wolden lebn,
those-who of-the drinking would live,

die solden zuo dem schenken gên:
they should to the cupbearer go:

der truhsæze solde stên 212,10
the steward should stand

bî dem kezzel, sô des wære zît:
by the kettle, when of-it should-be time:

‘der kameræ̂r sol machen quît
‘the chamberlain shall make quit

phant den dies twinge nôt.
pledge to-those whom-it constrains distress.

wir welln des marcgrâven gebot
we will the margrave’s command

212,15 gerne leisten und im warten,
gladly perform and to-him attend,

und den heiden wênic zarten.’
and the heathens little caress.’

der künec gap selbe srîches vanen
the king gave himself the-realm’s banner

dem marcgrâven und hiez in manen
to-the margrave and bade him remind

daz her um Munschoy den ruof,
the host about Munschoy the cry,

212,20 ‘der mînem vater Karl schuof
‘which to-my father Charles wrought

in strîte manec koberen.
in battle many-a recovery.

die nideren und die oberen,
the low and the high,

ir strîtet berge ode tal,
you fight mountains or valley,

sît gemant um des ruofes schal.’
be reminded about the cry’s sound.’

212,25 Heimrîch und sîniu kint
Heimrich and his children

niht an der samnunge sint.
not at the gathering are.

sine dorfte niemen suochen dâ:
them needed no-one seek there:

ieslîcher sich mit sunderr slâ
each himself with separate track

alsô gein Oransche erbôt,
so toward Orange offered,

dês vische in fürten lâgen tôt.
of-which fish in fords lay dead.

Die fürsten und des künges man 213,1
The princes and the king's men

die nâmen urloup von dan
they took leave from thence

ze varen ûf die hervart.
to fare on the campaign.

nu kom der junge Rennewart:
now came the young Rennewart:

von arde ein zuht im daz geriet, 213,5
from nature a courtesy to-him that counseled,

mit urloub er dannen schiet
with leave he thence parted

vome künge an einer stat aldâ,
from-the king at a place there,

fürbaz zer künegîn anderswâ.
further to-the queen elsewhere.

de junge künegîn sunder was
the young queen apart was

under boumen anme gras: 213,10
under trees on-the grass:

dar begund er durch urloup gên
thither began he for leave to-go

und eine wîle vor ir stên.
and a while before her stand.

wan daz mirz d'âventiure sagt,
except that to-me-it the-adventure tells,

des mæres wær ich gar verzagt,
of-the tale would-be I wholly despaired,

213,15 als ez im Alyze erbôt.
as it to-him Alyze offered.

si klagete sîne manege nôt
she lamented his many distress

die er in Francrîche het erliten.
which he in France had suffered.

dar nâch begunde si in biten
there after began she him to-bid

daz er ir vater schult verkür,
that he her father's guilt should-forgive,

213,20 swaz der ie prîss gein im verlür.
whatever he ever of-prize toward him should-lose.

'do solt mit mîme kusse varn.
'thou shalt with my kiss fare.

dîn edelkeit mac dich bewarn
thy nobility may thee guard

und an die stat noch bringen
and to the place still bring

dâ dich sorge niht darf twingen.'
where thee care not need constrain.'

213,25 diu magt stuont ûf: der kus geschach.
the maiden stood up: the kiss happened.

Rennwart ir neic unde sprach
Rennwart to-her bowed and spoke

'der hœhste got behüete
'the highest God guard

iwer werdeclîchen güete.'
your worthy goodness.'

den anderen vrowen wart ouch genigen,
to-the other ladies was also bowed,

gein in sîn urloup niht verswigen.
toward them his leave not kept-silent.

Willehalm den fürsten wol geborn 214,1
Willehalm the prince well born

daz her ze meister het erkorn:
the host as master had chosen:

doch fuor dâ manec sîn genôz
yet went there many-a his peer

mit manegem sunderringe grôz.
with many-a separate-ring great.

ûf velde unt in walde 214,5
on field and in forest

si muosen gâhen balde:
they must hasten quickly:

des gert der si dâ fuorte,
of-that desired he-who them there led,

wand in grôz angest ruorte
for him great fear touched

nâch Gyburg der künginne.
after Gyburg the queen.

er forhte daz ir minne 214,10
he feared that her love

Tybalt solde'rstrîten.
Tybalt should-win-by-fighting.

zeinen sorclîchen zîten
at-a fearful time

der marcrâve mit den sînen
the margrave with the his-ones

kom sô nâhe den Sarrazînen,
came so near the Saracens,

daz er mit sînen ougen sach 214,15
that he with his eyes saw

daz im sîn herze des verjach
that to-him his heart of-that declared

mêr flüste denne er ie verlür.
more of-loss than he ever lost.

und swaz er angest sît erkür,
and whatever he of-fear since chose,

dô er von Vivîanze schiet,
when he from Vivianz parted,

214,20 und des morgens dô sîn manheit riet,
and of-the morning when his manhood counseled,

fümfzehen künege rîch erkant,
fifteen kings rich known,

die entschumphiert sîn eines hant,
whom discomfited his alone hand,

Tenabruns und der Persân,
Tenabruns and the Persian,

swaz im die hêten getân,
whatever to-him they had done,

214,25 und der minnen gerende Thesereiz,
and the love's desiring Thesereiz,

und ander manic puneiz,
and other many-a charge,

dâ wart er werlîch ersehen:
there was he warlike seen:

nu muoz sîn freude dem jâmer jehen
now must his joy to-the misery declare

und dem zwîvel rehter tschumpfentiur.
and to-the doubt right discomfiture.

die nôt gap im bî naht ein fiur.
the distress gave to-him by night a fire.

Gyburc and Terramer

LI

Gyburc tells her father she took baptism for the creator of the elements, the stars, and the planets, and will not forsake Christ and the margrave for Mahmet. Terramer begs her to honor the gods, saying his priests bade him kill her. She answers that the Trinity broke the gates of hell; he doubts that one hanged by his own kin freed Adam, and she replies that the godhead won life for the dying man. She tells how she freed Willalm from Synagun's fetters.

Ez næht nu vreude unde klage 215,1
It nears now joy and lament

und dem helflîchem tage
and to-the helpful day

und der kümfteclîchen zîte,
and to-the coming time,

und daz der sorclîchen bîte
and that to-the anxious waiting

mit freude ein ende wart gegebn, 215,5
with joy an end was given,

dâ Gyburc inne muoste lebn,
where Gyburc in must live,

diu selbe dicke wâpen truoc.
who herself often arms bore.

wie vil ir vater des gewuoc,
how much her father of-it mentioned,

daz er si wolde überkomn!
that he her would overcome!

215,10 si sprach ‘ich hân den touf genomn
she spoke ‘I have the baptism taken

durch den der al die crêatiur
for him who all the creatures

geschuof, daz wazzer und daz fiur,
created, the water and the fire,

dar zuo den luft unt d’erden.
there to the air and the-earth.

der selbe hiez mich werden,
the same bade me become,

215,15 und al daz lebehaftes ist.
and all that living is.

solt ich durch Mahmeten Krist
should I for Mahmet Christ

unt den marcrâven verkiesen,
and the margrave forsake,

unt mînen touf verliesen,
and my baptism lose,

unt manege werdeclîche ger,
and many-a worthy desire,

215,20 die under schilde mit dem sper,
which under shield with the spear,

mit helme verdecket,
with helm covered,

sô dicke hât volrecket
so often has fulfilled

der marcrâve mit heldes tât
the margrave with hero’s deed

und noch vil guoten willen hât
and still much good will has

215,25 ze dienn nâch mîner minne?
to serve after my love?

ich was ein küniginne,
I was a queen,

swie arm ich urbor nu sî.
however poor I of-revenue now be.

ze Arâbîe unt in Arâbî
at Arabie and in Arabi

gekrônt ich vor den fürsten gienc,
crowned I before the princes went,

ê mich ein fürste umbevienc.
before me a prince embraced.

Durch den hân ich mich bewegen 216,1
For him have I me resolved

daz ich wil armüete pflegen,
that I will poverty practice,

und durch den der der hœhste ist.
and for him who the highest is.

wâ fund ouch Tervigant den list
where found also Tervigant the craft

den êrst ervant Altissimus? 216,5
which first devised Altissimus?

der pôlus antarticus
who pole antarctic

unt den andern sternen gab ir louft,
and to-the other stars gave their course,

durch den hân ich mich getouft;
for him have I me baptized;

derz firmamentum an liez
who-the firmament on let-go

unt die siben plânêten hiez 216,10
and the seven planets bade

gein des himels snelheit kriegen.
against the heaven's swiftness war.

sîn wâge kan niht triegen,
his balance can not deceive,

diu al daz werc sô ebene wac,
which all the work so evenly weighed,

daz ez immer stæte heizen mac
that it ever steadfast be-called may

unt immer unzerganclîch.
and ever imperishable.

sint iwer gote dem gelîch,
are your gods to-him alike,

der den luft wol wider væhet
who the air well back holds

unt al sîn dinc sô spæhet,
and all his thing so skillfully-makes,

mit fluzze ursprinc der brunnen,
with flowing source of-the springs,

unt der drî art der sunnen
and who three nature to-the sun

gap, die hitze, und ouch den schîn:
gave, the heat, and also the shine:

si muoz ouch ûf der verte sîn:
it must also on the journey be:

daz nimt und bringet uns daz lieht.
that takes and brings us the light.

swaz mir durch den got geschieht,
whatever to-me for the God happens,

der des alles hât gewalt,
who of-it all has might,

gein dem schaden bin ich palt:
toward the harm am I bold:

der mac michs wol ergetzen
he may me-of-it well compensate

unt des lîbes armuot letzen
and the body's poverty end

mit der sêle rîcheit.
with the soul's wealth.

ir verlieset michel arbeit,
you lose great toil,

du vater und ander mîne mâge, 217,1
thou father and other my kinsmen,

daz ir lîp unt êre en wâge
that you body and honor in balance

lât durh Tybaldes rât,
let for Tybalt's counsel,

der deheine vorderunge hât
who no claim has

von rehte ûf mich ze sprechen. 217,5
by right on me to speak.

waz wiltu, vater, rechen
what wilt-thou, father, avenge

an dîn selbes kinde?
on thy own child?

bî tumpheit ich dich vinde.'
by foolishness I thee find.'

'ach ich vreuden arm man,
'ah I of-joys poor man,

daz ich sölh kint ie gewan,' 217,10
that I such child ever gained,'

sprach Terramêr der rîche,
spoke Terramer the rich,

'daz alsô herzenlîche
'which so heartily

an sîner sælde kan verzagn
in its fortune can despair

unt sich den goten wil entsagn!
and itself from-the gods will renounce!

ey süeziu Gyburc, tuo sô niht. 217,15
ah sweet Gyburc, do so not.

swaz dir ie geschach od noch geschiht
whatever to-thee ever happened or still happens

von mir, daz ist mîn selbes nôt.
from me, that is my own distress.

jâ gieng ich für dich an den tôt.
indeed would-go I for thee into the death.

daz ruoch erkennen Mahumete,
that deign recognize Mahumet,

217,20 daz ich durh Tybaldes bete
that I for Tybalt's request

ungerne ûf dînen schaden fuor,
unwillingly onto thy harm went,

unz michs bî unserr ê beswuor
until me-it by our law adjured

der bâruc unt de êwarten sîn:
the baruc and the priests his:

die gâben mirz für sünde mîn,
they gave to-me-it for sin mine,

217,25 daz ich dich tæte lîbelôs.
that I thee should-make lifeless.

mîn triwe ich doch sô nie verkôs,
my faithfulness I yet so never forsook,

ich hete dich zeime kinde.
I held thee as-a child.

ob ich dich bî sælden vinde,
if I thee by fortune find,

sô êre dîn geslehte
so honor thy lineage

unt tuo den goten rehte.'
and do to-the gods right.'

218,1 'Ey vater hôh unde wert,
'Ah father high and worthy,

daz dîn muot der tumpheit gert,
that thy spirit of-the foolishness desires,

daz du mich scheiden wilt von dem,
that thou me part wilt from him,

der frouwen Even gap die schem
who to-lady Eve gave the shame

daz si alrêrst verdact ir brust, 218,5
that she first-of-all covered her breast,

dâ was gewahsen ein gelust
there was grown a desire

der si brâhte in arbeit,
which her brought into toil,

in des tiuvels gesellekeit,
into the devil's companionship,

der unser immer vâret.
who of-us ever lies-in-wait.

du bist wol sô bejâret, 218,10
thou art well so aged,

daz du der wîssagen zal
that thou the prophets' number

bekennest umb Adâmes val.
knowest about Adam's fall.

Sibille unde Plâtô
Sibyl and Plato

die hôhen schulde uns kündent sô.
the high guilt to-us proclaim so.

Eve al eine schuldic wart, 218,15
Eve all alone guilty became,

dar umb die helleclîchen vart
there for the hellish journey

Adâms geslähte fuor iedoch,
Adam's lineage went yet,

wan Helîas und Enoch.
except Elias and Enoch.

die andern muosen alle queln:
the others must all be-tormented:

218,20 dane kund sich niemen von versteln.
there could himself no-one from steal.

wer was der si lôste dan,
who was he-who them released thence,

unt der die sigenuft gewan
and who the victory gained

daz er die helleporten brach,
that he the hell-gates broke,

unt der Adâmes ungemach
and who Adam's discomfort

218,25 erwant? daz tet diu Trinitât.
turned-away? that did the Trinity.

der sich ein selb dritten hât
who himself a self third has

ebengelîch unt ebenhêr,
even-alike and even-high,

sih, der enstirbet nimmer mêr
see, he dies never more

durch man noch wîbes schulde.
for man's nor woman's guilt.

nu wirb umb sîne hulde.'
now strive for his goodwill.'

219,1 Dô sprach der von Tenabrî
Then spoke he of Tenabri

'den einen möhten doch die drî
'the one might yet the three

vor dem tôde hân bewart.
from the death have guarded.

er jah, ûz israhêlscher art
he declared, out-of Israelite nature

219,5 wær er von einer maget erborn:
were he of a maiden born:

hân ich dich durch den verlorn,
(if)-have I thee for him lost,

den sîn selbes künne hienc
whom his own kin hanged

unt unprîs an im begienc,
and dishonor on him committed,

zuo dem hân ich kleinen trôst
to him have I small comfort

daz unser vater wurde erlôst, 219,10
that our father should-become released,

Adâm, von hellebanden
Adam, from hell-bonds

mit menneschlîchen handen.
with human hands.

diu helle ist sûr unde heiz:
the hell is sour and hot:

manegen kumber ich dâ weiz,
many-a affliction I there know,

daz ist mir von den goten kunt: 219,15
that is to-me from the gods known:

daz mac volsprechen nimmer munt,
that may fully-speak never mouth,

wie trûreclîchen ez dâ stêt.
how mournfully it there stands.

sol Jêsus von Nazarêt
(if)-shall Jesus of Nazareth

die porten hân gebrochen,
the gates have broken,

waz ist an mir gerochen 219,20
what is on me avenged

mit dem ungelouben dîn?
with the unbelief thine?

bekêr dich, liebiu tohter mîn.'
convert thee, dear daughter mine.'

‘ich hœr wol, vater, ez ist dir leit.
‘I hear well, father, it is to-thee grievous.

dô Jêsuses mennischeit
when Jesus’s humanity

der tôt am kriuce müete,
the death on-the cross troubled,

innen des sîn leben blüete
meanwhile that his life blossomed

ûz der gotlîchen sterke.
out-of the divine strength.

lieber vater, nu merke:
dear father, now mark:

innen des diu mennischeit erstarp,
meanwhile that the humanity died,

diu gotheit ir daz lebn erwarp.
the godhead for-it the life won.

Möhten hôher sîn nu dîne gote,
Might higher be now thy gods,

sô wolt ich doch ze sîme gebote
so would I yet at his command

unz an den tôt belîben,
until to the death remain,

der ie werden wîben
who ever to-worthy women

vor ûz ir rehts alsô verjach,
before out of-their right so declared,

daz man in dienestlîchen sach
that one him service-like saw

under schiltlîchem dache
under shield-like roof

bî sölhem ungemache
by such discomfort

dâ man den lîp durch wirde zert
where one the body for dignity consumes
unt dem laster von dem prîse wert. 220,10
and to-the reproach from the prize defends.
mir saget ouch selbe Tybalt
to-me told also himself Tybalt
daz der marcrâve mangen walt
that the margrave many-a forest
zer tjost vertæte mit den spern.
at-the joust spent with the spears.
der begund ouch mîner minne gern,
he began also of-my love to-desire,
dô in der künic Synagûn, 220,15
when him the king Synagun,
Halzebieres swester sun,
Halzebier's sister's son,
in eime sturme gevienc,
in a battle captured,
dâ sîn hant alsölhe tât begienc
where his hand such deed performed
daz er den prîs ze bêder sît
that he the prize on both sides
behielt aldâ und alle zît. 220,20
held there and all time.
diu hôhe wirde sîne
the high dignity his
über al die Sarrazîne
over all the Saracens
was erschollen unt erhôrt.
was resounded and heard.
dô was ich küneginne dort
then was I queen there
und pflac vil grôzer rîcheit: 220,25
and practiced very great wealth:

sus lônde ich sîner arbeit:
thus rewarded I his toil:

von boin und anderem sîm versmidn
from fetters and other his chaining

macht ich in ledec an allen lidn,
made I him free in all limbs,

unt fuor in toufpæriu lant.
and went into baptism-worthy lands.

ich diente im und der hœsten hant.
I served him and the highest hand.

The Heathens Withdraw

LII

Gyburc asks her father to give Todjerne, her inheritance, to Tybalt and Ehmereiz but let her keep her faith; Tybalt threatens Arabel with the gallows, and Ehmereiz restrains him. Terramer's pleas and threats fail, and the weary besiegers ask to withdraw to the harbor for food. Terramer agrees, but first they storm the city by night, and every baptized soul in the outer town dies by fire. Gyburc's small host holds inner Orange, the heathens turn toward Alischanz, and the margrave, among his host, sees sky and sea aflame.

221,1 Mîns toufes schôn ich gerne.
My baptism spare I gladly.

Tybald ich Todjerne
to-Tybalt I Todjerne

lâz, dâ du mich krôntes.
leave, where thou me crownedst.

dannoch du, vater, schôntes
then thou, father, sparedst

221,5 dîner triwe, dô daz selbe lant
thy faithfulness, when that same land

ze heimstiwer mir gap dîn hant.
as dowry to-me gave thy hand.

wilt du Tybalde volgen,
(if)-wilt thou Tybalt follow,

du muost mir sîn erbolgen.
thou must to-me be angered.

nâch sîm erbeteile
after his inheritance

er füert dîn êre veile. 221,10
he carries thy honor for-sale.

er giht ouch ûf Sybilje:
he lays-claim also to Seville:

daz liez im Marsilje
that left him Marsilje

sîn œheim, den Ruolant ersluoc.
his uncle, whom Roland slew.

hie dishalp mers er sagt genuoc
here on-this-side of-the-sea he says enough

daz er für erbeschaft sül hân: 221,15
that he for inheritance shall have:

sît dîn veter Baligân
since thy uncle Baligan

den lîp verlôs von Karle,
the life lost by Charles,

halp Provenz unt Arle,
half Provence and Arles,

er giht daz sül er erben.
he declares that shall he inherit.

wiltu durh lüge verderben 221,20
(if)-wilt-thou for lie ruin

dîn triuwe an dîn selbes fruht,
thy faithfulness to thy own fruit,

ouwê waz touc dîn altiu zuht?
alas what avails thy old courtesy?

du verwurkest an mir al dîn heil.
thou forfeitest on me all thy salvation.

mahtu Todjern, mîn erbeteil,
mayst-thou Todjerne, my inheritance,

221,25 Tybalde und Ehmereize gebn,
to-Tybalt and to-Ehmereiz give,

und lâz mich mit armuot lebn.'
and let me with poverty live.'

diz gespræche ergienc in eime fride.
this speech went-forth in a truce.

der künec Tybalt hin zer wide
the king Tybalt away to-the gallows-withe

Arabelen dicke dreute:
to-Arabel often threatened:

Ehmereiz in drumbe steute.
Ehmereiz him for-it checked.

222,1 Terramêr der warp alsô,
Terramer he strove so,

hiute vlêhen, morgen drô,
today pleading, tomorrow threat,

gein sîner lieben tohter.
toward his dear daughter.

mit deheinen dingen mohter
with no things could-he

222,5 si des überlisten,
her of-that outwit,

sine wolte Oransche fristen,
unless-she would Orange preserve,

und ir lîp unde ir kranken diet,
and her body and her weak people,

unz an in der von ir schiet
until to him who from her parted

nâch helfe an den rœmschen vogt.
after help to the Roman lord.

mit arbeit hete siz für gezogt
with toil had she-it forth drawn

unz dês daz her durh nôt verdrôz.
until that-of-it the host for distress wearied.

der smac von tôten was dâ grôz,
the stench from dead was there great,

unt sus von manegen âsen.
and thus from many carcasses.

nu het ouch vil der mâsen
now had also many of-the scars

diu veste Oransche enphangen
the firm Orange received

mit würfen von den mangen
with throws from the mangonels

und von den drîbocken.
and from the trebuchets.

sine spilten niht der tocken:
they played not of-the dolls:

ez galt ze bêder sît daz lebn.
it cost on both sides the life.

die wîsen, sheres râtgebn,
the wise-ones, the-host's counselors,

rieten Terremêre
counseled Terramer

eine wîl die dankêre,
a while the thence-turning,

sît wære verwüestet al daz lant
since were laid-waste all the land

unt ninder werlîchiu hant
and nowhere warlike hand

dâ wær wan in der einen stat.
there were except in the one town.

daz her in al gemeine bat,
the host him all in-common bade,

er solte kêren gein der habe:
he should turn toward the harbor:

sô si genæmen spîse drabe
when they should-take food there-off

unt si der luft erwæte,
and them the air should-air,

ob er sis danne bæte,
if he them-of-it then should-bid,

223,1 si herbergeten der wider für,
they should-lodge there back before,

und tætenz mit gemeiner kür.
and should-do-it with common choice.

Daz erloubte in der von Tenabrî,
That permitted to-them he of Tenabri

und jah, er wolt dâ wesen bî
and declared, he would there be by

223,5 daz ê ein sturm geschæhe,
that first a storm should-happen,

sô man die naht ersæhe.
when one the night should-see.

des âbnts, dô man die sterne ersach,
of-the evening, when one the stars saw,

dô huop sich Gyburge ungemach.
then raised itself Gyburc's discomfort.

beidiu der unt dierre,
both that-one and this-one,

223,10 slingære unt patelierre,
slingers and pelters,

sarjande und schützen,
sergeants and archers,

der stete die unnützen,
of-the town the useless-ones,

unt über al diu rîterschaft,
and over all the knighthood,

die erhuoben mit gemeiner kraft
they raised with common strength

einen sturm bî der naht. 223,15
a storm by the night.

des wart Glorjet in angest brâht,
by-that was Gloriet into fear brought,

ze Oransche der liehte palas.
at Orange the bright palace.

vor fiwer man noch wîp genas
from fire man nor woman survived

der getouften in der ûzern stat.
of-the baptized in the outer town.

Gyburc ir kleinez her dô bat 223,20
Gyburc her small host then bade

d'inren Oransche behalten.
the-inner Orange hold.

die jungen mit den alten
the young with the old

kêrten dan gein Alischanz,
turned thence toward Alischanz,

dâ Mîle unde Vivîanz
where Mile and Vivianz

ûf wârn gelegen tôt. 223,25
on were lain dead.

nu ersach die herzebæren nôt
now saw the heart-felt distress

der marcrâve under sîme her,
the margrave among his host,

daz der himel unt daz mer
that the heaven and the sea

beidiu wâren fiuric var.
both were fiery colored.

si pruoften unde nâmen war,
they examined and took heed,

224,1 genuoge denz niht was bekant,
many to-whom-it not was known,

gein welhem orte in daz lant
toward which place in the land

daz starke fiwer möhte sîn,
the strong fire might be,

op tâ lægn die Sarrazîn.
whether there should-lie the Saracens.

The Relief of Orange

LIII

The margrave tells the French he needs no cowards, laments that his father and brothers are absent, and rides ahead with Rennewart on foot. Through the smoke of the burning camp he sees his palace still standing. Terramer and Fabors have lifted the siege and turned toward the harbor. Gyburc, thinking they are returning, arms and stands at the battlements with her sword, her chaplain Steven, and her armored ladies. He greets them from the gate, but they still mean to fight.

224,5 Der marcrâf saget in rehte dô
The margrave told them rightly then

'mir ist mîn dinc nu komen alsô,
'to-me is my thing now come so,

daz ich bedarf decheines zagen:
that I need no coward:

ich muoz mit helden prîs bejagen.
I must with heroes prize win.

nu, Franzoys, tuot ellen schîn.
now, Frenchmen, make valor seen.

224,10 ey vater unt die bruoder mîn,
ah father and the brothers mine,

daz ir hie bî mir niene sît,
that you here by me not-at-all are,

unt daz ich âne iuch disen strît
and that I without you this battle

noch hiute muoz versuochen!
still today must try!

wil mîner manheit ruochen
(if)-will of-my manhood care

der durch uns an dem kriuce was 224,15
he-who for us on the cross was

unt der al sterbende genas,
and who all dying survived,

swar Gyburc vert, dar kêr ouch ich.
whither Gyburc goes, thither turn also I.

diu wolde halten unz an mich
she would hold until to me

Oransche, und ist nu drab genomn.
Orange, and is now there-off taken.

ich möht ir lîht enzît sîn komn. 224,20
I might to-her perhaps in-time be come.

die fürsten sîn des hie gemant,
the princes be of-that here reminded,

wie der rœmsche künec iuch hât gesant
how the Roman king you has sent

ze werne rœmisch êre.
to defend Roman honor.

nu ensûmet iuch niht mêre,
now tarry you not more,

wâpent ors unde lîp, 224,25
arm horse and body,

helfet des daz mir mîn wîp
help of-that that to-me my woman

diu clâre Gyburc hie bestê.
the bright Gyburc here remain.

ich wil vor iu komen ê
I will before you come first

zen vînden, schouwen ir gelâz.
to-the enemies, behold their bearing.

ir endurfet iuch niht scharen baz,
you need yourselves not rank better,

225,1 wan ie de storje, dise unt die.
except ever the troop, these and those.

wir sulen dort unde hie
we shall there and here

mit eime buhurt an si komn.
with a buhurt on them come.

si habnt mit schaden wol vernomn
they have with harm well heard

225,5 daz wir baz kunn mit rîterschaft:
that we better can with knighthood:

waz danne op grœzer ist ir kraft?
what then if greater is their strength?

sô sul ab wir mit sælden sîn.'
so shall however we with fortune be.'

balde wart im Volatîn
quickly was to-him Volatin

gezogn. er huop sich an die vart,
drawn. he raised himself onto the journey,

225,10 mit im sîn vriwent Rennewart
with him his friend Rennewart

unt swer an sîme ringe lac.
and whoever in his ring lay.

innen des gienc ûf der tac.
meanwhile that went up the day.

dâ wart vil busîne erschalt,
there was many trumpets sounded,

und tambûren ungezalt.
and drums uncounted.

Franzoyser die werden
Frenchmen the worthy

wolten rœmscher erden
would of-Roman earth

an der heidenschaft den prîs bezaln.
on the heathendom the prize pay.

hie an bergen, dort an taln
here on mountains, there in valleys

sah man rotte brechen für,
saw one troops break forth,

die banier in der mâze kür
the banners in the measure's choice

als al die stûden sîdîn
as-if all the bushes silken

wærn. dannoch die helme schîn
were. still the helms shine

gâben unverdecket.
gave uncovered.

dâ wart hin nâch getrecket
there was away after marched

mit maneger sunderstorje grôz.
with many-a separate-troop great.

die fürsten sunder niht verdrôz,
to-the princes separately not irked,

sine manten ellens vast ir man.
unless-they reminded of-valor firmly their men.

dô gâhten für ein ander dan
then hastened before one another thence

die man dâ wert erkande,
those-whom one there worthy knew,

rîter, sarjande.
knights, sergeants.

Der marcgrâve gâhte
The margrave hastened

ze vorderst, unz er nâhte
at-the foremost, until he neared

dem fiwer daz im herzenleit
the fire which to-him heart's-sorrow

gap. al sîn heilikeit
gave. all his holiness

möht im siuften hân erworben:
might him sighing have won:

er wær vor leide erstorben
he would-be from sorrow died

des morgens, wan sîn manlîch art.
of-the morning, except his manly nature.

durh den rouch er innen wart
through the smoke he aware became

daz dannoch stuont sîn palas,
that still stood his palace,

dâ von geflôrieret was
there from flowered was

Oransche und al diu marke.
Orange and all the march.

Rennewart der starke
Rennewart the strong

het im ze fuoz gevolget dan:
had him on foot followed thence:

über al sîn her kein ander man
over all his host no other man

fuor im dâ sô nâhe bî.
went to-him there so near by.

Terramêr von Tenabrî
Terramer of Tenabri

unt Fâbors von Meckâ
and Fabors of Mecca

daz gesez gerûmet hêten dâ,
the siege cleared had there,

unt al die künge unt de eskelîr
and all the kings and the eskeliers

wârn mit dem von Muntespîr 226,20
were with him of Muntespir

dan gekêret gein der habe:
thence turned toward the harbor:

duo kurn si durch den rouch her abe
then perceived they through the smoke hither down

daz kom des marcgrâven her.
that came the margrave's host.

die heiden wâren gein dem mer.
the heathens were toward the sea.

dô wânde de unverzagete 226,25
then thought the undaunted

Gyburc, dô manz ir sagete,
Gyburc, when one-it to-her told,

si wolten wider kêren
they would back turn

unt aber ir schaden mêren.
and again her harm increase.

harnasch muost widr an ir lîp.
armor must back on her body.

manlîch, ninder als ein wîp
manly, nowhere as a woman

diu künegîn gebârte. 227,1
the queen behaved.

der ir schaden wênic vârte,
who her harm little sought,

der marcrâve ûf Volatîn
the margrave on Volatin

kom, unt der geselle sîn
came, and the companion his

227,5 Rennewart mit im ze fuoz.
Rennewart with him on foot.

durh mangen rouch er kêren muoz,
through many-a smoke he turn must,

dâ die herberge wârn an gezunt.
where the lodgings were on kindled.

Rennewart sah dâ ze stunt
Rennewart saw there at-the hour

vil ebenhœhe und mangen.
many siege-towers and mangonels.

227,10 mit sîner grôzen stangen
with his great pole

wær er gerne nâch der heiden her.
would-be he gladly after the heathens' host.

nu stuont vrou Gyburc ze wer
now stood lady Gyburc for defense

mit ûf geworfeme swerte
with up thrown sword

als op si strîtes gerte,
as if she battle should-desire,

227,15 unt bî ir Steven ir kapelân,
and by her Steven her chaplain,

unt ir juncfrouwen sô getân
and her young-ladies so made

daz si wâren harnaschvar.
that they were armor-colored.

daz inre volc gemeine gar
the inner people in-common wholly

gâhten an die zinnen.
hastened to the battlements.

der marcrâve wart innen 227,20
the margrave became aware

daz eteswer drinne lebete.
that someone therein lived.

gein der port er strebete:
toward the gate he strove:

dâ wart von sînem munde
there was from his mouth

der heile unt der wunde
the whole and the wounded

minneclîch gegrüezet. 227,25
lovingly greeted.

dannoch was ungebüezet
still was unamended

vil angest der si phlâgen.
much fear which they bore.

si wolten aber wâgen
they would again venture

ir lîp werlîch unz an den man
their body warlike until to the man

der güetlîch die stat gewan.
who kindly the town won.

Der selbe hielt ouch vor in dâ. 228,1
The same held also before them there.

het er gehalden anderswâ,
had he held elsewhere,

daz wær in allen liep gewesen,
that would-have to-them all dear been,

die noch drinne wârn genesen.
who still therein were survived.

Willalm Returns

LIV

From the gate the margrave asks if the queen lives. Seeing his tabard and Volatin, Gyburc challenges him in the heathen tongue until his voice tells them their lord has come. She faints for joy, then unlocks the gate, whose keys she alone keeps. She had defended Orange with crossbows and great throws, propping her armored dead at the battlements to frighten the besiegers. He tells her the Roman king gave him Rennewart, promises the defenders rewards, and is led to a chamber.

er rief hin an die zinne
he called away to the battlement

'lebt noch diu küneginne?'
'lives still the queen?'

und vrâgte wiez dâ stüende.
and asked how-it there should-stand.

sine heten deheine küende
they had no knowledge

daz des landes hêrre zuo in sprach.
that the land's lord to them spoke.

diu künegîn Gyburc dô ersach
the queen Gyburc then saw

den wâpenroc unt Volatîn:
the tabard and Volatin:

her ab sprach diu künegîn
hither down spoke the queen

heidensch 'hêrre, wer sît ir,
heathen 'lord, who are you,

daz ir sus nâhe haldet mir,
that you thus near halt to-me,

unt daz âne vride tuot?
and that without peace do?

ir habt alze hôhen muot:
you have all-too high spirit:

ir mugets wol schaden enphâhen.
you may-of-it well harm receive.

ich wil iu fürbaz nâhen
I will to-you further near

unt kündeclîcher werden kurc.'
and more-knowingly become manifest.'

'ey wa ist diu clâre Gyburc? 228,20
'ah where is the bright Gyburc?

saget mir, ist diu noch gesunt?'
tell me, is she still healthy?'

von sîner stimme wart in kunt
from his voice became to-them known

daz der rehte wirt was komn.
that the right host was come.

von sîner kunft was in benomn
by his coming was from-them taken

vil angest der si phlâgen ê. 228,25
much fear which they bore before.

nu wart durch liebe alsô wê
now became for love so woe

Gyburge, diu durch vreud erschrac,
to-Gyburc, who for joy was-frightened,

daz si unversunnen vor in lac.
that she senseless before them lay.

wan ir kom genendeclîche
for to-her came boldly

vil helfe ûz Francrîche,
much help out-of France,

de besten rîter die man vant 229,1
the best knights whom one found

in der rehten rîterschefte lant.
in the right knighthood's land.

Gyburc noch unversunnen lac.
Gyburc still senseless lay.

den marcrâven erlangen mac,
the margrave grow-long may,

229,5 daz niemen im die port ûf tuot.
that no-one to-him the gate up does.

diu was mit slôze alsô behuot,
it was with lock so guarded,

ob iemen wolde wenken
if anyone would waver

dort inne unt überdenken
there within and over-think

sîne triwe durch miete,
his faithfulness for payment,

229,10 swelch vînt daz geriete,
whichever enemy that should-counsel,

dazz im vrumte niht ein hâr.
that-it him profited not a hair.

Gyburc für den selben vâr
Gyburc against the same danger

der bürge slüzzel selbe truoc:
the castle's keys herself bore:

die wâren spæhe alsô genuoc.
they were cunning so enough.

229,15 den list noch lützel iemen kan.
the craft still little anyone knows.

bî einer wîl si sich versan
after a while she herself came-to

und gâhte hin gein der porte,
and hastened away toward the gate,

dâ si ir besten vriunt hôrte.
where she her best friend heard.

mit vreuden wart er lâzen în.
with joy was he let in.

sine het ouch niht sô liehten schîn, 229,20
she had also not so bright appearance,

als dô er von ir schiet,
as when he from her parted,

als im ir süezer munt geriet,
as to-him her sweet mouth turned-out,

der dâ vil geküsset wart.
which there much kissed was.

ouwê daz ein sô rûher bart
alas that a so rough beard

sich immer solt erbieten dar! 229,25
itself ever should offer there!

doch was si selbe harnaschvar,
yet was she herself armor-colored,

daz diu maget Carpîte
that the maiden Carpite

vor Laurent in dem strîte
before Laurentum in the battle

noch Camille von Volcân,
nor Camilla of Volcan,

ir newederiu hetez sô guot getân.
of-them neither had-it so well done.

Gyburc streit doch ze orse niht: 230,1
Gyburc fought yet on horse not:

diz mære ir anders ellen giht,
this tale to-her otherwise valor declares,

daz si mit armbrusten schôz
that she with crossbows shot

und si grôzer würfe niht verdrôz
and her of-great throws not wearied

unt ir wer mit liste erscheinde. 230,5
and her defense with cunning showed.

ir tôtez volc si leinde
her dead people she leaned

gewâpent an die zinnen,
armed at the battlements,

und ruortez sô mit sinnen,
and moved-it so with wits,

daz ez die ûzeren vorhten,
that it the outer-ones feared,

die de antwerc gein ir worhten.
who the engines against her wrought.

arbeit het si verselwet nâch.
toil had her darkened nearly.

an Rennewarten si dô sach.
at Rennewart she then looked.

dô der die grôzen stangen,
when he the great pole,

die starken unt die langen,
the strong and the long,

sô dicke warf von hant ze hant,
so often threw from hand to hand,

si sprach ‘wer ist der sarjant?
she spoke ‘who is the sergeant?

sul wir iht angest gein im hân?
shall we any fear toward him have?

er ist sô wiltlîch getân.’
he is so wildly made.’

der marcgrâve sprach hinz ir
the margrave spoke toward her

‘disen knappen den gap mir
‘this squire him gave me

der rœmsche künec, unt helfe grôz.
the Roman king, and help great.

vil manec fürste mîn genôz
very many-a prince my peer

gâhent dâ vaste zuo zuns her
hasten there firmly to to-us hither

mit alsô helfeclîcher ger,
with so helpful desire,

hânts die vînde hie gebitn, 230,25
(if)-have-it the enemies here awaited,

von Franzoysen wirt gestritn
by Frenchmen becomes fought

dazz d'engel möhten hœren
that-it the-angels might hear

in den niun kœren
in the nine choirs

und dazz mîn mâge rechen sol.
and that-it my kinsmen avenge shall.

wær tal unt berc der heiden vol,
were valley and mountain of-the heathens full,

die müesen strît enphâhen.' 231,1
they must battle receive.'

die künegîn druct er nâhen
the queen pressed he near

an sîne brust und klagt ir nôt.
to his breast and lamented her distress.

den andern erz mit rede erbôt,
to-the others he-it with speech offered,

die bî ir drinne wârn genesen. 231,5
who by her therein were survived.

er sprach, die müesen immer wesen
he spoke, they must ever be

teilnünftic swes er möhte hân,
sharing of-whatever he might have,

ez wære wîp oder man,
it were woman or man,

juncfrouwe oder ander maget,
young-lady or other maiden,

231,10 ‘diu mir her nâch die nôt klaget,
‘who to-me here after the distress laments,

als ir durh mich habt gedolt
as you for me have suffered

unt iwer dienst an mir reholt,
and your service on me earned,

beidiu mîn guot unt mîn lîp.
both my goods and my body.

ir habt ernert mir ditze wîp
you have saved for-me this woman

231,15 und [Oransche] dise burc behalten.
and [Orange] this castle held.

muoz ich der marke walten,
(if)-may I of-the march have-power,

ich rîch iuch immer unz ich lebe,
I enrich you ever until I live,

sô mit lêhen, sô mit gebe.’
so with fief, so with gift.’

Gyburc diu triwen rîche
Gyburc the of-faithfulness rich

231,20 stuont dennoch werlîche,
stood still warlike,

si unt ir juncfrouwen.
she and her young-ladies.

der wirt wol mohte schouwen
the host well could behold

harnasch daz er an in vant.
armor which he on them found.

da der lendenierstric erwant,
where the loin-strap ended,

231,25 etlîchiu het ein semftenier,
some had a cushion,

der noch ein sölhez gæbe mier,
who still a such-one should-give to-me,

daz næm ich für ein vederspil.
that would-take I for a falcon.

nu was dâ gestanden vil.
now was there stood much.

Diu künegîn des niht vergaz,
The queen of-that not forgot,

des landes hêrren fürbaz
the land's lord further

si fuort zeinr kemenâten în, 232,1
she led into-a chamber in,

und hiez behalten Volatîn.
and bade keep Volatin.

The French Arrive

LV

Rennewart stables Volatin, branded with a seal of Samargone that Arofel's shield bore. Gyburc unarms, says his coming has driven her father to the harbor, and warns the margrave to post watchmen against ambush. He bids the princes camp on a meadow, and the French pitch their tents where the heathens lay. When he regrets his food is burned, Gyburc says her father's whole knighthood could not eat her stores in weeks. Seeing dust, she fears Tybalt; he names Buove of Kumarzi.

bî dem orse Rennewart beleip:
by the horse Rennewart remained:

ungerne in iemen dannen treip,
unwillingly him anyone thence drove,

unz erz gestalte schône. 232,5
until he-it stabled fairly.

dâ von Samargône
there from Samargone

ein insigel was gebrant
a seal was burned

ans orses buoc, daz er dâ vant,
on-the horse's shoulder, which he there found,

dar nâch was Arofelles schilt.
there after was Arofel's shield.

232,10 den knappen hete gar bevilt,
the squire had wholly wearied,

und het er sich versunnen
and had he himself bethought

wie daz ors wart gewunnen.
how that horse was won.

do entwâpent sich diu künegîn.
then unarmed herself the queen.

der marcrâve wolt dennoch sîn
the margrave would still be

232,15 in sîme harnasch belibn.
in his armor remain.

si sprach 'dîn kumft hât vertribn
she spoke 'thy coming has driven

mînen vater gein der habe.
my father toward the harbor.

du solt daz harnasch ziehen abe,
thou shalt the armor draw off,

und lâz dich niht betrâgen,
and let thee not weary,

232,20 enbiut dînen mâgen
send-word to-thy kinsmen

unt den die dir ze helfe komn,
and to-those who to-thee as help come,

hie haben urloup genomn
here have leave taken

die heiden eine wîle,
the heathens a while,

ich enweiz wie manege mîle.
I know-not how many miles.

mîm garzûn was ir reise kunt: 232,25
to-my groom was their journey known:

der volgt in unz an Pitît punt:
he followed them until to Pitit Punt:

der giht, si gâhen vaste hin.
he says, they hasten firmly away.

mit flust ich innen worden bin
with loss I aware become am

ir kumft unt ir letze.
of-their coming and their departure.

daz michs noch got ergetze!
that me-it still God compensate!

Er tuot ouch, sît diu triwe dîn 233,1
He does also, since the faithfulness thine

unt dîn manlîch ellen ist sô schîn,
and thy manly valor is so seen,

daz du mich hie erlœset hâst.
that thou me here released hast.

nu sih daz du des niht enlâst,
now see that thou of-that not leavest,

dune schaffest dînen wartman. 233,5
unless-thou provide thy watchman.

mîn vater manege liste kan:
my father many cunnings knows:

nu hüete daz sîn hâlschar
now guard that his ambush

dîn her mit schaden iht ervar.'
thy host with harm not come-upon.'

der marcgrâve sprach hinz ir
the margrave spoke toward her

233,10 ‘mahtu gewinnen boten mir?
‘mayst-thou gain messenger for-me?

die sol den Franzoysen sagen,
he shall to-the Frenchmen say,

daz si niht ze sêre klagen,
that they not too sorely lament,

daz uns die heiden sint entritn.
that from-us the heathens are ridden-away.

er sol die fürsten sunder bitn,
he shall the princes separately bid,

233,15 beidiu jene unde dise,
both those and these,

daz si sich legen an eine wise:
that they themselves lay on a meadow:

dâ kum ich selbe schiere zin.’
there come I myself soon to-them.’

ein bote balde fuor dâ hin,
a messenger quickly went there away,

unt nâch den vînden warte:
and after the enemies watched:

233,20 si gâhten beide harte.
they hastened both hard.

do entwâpent sich der markîs,
then unarmed himself the marquis,

unt nam ouch war wie durch ir prîs
and took also heed how for their prize

die Franzoyser gâhten zuo
the Frenchmen hastened to

(dannoch was ez harte fruo)
(still was it very early)

233,25 mit manger storje sunder.
with many-a troop separately.

die werden nam des wunder,
the worthy-ones took of-that wonder,

war die vînde wæren komn:
whither the enemies were come:

schiere heten si vernomn
soon had they heard

von dem boten der in was gesant,
from the messenger who to-them was sent,

daz ir decheiner strît dâ vant.
that of-them none battle there found.

Franzoyser loschierten. 234,1
Frenchmen quartered.

die fürsten sunder zierten
the princes separately adorned

ir ringe als ez in tohte:
their rings as it to-them befitted:

ir deheiner doch enmohte
of-them none yet could

glîchen der heiden ringe wît. 234,5
equal the heathens' rings wide.

mit manegem tiwerem samît
with many-a costly samite

daz velt was ê bevangen,
the field was before covered,

ûf der heiden zeltstangen:
on the heathens' tent-poles:

die von Francrîche
those of France

ouch nu lâgen rîterlîche: 234,10
also now lay knightly:

ir gezelt wârn gesniten
their tents were cut

wol nâch kostebæren siten.
well after costly manners.

der marcrâve zer künegin
the margrave to-the queen

sprach ‘vrowe, daz wære uns ein gewin
spoke ‘lady, that would-be to-us a gain

an willekeit der liute,
in good-will of-the people,

op wir si möhten hiute
if we them might today

ze wirtschefte gesetzen
to hospitality set

und ir arbeit ergetzen
and their toil compensate

hinne ûf mînem palas.
in-here on my palace.

etswenne ich sô berâten was:
sometime I so provided was:

nu ist liute und spîse mir verbrant,
now is people and food to-me burned,

daz ich der wênic hinne vant.’
that I of-them little in-here found.’

diu künegîn sprach ‘wir hân genuoc,
the queen spoke ‘we have enough,

(mir ist liep daz es dîn munt gewuoc)
(to-me is dear that it thy mouth mentioned)

von trinkn und spîse alsölhe kraft:
of drink and food such strength:

al mînes vater rîterschaft,
all my father’s knighthood,

op wirz in niht wolden wern,
if we-it to-them not would deny,

sine möhtens wochen lanc verzern.’
they-not might-it weeks long consume.’

Si schuof derzuo dies kunden phlegn.
She provided thereto those-who-it could take-care.

in den venstern wart gelegn
in the windows was lain

von im und von der vrouwen.
by him and by the lady.

si wolten vriunt schouwen:
they would friends behold:

man kôs dâ wol und muos in jehen,
one saw there well and must to-them declare,

si heten vînde vil gesehen.
they had enemies many seen.

Franzoyser die quecken
Frenchmen the lively

mit der heiden barnstecken
with the heathens' burnt-stakes

niwiu gezimber worhten.
new buildings wrought.

dennoch wârn die unervorhten
still were the unafraid-ones

niht komen, dies marcrâven leit
not come, who-the margrave's sorrow

sô truogen mit gesellekeit
so bore with companionship

daz si nâmen glîche phlihte
that they took equal share

der flüstebærn geschihte
of-the losing event

diu ûf Alischanz geschach.
which on Alischanz happened.

diu künegîn Gyburc gesach
the queen Gyburc saw

mangen ungefüegen stoup,
many-a monstrous dust,

daz der wint melm unde loup
that the wind dust and leaves

ûf al gelîche fuorte,
up all alike carried,

dâ manic storje ruorte
where many-a troop touched

d'ors mit sporen durh gâhen zuo.
the-horses with spurs through hastening to.

235,20 si sprach 'ôwê waz tuo wir nuo?
she spoke 'alas what do we now?

sich, hêrre, dort kumt Tybalt.
see, lord, there comes Tybalt.

daz velt und der kurze walt
the field and the short forest

dunket se al gelîche sleht.'
seems them all alike level.'

der wirt sprach 'daz ist ir reht:
the host spoke 'that is their right:

235,25 si wænnt wir sîn den vînden bî.
they think we are to-the enemies by.

dâ kumt Buov von Kumarzî
there comes Buove of Kumarzi

von sîme lande her gevaren.
from his land hither faring.

got mag uns wol vor den bewaren:
God may us well from them guard:

der selb und al die sîne
the same and all the his-ones

ouch klagent die mâge mîne.'
also lament the kinsmen mine.'

The Kinsmen Arrive

LVI

Buove's men camp beside those who came first. Gyburc, fearing an ambush by Akarin of Marroch, asks who comes next, and the margrave names his brother Bernart of Brubant, whose son Bertram bore his banner when Vivianz fell. The poet jokes that a clumsy Champenois speaks better French than he. Heimrich of Narbonne arrives, then his sons Bertram and Gybert, and Arnalt of Gerunde by a third road. Gyburc rejoices as each captain is named, and the hosts watch through the night.

Franzoyser tâten nâch ir siten. 236,1
Frenchmen did after their manners.

eteslîche banken wârn geriten
some to-disport were ridden

durh kurzwîl mit vederspil:
for pastime with falcons:

sô gâhten derhalb knappen vil
so hastened on-that-side squires many

ûz dem her durch den woldan. 236,5
out-of the host through the flock.

nu wârn ouch Buoven wartman
now were also Buove's watchmen

komen und funden vriunde dâ:
come and found friends there:

die vînde wâren anderswâ.
the enemies were elsewhere.

die kumenden zuo den êrsten dô
the coming-ones to the first-ones then

sich leiten: des was Gyburc vrô. 236,10
themselves laid: of-that was Gyburc glad.

unlange daz dô werte,
not-long that then lasted,

unz si von manegem swerte
until she from many-a sword

und von den schilden blicke
and from the shields gleams

durh grôzen stoup sah dicke.
through great dust saw often.

236,15 si sprach ‘wer sint die komenden dort?
she spoke ‘who are the coming-ones there?

du hôrts wol hiute mîniu wort:
thou heardst-it well today my words:

für die hâlscharlîchen tât
against the ambush-like deed

soltu merken mînen rât.
shalt-thou mark my counsel.

der künec von Marroch Akarîn
the king of Marroch Akarin

236,20 getar wol bî den vînden sîn,
dares well by the enemies be,

und ander mînes vater her:
and other my father’s host:

dâ gegen schaffe dîne wer.’
there against provide thy defense.’

der marcrâve ir dô sagete
the margrave to-her then said

‘dâ kumet der unverzagete,
‘there comes the undaunted-one,

236,25 mîn bruoder Bernart von Brubant,
my brother Bernart of Brubant,

des sun ich dicke bî mir vant,
whose son I often by me found,

Berhtramen, der mînen vanen truoc
Berhtram, who my banner bore

dâ man mir Vivîanzen sluoc.
where one for-me Vivianz slew.

der wil hie rechen nu sîn kint,
he will here avenge now his child,

unt al die mit im komende sint.'
and all who with him coming are.'

die selben abr dô phlâgen 237,1
the same however then took-care

daz si zuo den êrsten lâgen.
that they to the first-ones lay.

Herbergen ist loschiern genant.
Lodging is quartering named.

sô vil hân ich der sprâche erkant.
so much have I of-the language known.

ein ungefüeger Tschampâneys 237,5
a clumsy Champenois

kunde vil baz franzeys
could much better French

dann ich, swiech franzoys spreche.
than I, however-I French speak.

seht waz ich an den reche,
see what I on them avenge,

den ich diz mære diuten sol:
to-whom I this tale interpret shall:

den zæme ein tiutschiu sprâche wol: 237,10
to-them would-befit a German speech well:

mîn tiutsch ist etswâ doch sô krump,
my German is somewhere yet so crooked,

er mac mir lîhte sîn ze tump,
he may to-me perhaps be too foolish,

den ichs niht gâhs bescheide:
to-whom I-it not quickly explain:

dâ sûme wir uns beide.
there delay we ourselves both.

237,15 Willehalmes her sich breite.
Willehalm's host itself spread.

gewâpent dar zuo leite
armed there to laid

mange storje strîteclîche
many-a troop battle-like

Heimrîch der rîche,
Heimrich the rich,

von Narbôn der alte,
of Narbonne the old,

237,20 der ie sîn dinc sô stalte
who ever his thing so arranged

daz sîn habe was gemeine.
that his goods was common.

er kom ouch dâ niht eine.
he came also there not alone.

sich muosen stûden neigen,
themselves must bushes bow,

dô der begunde zeigen
when he began to-show

237,25 wie rehte strîteclîch er reit
how right battle-like he rode

mit verdrungener schare breit.
with crowded company broad.

er wolde selb ervinden
he would himself find-out

ob under sînen kinden
whether among his children

deheinz bekumbert wære.
any afflicted were.

dô kômen im diu mære,
then came to-him the tidings,

daz die Sarrazîne 238,1
that the Saracens

Oransche grôzer pîne
Orange of-great pain

ledic heten lâzen,
free had let,

daz die wærn ir strâzen.
that they were their roads.

Gyburc sah ir sweher komn. 238,5
Gyburc saw her father-in-law come.

si sprach 'hâstu war genomn,
she spoke 'hast-thou heed taken,

wer ab jene kumende sîn?'
who but those coming-ones be?'

er sprach 'daz ist der vater mîn,
he spoke 'that is the father mine,

unt ist genendic al sîn diet,
and is bold all his people,

als er in selb ie dicke riet.' 238,10
as he them himself ever often counseled.'

Heimrîches marschalc kom gevarn,
Heimrich's marshal came faring,

zuo den vor komenden scharn
to the before coming companies

leit er sîne hêrren,
laid he his lords,

die kumenden zuo den êrren.
the coming-ones to the earlier-ones.

des wirtes bruoder Berhtram 238,15
the host's brother Berhtram

dô kom als ez wol fürsten zam,
then came as it well princes befitted,

und sîn ander bruoder Gybert.
and his other brother Gybert.

die fuorten manegen rîter wert:
they led many-a knight worthy:

ir her kom mit sunderslâ.
their host came with separate-track.

238,20 ouch kom die dritte strâze aldâ
also came the third road there

an der selben stunde
at the same hour

Arnalt von Gerunde.
Arnalt of Gerunde.

si wârn die vart alsô gelegen:
they were the journey so laid:

ir neheiner mohte des gephlegen,
of-them none could of-that take-care,

238,25 ern wære dem anderem gar benomn.
unless-he were to-the other wholly taken.

daz erm ze helfe möhte komn,
that he-to-him as help might come,

von hûse und sunderem lande
from house and separate land

ieslîcher âne schande
each without disgrace

in sîns bruoder helfe was geriten:
into his brother's help was ridden:

si liezen des ir triwe biten.
they let of-that their faithfulness bid.

239,1 Gyburc nam ir aller war,
Gyburc took of-them all heed,

daz driu grôziu her mit sunderschar
that three great hosts with separate-company

dar kômn vil nâch gelîche,
thither came very nearly alike,

die alle rîterlîche
whom all knightly

der marcrâve ir nande, 239,5
the margrave to-her named,

daz diu frouwe wol bekande
that the lady well knew

ieslîchem her sîn houbetman;
to-each host its captain;

dâ von si vreuden vil gewan.
there from she of-joys much gained.

ez hete daz fiwer gemachet:
it had the fire made:

gestrichen unt gewachet 239,10
roamed and watched

der vater, diu kint, ieslîches her,
the father, the children, each host,

die naht heten durh die wer,
the night had for the defense,

ob es dem marcrâven wære nôt.
if it to-the margrave were need.

ir manheit in daz gebôt:
their manhood them that commanded:

si wârn wol sô genendec, 239,15
they were well so bold,

ieslîcher vaste unwendec
each firmly unturning

gâhte gein dem fiure,
hastened toward the fire,

durh manheit âventiure
for manhood adventure

ieslîcher sandern vorhte,
each of-the-other feared,

239,20 do der heiden sturm sô worhte
when the heathens' storm so wrought

Gyburge nôt mit rôste,
Gyburc's distress with grill,

wer dem unt dem ze trôste
who to-this-one and to-that-one for comfort

kœm mit poynders huorte.
should-come with charge's onset.

ieslîcher drumbe fuorte
each for-it led

239,25 gewâpent ors und harnasch gar.
armored horse and armor wholly.

si gâhten gein ein ander dar.
they hastened toward one another thither.

wær ein buhurt dâ erhabn
were a buhurt there raised

an ungeverte odr an grabn,
on pathless-ground or on ditches,

ieslîcher kom mit sölher kraft
each came with such strength

daz er al der heiden rîterschaft
that he all the heathens' knighthood

240,1 hete an der enge wol gestriten.
would-have in the narrowness well fought.

nu wart ûf Alyschanz gebiten
now was on Alyschanz awaited

Vivîanzes râche zîte:
Vivianz's vengeance's time:

dâ funden si die wîte.
there found they the width.

Heimrich the Schetis

LVII

Heimrich the Schetis, called the poor one because he holds no land and lives on what he wins from enemies, arrives with King Schilbert of Tandarnas from a war they fought for the Venetians against the patriarch of Agley. Pursuing the heathens, he took many of their pack-horses. His father weeps for joy at his prowess. Gyburc asks whose battered troop it is, and the margrave guesses it is his brother. Gyburc, still in armor, embraces her husband at the window.

Rîchlîche herbergten dise 240,5
Richly lodged these

ûzerhalbs gesezzes an die wise,
outside-the siege on the meadow,

aldâ die heiden wârn gelegn.
where the heathens were lain.

dâ was gemaches gar verphlegn.
there was of-comfort wholly neglected.

von rouche und von smacke
from smoke and from smell

ein naslôser bracke 240,10
a noseless hound

wær wol ze verte komen dâ:
would-have well to scent come there:

sô breit was Terramêres slâ.
so broad was Terramer's track.

nu sah man komen eine diet
now saw one come a people

diu sich von ellen nie geschiet,
which itself from valor never parted,

mit zerstochen schilden und zerhurt. 240,15
with pierced shields and charged-through.

ûz der rehten manheit geburt
out-of the right manhood's birth

was der dise hête brâht.
was he-who these had brought.

er was gestrichen ouch die naht,
he was roamed also the night,

und was den heiden nâch geriten.
and was the heathens after ridden.

240,20 den het er alsô mite gestriten,
them had he so with fought,

ir beleip dâ manger vor im tôt,
of-them remained there many-a-one before him dead,

ouch muoser von in komn mit nôt.
also must-he from them come with distress.

si muosen zinsen im ir habe:
they must pay him their goods:

mangen soum brach er in abe,
many-a pack-horse broke he from-them off,

240,25 ors unt anders swaz dâ was.
horses and other whatever there was.

der künec Schilbert von Tandarnas
the king Schilbert of Tandarnas

durh den jungen dar was komn.
for the young-one thither was come.

si heten bêde solt genomn,
they had both pay taken,

die zwêne kumberhafte man,
the two afflicted men,

von den Vênezjân
from the Venetians

241,1 zeim urliuge ûf den patrîarc
for-a war on the patriarch

von Agley, der sich niht barc,
of Agley, who himself not hid,

ern gæb in strîtes übergelt
unless-he gave them of-battle surplus

und engte in wazzer unde velt
and narrowed to-them water and field

ûf lande unde in barken. 241,5
on land and in barques.

dâ muosen sande Marken
there must saint Mark

Vênezjân mit solde wern
Venetians with pay defend

und durch den kumber vil verzern.
and for the affliction much consume.

von dan was er gestrichen her
from thence was he swept hither

durh sîner werdekeite ger. 241,10
for his worthiness's desire.

er hete der heiden überkêr
he had of-the heathens' onslaught

alsô vernomn, daz Terremêr
so heard, that Terremer

fuort swaz unz an Kaukasas
led whatever until to Caucasus

der werden und der besten was:
of-the worthy and of-the best was:

gein dem streich er durh sînen prîs. 241,15
toward him swept he for his prize.

ez was Heimrîch der schêtîs.
it was Heimrich the Schetis.

sîn manheit moht erbarmen
his manhood could move-to-pity

daz man in hiez den armen:
that one him called the poor-one:

ouch müete daz sîn edelkeit.
also troubled that his nobility.

241,20 erne hete der erden niht sô breit
he had of-the earth not so broad

als ein gezelt möht umbehaben:
as a tent might enclose:

niht anderr urbor moht er haben,
no other revenue could he have,

wan als der unverzagte
except as-much-as the undaunted-one

an den vînden bejagte.
on the enemies won.

241,25 sîn zeswiu hant wuohs umben schaft:
his right hand grew around-the shaft:

er het zer tjoste guote kraft:
he had at-the joust good strength:

sîn lîp entwarf sich undern schilt,
his body shaped itself under-the shield,

swaz mâlær nu lebendic sint,
whatever painters now living are,

ir ougen, pensel unde ir hant
their eyes, brush and their hand

ist sölch geschickede unbekant.
is such shapeliness unknown.

242,1 Sus kom der werde jungelinc
Thus came the worthy youth

geriten an sînes vater rinc
ridden to his father's ring

mit verhurten wâpenkleiden.
with charged-through arms-clothes.

doch heten si den heiden
yet had they from-the heathens

242,5 ab gebrochen rîchen solt.
off broken rich pay.

des wârn in die getouften holt.
for-that were to-them the baptized devoted.

sich vreute der alde Heimrîch
himself gladdened the old Heimrich

daz im sô rehte manlîch
that to-him so right manly

was komen der puover schêtîs,
was come the poor Schetis,

des kurziu jâr sô manegen prîs 242,10
whose short years so many-a prize

het mit rîterschaft bezalt.
had with knighthood paid.

vor liebe wazzer wart gevalt
for love water was felled

ûzen ougen an diu wangen.
out-of-the eyes onto the cheeks.

er wart mit vreud enphangen
he was with joy received

von dem vater und von den bruodern sîn. 242,15
by the father and by the brothers his.

dort oben sprach de künegîn
there above spoke the queen

‘wes ist diu sunderstorje grôz?
‘whose is the separate-troop great?

ir schiltriemen sind nacket blôz
their shield-straps are naked bare

und unverdecket von den breten:
and uncovered by the boards:

si sint ze strîte etswâ gebeten.’ 242,20
they are to battle somewhere bidden.’

der wirt sprach ‘ichn bekenn ir niht.
the host spoke ‘I know them not.

mîn ouge nindr an in gesiht
my eye nowhere on them sees

dâ von si möhten sîn bekant.
there from they might be known.

al ir banier, schilt und gewant
all their banners, shields and garment

242,25 ist verhurtet und zerzart:
is charged-through and torn:

si sint vor strîte niht bewart.
they are from battle not guarded.

einen bruoder ich noch hân
a brother I still have

bî den Vênezjân:
by the Venetians:

hât er den kumber mîn vernomn,
(if)-has he the affliction mine heard,

der istz und ist durh manheit komn.'
he is-it and is for manhood come.'

243,1 Sschêtîss volc ir soum entluot:
the-Schetis's people their pack-horses unloaded:

ir manheit in daz selbe guot
their manhood to-them that same goods

behabete gein der überkraft.
held against the superior-strength.

gelîch was ir geselleschefft,
alike was their fellowship,

243,5 und des küneges der durch in dâ was,
and of-the king who for him there was,

den man dâ hiez von Tandarnas.
whom one there called of Tandarnas.

dem bat er bieten êre:
to-him bade he offer honor:

erne gerte nihtes mêre;
he desired nothing more;

wan swer daz tet, des was er geil.
for whoever that did, of-that was he glad.

[des werden] Gahmuretes erbeteil 243,10
[of-the worthy] Gahmuret's inheritance

was die jungen bêd an komn.
was the young-ones both on come.

von ir väteren heten si genomn
from their fathers had they taken

niht wan schilt unde sper,
nothing but shield and spear,

unt stuont nâch rîterscheft ir ger.
and stood after knighthood their desire.

si heten harnasch, und anders niht: 243,15
they had armor, and other nothing:

ir gezelte man dâ wênic siht.
their tents one there little sees.

diu künegîn in dem venster lac,
the queen in the window lay,

diu der geselleschefte phlac:
who of-the fellowship took-care:

des marcgrâven umbevanc
the margrave's embrace

an sîne brust si dicke twanc. 243,20
to his breast she often pressed.

des was si guote wîle entwent,
of-that was she good while unaccustomed,

und hete sich anders vil gesent.
and had herself otherwise much yearned.

mir wære ein zageheit geschehen,
to-me would-have a cowardice happened,

ob ich ein wîp het ersehen
if I a woman had seen

sô küenlîch gestanden. 243,25
so boldly stood.

mir wirt halt sus enblanden,
to-me becomes even thus burdensome,

so ich ungewâpent wîp grîf an,
when I unarmed woman grasp on,

ob ich mit êren scheide dan.
if I with honor part thence.

Gyburc was noch harnaschvar:
Gyburc was still armor-colored:

er nams durch liebe kleine war.
he took-it for love little heed.

The Princes Invited to Glorjet

LVIII

Willalm bids the queen have the palace laid with feather beds, quilts, and carpets, rides down to welcome his father, the Schetis, and the king of Tandarnas, and invites the other princes to his palace Glorjet, part of which is still unburned. Each prince rides in with few companions. Gyburc lays aside her armor, bids her ladies dress well, be courtly, and hide their sorrow from the knights, and arrays herself in silk of Alamansura as costly as any Secundille could have given Feirefiz. Heimrich rides in first.

244,1 Den fürsten was daz kunt getân,
To-the princes was that known made,

und andern ir werden man,
and to-other their worthy men,

si solten enbîzen in der stat.
they should eat in the town.

der marcrâve ûzen venstern trat:
the margrave from-the windows stepped:

244,5 er sprach zer künegîn ‘des ist zît,
he spoke to-the queen ‘of-that is time,

ob mirs mîn vater volge gît,
if me-it my father assent gives,

daz ich in bringe zuo dir her.
that I him bring to thee hither.

zen andern fürsten ichs ouch ger:
to-the other princes I-it also desire:

die soltu schône enphâhen.
them shalt-thou fairly receive.

nu heiz des balde gâhen, 244,10
now bid of-that quickly hasten,

daz der palas an allen sîten
that the palace on all sides

mit semften phlûmîten
with soft feather-beds

sî beleit, und teppich vil derfür,
be laid, and carpets many there-before,

ûf diu phlûmît kultern von der kür
on the feather-beds quilts of the choice

daz man ir tiure müeze jehen, 244,15
that one of-them costly may declare,

swer si hie ûf ruoche sehen,
whoever them here up deigns to-see,

von phelln die geben liehten schîn.'
of silks which give bright appearance.'

er reit hin abe zem vater sîn.
he rode away down to-the father his.

den schêtîs er mit vröude enphienc;
the Schetis he with joy received;

der sich anders niht begienc, 244,20
who himself otherwise not supported,

schilt unt sper gap im genuoc.
shield and spear gave to-him enough.

ich nenn iu sînen besten phluoc:
I name to-you his best plow:

ze reht er phlac der wâfen.
by right he practiced the weapons.

er verlôs niht an den schâfen,
he lost not in the sheep,

daz der wolf erbeiz od daz entran:
what the wolf bit or what escaped:

swâ stat oder burc verbran,
wherever town or castle burned,

dâ verlôs er ninder schoup:
there lost he nowhere sheaf:

an al der sæte und ame loup
on all the sowing and on-the leaves

dâ tet im kleinen schaden der schûr.
there did to-him small harm the storm.

diu habe wart sînen liden sûr.
the goods became to-his limbs sour.

Der marcgrâf sînen vater bat
The margrave his father bade

mit im enbîzen in der stat,
with him eat in the town,

unt die zwêne geste sîn,
and the two guests his,

daz si gesæhn die künegîn
that they should-see the queen

dort inne ûf sînem palas.
there within on his palace.

daz lobt der künec von Tandarnas,
that promised the king of Tandarnas,

den der schêtîs sîn bruoder brâhte.
whom the Schetis his brother brought.

den enphienc er in der ahte
him received he in the esteem

als ob im dienden elliu lant.
as if to-him should-serve all lands.

swaz er der kumberhaften vant,
whatever he of-the afflicted found,

die gruozte er unde enphienc si sô
them greeted he and received them so

daz sin ze sehen wâren vrô.
that they-him to see were glad.

Heimrîch und iegeslîch sîn sun
Heimrich and each his son

under einem preymerûn
under a broad-tent

dâ vor im sâzen al zehant. 245,15
there before him sat all at-once.

dô si der marcgrâve vant,
when them the margrave found,

er enphiencs und bat si dâ nâch sehen
he received-them and bade them there after see

die künegîn: der wære geschehen
the queen: to-her were happened

von ir kümfte vreude grôz.
from their coming joy great.

ir neheinen des verdrôz, 245,20
of-them none of-that irked,

sine sæhen si durh werdekeit.
unless-they saw her for worthiness.

zen anderen fürsten er dô reit,
to-the other princes he then rode,

die der rœmisch künec dar sande.
whom the Roman king thither sent.

ieslîchn er sunder nande,
each-one he separately named,

daz si mit im wærn gebeten 245,25
that they with him were bidden

ûf sînen palas Glorjeten.
onto his palace Glorjet.

im wære ein teil noch unverbrant,
to-him were a part still unburned,

swie wære verwüestet al daz lant:
however were laid-waste all the land:

des solten si mit im dâ lebn,
of-that should they with him there live,

und er woltz in willeclîchen gebn.
and he would-it to-them willingly give.

246,1 Ûz dem her man die werden bat
Out-of the host one the worthy-ones bade

fürbaz ze rîten in die stat.
further to ride into the town.

der fürste et selbe vierde reit:
the prince just himself fourth rode:

niht mêre was ir gesellekeit,
not more was their companionship,

246,5 der hœhsten die si brâhten.
of-the highest whom they brought.

die grâvenz alsô ahten,
the counts-it so regarded,

und der bârûn in der grâven zil:
and the baron in the counts' goal:

des dûhte iegeslîchen vil,
of-that seemed to-each much,

reit ein geselle mit im în.
rode a companion with him in.

246,10 si bâten d'andern rîter sîn
they bade the-other knights be

ûf dem velde an ir gemach.
on the field at their comfort.

durh ir zuht daz geschach.
for their courtesy that happened.

Franzeyser sint niht gîtec,
Frenchmen are not greedy,

und doch nâch prîse strîtec.
and yet after prize contending.

hete sis der wirt erlâzen, 246,15
had them-of-it the host released,

si wærn wol in den mâzen
they would-be well in the measure

daz si heten sîner spîse enborn.
that they should-have of-his food forgone.

si dûht, dâ wær sô vil verlorn
them seemed, there were so much lost

daz si dâ wênic fünden:
that they there little should-find:

wes si sich solten sünden 246,20
of-what they themselves should sin

dort inne an der vertwâlten diet.
there within on the neglected people.

ûzem her ieslîcher alsô schiet,
out-of-the host each so parted,

daz niht ze grôz was sîn gezoc.
that not too great was his train.

Gyburc moht ir wâpenroc
Gyburc might her tabard

nu mit êren von ir legn: 246,25
now with honor from her lay:

si unde ir juncfrouwen megn
she and her young-ladies may

dez harnaschrâm tuon von dem vel.
the armor-soot do from the skin.

si sprach ‘gelüke ist sinewel.
she spoke ‘fortune is round.

mir was nu lange trûren bî:
to-me was now long mourning by:

dâ von bin ich ein teil nu vrî.
there from am I a part now free.

247,1 Al mîne juncvrouwen ich man,
All my young-ladies I remind,

leget iwer besten kleider an:
put your best clothes on:

ir sult iuch feitieren,
you shall yourselves adorn,

vel und hâr sô zieren,
skin and hair so adorn,

247,5 daz ir minneclîchen sît getân,
that you lovely are made,

ob ein minne gerender man
if a love desiring man

iu dienst nâch minne biete,
to-you service after love offer,

daz er sihs niht gâhs geniete,
that he himself-of-it not hastily sate,

und daz im tuo daz scheiden wê
and that to-him do the parting woe

247,10 von iu. daz sult ir schaffen ê:
from you. that shall you arrange first:

und vlîzt iuch einer höveschеit,
and apply yourselves to-a courtliness,

gebâret als iu nie kein leit
behave as to-you never any sorrow

von vînden geschæhe.
from enemies should-happen.

sît niht ze wortspæhe,
be not too word-clever,

247,15 ob si iuch kumbers vrâgen:
if they you of-affliction ask:

sprechet ‘welt irz wâgen,
speak ‘will you-it venture,

sone kêrt iuch niht an unser sage.
so turn yourselves not to our tale.

wir sîn erwahsen ûzer klage:
we are grown out-of lament:

wan iwer künfteclîcher trôst
for your future comfort

hât uns vîntlîcher nôt erlôst. 247,20
has us of-hostile distress released.

welt ir uns iwerr helfe wern,
(if)-will you us of-your help grant,

sô muge wir trûrens wol enbern.'
so may we of-mourning well forgo.'

nu gebâret geselleclîche.
now behave sociably.

nie fürste wart sô rîche,
never prince became so rich,

ern hœr wol einer meide wort. 247,25
unless-he hear well a maiden's word.

ir sitzet hie oder dort,
you sit here or there,

parriert der rîter iuch benebn,
(if)-pairs the knight you beside,

dem sult ir die gebærde gebn
to-him shall you the bearing give

daz iwer kiusche im sî bekant.
that your chastity to-him be known.

bî vriundîn vriunt ie ellen vant:
by lady-friend friend ever valor found:

diu wîplîche güete 248,1
the womanly goodness

gît dem man hôhgemüete.
gives to-the man high-spirit.

Ich wil mich selbe ouch machen clâr.
I will me self also make bright.

truog ich verworrenlîchez hâr
bore I tangled hair

248,5 unt verdrucket vel von ringen,
and pressed skin from rings,

die sulen mich niht mêre twingen:
they shall me not more constrain:

ich wil mich scheiden von dem râm
I will me part from the soot

den ich von harnasche nam.'
which I from armor took.'

vil schiere daz geschehen was,
very soon that happened was,

248,10 daz die vrouwen unt der palas
that the ladies and the palace

wünneclîch wârn an ze sehen.
delightful were on to see.

man muose den vrouwen allen jehen
one must to-the ladies all declare

daz si truogen guot gewant.
that they bore good garment.

in dem palas man alumbe vant
in the palace one all-around found

248,15 vil teppch und drûf diu pflûmît,
many carpets and thereon the feather-beds,

kulteren drüber. nu was zît
quilts there-over. now was time

daz die fürsten riten în.
that the princes rode in.

Heimrîs und der gesellen sîn
Heimris and the companions his

heten die andern gar gebiten:
had the others wholly awaited:

248,20 der kom ze vorderst în geriten.
he came at-the foremost in ridden.

ir aller kleider wâren guot,
of-them all clothes were good,

die ze sehen heten muot
who to see had spirit

de künegîn, des wirtes wîp.
the queen, the host's woman.

ouch funden si ir süezen lîp
also found they her sweet body

gein in clærlîch aldâ. 248,25
toward them brightly there.

von pfell von Alamansurâ
of silk of Alamansura

si beidiu roc und mandel truoc,
she both gown and mantle bore,

spæhe und tiure alsô genuoc,
skillful and costly so enough,

het in Secundille Feirefîz
had it Secundille Feirefiz

gegebn, niht kosteclîcher vlîz
given, no more-costly diligence

möht an den bilden sîn gelegn. 249,1
might on the figures be laid.

der mantl muos offener snüere pflegn.
the mantle must open cords practice.

Heimrich's Greeting

LIX

Gyburc, in jeweled girdle and mantle, receives her gray father-in-law. Heimrich has King Schilbert kiss her but takes no kiss himself before the princes, praising her as bolder than Olivier or Roland. He presents each prince by name and land, sits beside her, and both weep. He thanks her for the steadfastness that saved Orange, pledges his kin's service, and begs her to stop weeping. She laments the loss she brought on heathens and Christians, above all the young Vivianz.

Si truoc geschickede unt gelâz,
She bore shapeliness and bearing,

ich wæn deis iemen kunde baz
I think that-it anyone could better

249,5 erdenken ân die gotes kunst.
devise without the God's art.

si bejagt et al der herzen gunst,
she won just all the hearts' favor,

des lîbes ougen an si sach.
of-whose body eyes on her looked.

ir gürtl man hôher koste jach,
her girdle one of-high cost declared,

edel steine drûf verwieret,
noble stones thereon set,

249,10 daz er noch bêdiu zieret
that it still both adorns

ir hüffel unde ir sîten.
her hips and her sides.

ze etlîchen zîten
at some times

des mantels si ein teil ûf swanc:
of-the mantle she a part up swung:

swes ouge denne drunder dranc,
whose eye then thereunder pressed,

der sah den blic von pardîs. 249,15
he saw the gleam of paradise.

nu kom ir sweher (der was grîs)
now came her father-in-law (he was gray)

unt erbeizte vor dem palas,
and dismounted before the palace,

mit im der künec von Tandarnas
with him the king of Tandarnas

unt sîn jungster sun Heimrîch.
and his youngest son Heimrich.

die zwên dem lône wârn gelîch, 249,20
the two to-the reward were alike,

den minne etswenn nâch dienste hât.
which love sometimes after service has.

den jungen künec doch niht erlât
the young king yet not releases

Heimrîch von Narbôn,
Heimrich of Narbonne,

sîner darkünfte gab er lôn
for-his thither-coming gave he reward

dâ mit und hiez in vor im gên. 249,25
there with and bade him before him go.

nu sâhn si Gyburge stên
now saw they Gyburc stand

gein den vensteren an der wende:
toward the windows at the wall:

Heimrîch an sîner hende
Heimrich at his hand

fuorte den künec Schilbert
led the king Schilbert

gein der küneginne wert,
toward the queen worthy,

und bat in küssen. daz geschach. 250,1
and bade him kiss. that happened.

ir gruoz si gein ir sweher sprach,
her greeting she toward her father-in-law spoke,

und wolt ouch den geküsset hân.
and would also him kissed have.

dô sprach der wol gezogene man
then spoke the well bred man

250,5 ‘vrowe, des sul wir noch niht tuon,
‘lady, of-that shall we still not do,

ich noch dehein mîn suon,
I nor any my son,

ê die fürsten, die iu vremder sint
before the princes, who to-you stranger are

danne ich und mîniu kint,
than I and my children,

den kus von iu enphâhen.
the kiss from you receive.

250,10 wir ensulen uns niht vergâhen:
we shall ourselves not rush:

swaz ir uns danne ze êren tuot,
whatever you to-us then for honor do,

dâ gein haben wir dienstes muot.
there against have we of-service spirit.

uns ist vil êrn von iu geschehen.
to-us is much of-honors from you happened.

wir sulen iu immer triwen jehen:
we shall to-you ever faithfulness declare:

250,15 wan wir habn an disen stunden
for we have at these hours

unverzagetlîch iuch funden,
undauntedly you found,

daz man Olyvier noch Ruolant
that one Olivier nor Roland

nie genendeclîcher vant,
never more-boldly found,

unt ist ouch daz mit kiuschen siten.'
and is also that with chaste manners.'

nâch der rede begunde er biten 250,20
after the speech began he to-bid

die fürsten, unde nande sie,
the princes, and named them,

beide dise unde die,
both these and those,

bêde ir namen unt ir lant.
both their names and their land.

er fuorte ieslîchen mit der hant
he led each-one with the hand

gein sînre gedienten tohter. 250,25
toward his deserving daughter.

niht baz mit zühten mohter
not better with courtesy might-he

den antpfanc gefüegen.
the reception arrange.

des moht ouch si genüegen,
of-that might also them suffice,

die fürsten und die werden gar.
the princes and the worthy-ones wholly.

nu wart diu frouwenlîche schar
now was the ladylike company

mit rîteren undersezzen. 251,1
with knights interspersed.

dane wart nu niht vergezzen,
there was now not forgotten,

nu Heimrîch und sîniu kint
now Heimrich and his children

von der künegîn enphangen sint,
by the queen received are,

ir sweher zuo zir saz dernidr. 251,5
her father-in-law to her sat down.

sich huop ein niwer jâmer sidr,
itself lifted a new misery since,

dâ von ir ougen gâben saf.
there from her eyes gave sap.

daz süeze minneclîch geschaf,
the sweet lovely creation,

ir antlütze, begozzen wart,
her countenance, watered was,

251,10 Heimrîches blanker bart
Heimrich's white beard

mit zäheren ouch berêret.
with tears also sprinkled.

der sprach 'uns hât gelêret
he spoke 'us has taught

iwer triwe und iwer wîpheit,
your faithfulness and your womanhood,

vrowe, daz unser herzenleit
lady, that our heart's-sorrow

251,15 mit freuden wirt erwendet.
with joy becomes turned-away.

ir möht uns hân geschendet,
you might us have disgraced,

wært ir niht stæte an uns belibn,
were you not steadfast to us remained,

wir wærn ûz werdekeit vertribn:
we would-be out-of worthiness driven:

und het ir mînen sun verkorn,
and had you my son forsaken,

251,20 dâ mite wær diz lant verlorn,
there with would-be this land lost,

und Oransch diu veste,
and Orange the firm,

aller bürge beste,
of-all castles best,

diu von sturme manege nôt
which from storm many-a distress

enphienc; wan daz iu gebôt
received; except that to-you commanded

iwer triwe iu noch gebiutet 251,25
your faithfulness to-you still commands

daz iwer prîs bediutet.
what your prize signifies.

swes sich vriunt ze vriunden sol versehen,
whatever itself friend to friends shall expect,

des mac mîn sun der markîs jehen,
of-that may my son the marquis declare,

unt sîne mâge über al.
and his kinsmen over all.

ir habt den tôtlîchen val
you have the deadly fall

unseres künnes wol vergolten. 252,1
of-our kin well repaid.

op wir nu niht gerne wolten
if we now not gladly would

dienn umb iwer hulde,
serve for your goodwill,

diu unverkorne schulde
the unforgiven guilt

solt immer unser sîn vor gote. 252,5
should ever ours be before God.

wir sulen mit triwen iwerm gebote
we shall with faithfulness at-your command

immer blîben, hab wir sinne.
ever remain, (if)-have we senses.

ob mîn sun durh iwer minne
if my son for your love

ie sper ze vînde brâhte,
ever spear to enemy brought,

252,10 iwer triwe des gedâhte,
your faithfulness of-that thought,

dô Terramêr durh Tybalt
when Terramer for Tybalt

ze Oransche kom mit dem gewalt
to Orange came with the might

und iuch des hers vluot besaz,
and you the host's flood besieged,

daz iwer güet dô niht vergaz,
that your goodness then not forgot,

252,15 ir habt der minne ir reht getân,
you have to-the love its right done,

daz immer ellenthafte man
that ever valorous men

iwers lônes suln gedenken
of-your reward shall think

und niht ir dienstes wenken,
and not from-their service swerve,

op si werder wîbe minne gern.
if they of-worthy women love desire.

252,20 vrouwe, ir sult mich des gewern,
lady, you shall me of-that grant,

daz ir durh den dienest mîn
that you for the service mine

und durh ander fürsten die hie sîn
and for other princes who here are

gar iwer weinen lâzet
wholly your weeping leave

und herzen sorge mâzet.'
and heart's care measure.'

252,25 ir hant in sîner hende lac.
her hand in his hand lay.

diu künegîn kûme des gepflac,
the queen barely of-that took-care,

ir weinenlîchez hischen
her weeping sobbing

sich mit rede begunde mischen.
itself with speech began to-mingle.

Zir liebstem vater si dô sprach,
To-her dearest father she then spoke,

si sagt erkantez ungemach
she told known discomfort

und daz wît gemezzen leit, 253,1
and the widely measured sorrow,

beidiu sô lanc und ouch sô breit,
both so long and also so broad,

deis al diu heidenschaft enphant,
that-it all the heathendom felt,

und daz alliu toufbæriu lant
and that all baptism-worthy lands

des schaden nâmen pflihte. 253,5
of-the harm took share.

si sprach ‘der mich von nihte
she spoke ‘he-who me from nothing

ze dirre werlde brâhte,
to this world brought,

alze fruo er mîn gedâhte.
all-too early he of-me thought.

ich schûr sîner hantgetât,
I storm of-his handiwork,

der bêde machet unde hât 253,10
who both makes and has

den kristen und den heiden!
the Christian and the heathen!

ich was flust in beiden.
I was loss in both.

an mir wuohs leide in unt uns.
in me grew sorrow to-them and to-us.

sus hân ich, herre, iwers suns
thus have I, lord, for-your son

253,15 enkolten und der wirde sîn,
paid and for-the dignity his,

daz iwer mâge und die mîn
that your kinsmen and the mine

zem tôde ir werdeclîchez lebn
to-the death their worthy life

hânt ze bêder sît gegebn.
have on both sides given.

hôh fürste in [die] werdekeit gedign,
high prince into [the] worthiness grown,

253,20 wie solt ich jâmer hân verswign,
how should I misery have kept-silent,

swenne ich den sæh, des manlîch fruht
whenever I him should-see, whose manly fruit

mit alsô ellenthafter zuht
with so valorous courtesy

gein vreuden was entsprungen?
toward joys was sprung?

ich klage den schœnen jungen
I lament the fair young-one

253,25 Vivîanz ze vorderst muoz
Vivianz at-the foremost must

mînen siuftebæren gruoz
my sigh-laden greeting

immer für daz lachen hân.
ever for the laughing have.

waz hât der bitter tôt getân
what has the bitter death done

an dem clâren süezen kiuschen vrebel!
to the bright sweet chaste bold-one!

al anderr manne antlütze ein nebel
all other men's countenance a mist

was, swâ sîn blic erschein. 254,1
was, wherever his gleam appeared.

den prîs truog er vor ûz al ein:
the prize bore he before out all alone:

sîn glanz was wol der ander tac.
his radiance was well the second day.

swâ sîn lîp ûf Alischanz belac,
wherever his body on Alischanz lay,

dâ möhten jungiu sünnelîn 254,5
there might young little-suns

wahsen ûz sîm liehten schîn.
grow out-of his bright shine.

Gyburc's Dead Kinsmen

LX

Gyburc laments Mile and her dead kinsmen and names the heathen kings who fell at Alischanz, among them Thesereiz, Pinel, and Arofel, twenty-three kings in all. She tells how her son Ehmereiz offered to pay the land's damage tenfold if she would cross back to the gods, and how she answered that no wealth could part her from the margrave.

Ich enwil nu nimmer sô betagn,
I will now never so live-to-a-day,

ich enwelle den edelen Mîlen klagn,
unless-I wish the noble Mile lament,

und ander die wir hân verlorn.
and others whom we have lost.

ich wart zem jâmers zil erborn. 254,10
I was to-the misery's goal born.

nu ding ich, herre, an iwer zuht,
now appeal I, lord, to your courtesy,

sît freude ûz mîme herzen fluht
since joy out-of my heart flight

hât, daz irz niht wîzet mir.
has, that you-it not blame me.

lât mich geniezen des daz ir
let me profit of-that that you

254,15 sît manlîcher triwe ein stam.
are of-manly faithfulness a stem.

nu hœrt waz mir der tôt benam
now hear what from-me the death took

ûf Alischanz der mâge mîn.
on Alischanz of-the kinsmen mine.

die sol von reht ich klagende sîn,
them shall by right I lamenting be,

swie si heten des toufes niht:
however they had of-the baptism not:

254,20 diu sippe flust mir an in giht.
the kinship loss to-me in them declares.

die sîne von im rîten bater:
the his-ones from him ride bade-he:

under disem venster mir mîn vater
under this window to-me my father

sagete, aldâ er weinde hielt
told, where he weeping halted

und der jâmer vreude von im spielt,
and the misery joy from him split,

254,25 waz hôher mâge uns nam der tôt,
what of-high kinsmen from-us took the death,

den diu minne her gebôt
whom the love hither commanded

noch mêre dan durch sîne bete.
still more than for his request.

an rois Thesereiz von Latrisete
with king Thesereiz of Latrisete

der hôhen tôt huop er mir an,
of-the high-ones' death began he to-me on,

wer mêr ûf Alischanz gewan
who more on Alischanz gained

sîn ende vonn getouften
his end from-the baptized

die ir lebn gein in verkouften,
who their life against them sold,

mîne mâge die der tôt nam zim.
my kinsmen whom the death took to-him.

der künec Pînel von Ahsim,
the king Pinel of Ahsim,

und der süeze künic Tenabruns,
and the sweet king Tenabruns,

erborn von Liwes Nugruns.
born of Liwes Nugruns.

und Arofel von Persîâ,
and Arofel of Persia,

und Fausabrê von Alamansurâ,
and Fausabre of Alamansura,

mîn veter und mîner basen sun.
my uncle and my aunt's son.

unt der künic Turpîûn:
and the king Turpiun:

des lant hiez Falturmîê
whose land was-called Falturmie

und der künec Kalafrê.
and the king Kalafre.

der truoc krôn ze Kânach:
he bore crown at Kanach:

der minnen flust an im geschach.
the love's loss in him happened.

255,15 und der künic Neupatrîs.
and the king Neupatris.

ob der minne ie mennischlîchez rîs
if of-the love ever human twig

geblüet, daz was sîn liehter schîn.
blossomed, that was his bright shine.

von Oraste Gentesîn
of Oraste Gentesin

het in diu minne her gesant:
had him the love hither sent:

255,20 gezimiert man in tôten vant.
adorned one him dead found.

von Boctân rois Thalimôn
of Boctan king Thalimon

sol den weinenlîchen dôn
shall the weeping tune

künden in der heiden lant.
proclaim in the heathens' land.

von Turkanî rois Arfiklant
of Turkani king Arfiklant

255,25 und rois Lybilûn von Rankulat,
and king Lybilun of Rankulat,

der zweier tôt der freude mat
of-the two death the joy checkmate

tuot in ir beider rîche.
does in their both realm.

nu geloubet sicherlîche,
now believe surely,

drî und zweinzec künege sint dâ vlorn,
three and twenty kings are there lost,

und der ungezalt die wârn erkorn
and of-them uncounted who were chosen

256,1 zeskelîrn an fürsten krefte zil:
as-eskeliers at princes' strength goal:

derst dâ belegen alsô vil,
of-them-is there laid-low so many,

daz ez niemen kunde erahten.
that it no-one could estimate.

sine mugen sich niht betrahten,
they may themselves not reckon,

waz emerâle und amazûr 256,5
what emirs and almansurs

in hât benomen des tôdes schûr.
from-them has taken the death's storm.

Et mîne mâge ich hân benant,
Just my kinsmen I have named,

die mit werdem prîse ungeschant
who with worthy prize undisgraced

unz an ir ende lebten
until to their end lived

und ir zît nâch wirde strebten. 256,10
and their time after dignity strove.

mîns vater einvaltekeit
my father's simplicity

geschuof daz er mit kreften reit
caused that he with strength rode

mit here ûf sîn selbes kint:
with host onto his own child:

swaz unserr mâge durh mich sint
whatever of-our kinsmen for me are

beliben, die het er gar verkorn, 256,15
remained, them would-have he wholly forgiven,

wolt ich den touf hân verlorn
would I the baptism have lost

und sînen goten hulde tuon.
and to-his gods goodwill do.

dô bôt Ehmereiz mîn suon
then offered Ehmereiz my son

den schaden ze gelten disem lant:
the harm to pay to-this land:

256,20 swâ daz gein einem bisant
wherever that against a bezant

mit flüste het enphangen nôt,
with loss had received distress,

ie dâ gein Karles lôt
ever there against Charles's weight

wolt er wegen bereitez gelt.
would he weigh ready payment.

wîngarten, boume, gesætez velt,
vineyards, trees, sown field,

256,25 al die wisen unt die heide,
all the meadows and the heath,

ors und ander vihe diu beide,
horses and other cattle the both,

al den bû unz an den strôwes wisch,
all the tillage until to the straw's wisp,

die vogele, dez wilt und den visch,
the birds, the game and the fish,

wolt ich der überverte phlegn,
would I of-the crossing take-care,

daz het er zehenstunt überwegn.
that would-have he ten-times outweighed.

257,1 Die daz prüeven solten,
Those-who that examine should,

ob die vride haben wolten,
whether they peace have would,

den al diu werlt mit triwen weiz,
whom all the world with faithfulness knows,

der stæte Matribeleiz,
the steadfast Matribeleiz,

der künec von Scandinâvîâ, 257,5
the king of Scandinavia,

der bêde hie unt anderswâ
who both here and elsewhere

sîne triwe hât behalten,
his faithfulness has kept,

der solt der prüefer walten
he should of-the examiners have-power

mit vride und mit geleite,
with peace and with escort,

und des geltes wern bereite. 257,10
and of-the payment grant ready.

dô sprach ich ‘sun, wie stêt dir daz?
then spoke I ‘son, how stands to-thee that?

dir zæme ein ander rede baz.
to-thee would-befit an other speech better.

wilt du mich veile machen
wilt thou me for-sale make

und dînen prîs verswachen,
and thy prize weaken,

daz man mich gelte sam ein rint? 257,15
that one me pay as a cow?

du bist von hôher art mîn kint:
thou art of high nature my child:

daz schadet dînem prîse.
that harms thy prize.

bistu sölher manheit wîse
(if)-art-thou of-such manhood wise

alsô der marcgrâve ie was,
as the margrave ever was,

der alz gebirge Kaukasas 257,20
who all-the mountains Caucasus

dir gæb (daz wære ein rîcher solt:
to-thee should-give (that would-be a rich pay:

wand ez ist allz vil rôtez golt),
for it is all very red gold),

du næmestz ungern für ein wîp
thou wouldst-take-it unwillingly for a woman

diu alsô kürlîchen lîp
who so choice body

257,25 hete als ich noch hiute hân.
had as I still today have.

dîn bieten hât missetân.
thy offering has misdone.

zem marcrâven hân ich muot:
to-the margrave have I spirit:

niemen mac geleisten sölch guot
no-one may perform such goods

daz mich von im gescheide.'
that me from him part.'

daz was ir aller leide.
that was of-them all sorrow.

The Captive Princes

LXI

Gyburc tells how her kinsman Halzebier offered to free eight captives if she would cross back, and names them. The other Christians who came to help all fell and lie in coffins no human hand made. All weep, but rejoice that the count palatine Bertram and seven others live, and Heimrich's house thanks her for refusing. Bernart of Brubant would sooner let his own son be flayed than see Tybalt take her, and the margrave says the heathens must win another pledge in battle.

258,1 Si buten durch mîn überkêr
They offered for my crossing-over

der getriwen werden miete mêr.
of-the faithful worthy-ones payment more.

ze lœsn von ir gebenden
to release from their bonds

und in Francrîch ze senden
and into France to send

mîn neve der künic Halzebier 258,5
my nephew the king Halzebier

bôt ahte fürsten ledic mier,
offered eight princes free to-me,

[die wâren] gevangen under sînem vanen.
[those were] captured under his banner.

mîn übervart möht in ermanen
my crossing might him remind

ergetzens flust und herzen nôt.
of-compensating loss and heart's distress.

im wæren zweinzec tûsent tôt 258,10
to-him were twenty thousand dead

ûz sîn eines rîche aldâ belegn:
out-of his alone realm there laid-low:

Valfundê mües immer phlegn
Valfunde must ever take-care

jâmers nâch sînn eskelîren,
of-misery after its eskeliers,

an den der tôt niht kunde vîren.
on whom the death not could rest.

ich vrâgete wer die möhten wesen, 258,15
I asked who they might be,

daz der getouften wære genesen.
that of-the baptized had survived.

ir namen wurden mir bekant,
their names became to-me known,

und der schade ze gelten disem lant.
and the harm to pay to-this land.

der weinen unde lachen
who weeping and laughing

258,20 geschuof, der mac si machen
created, he may them make

daz man si ledec bekenne.
that one them free acknowledge.

die gevangen ich iu nenne.
the captives I to-you name.

ez ist Gaudiers und Gaudin,
it is Gaudiers and Gaudin,

Hûes und Gybalîn,
Hues and Gybalin,

258,25 Berhtram und Gêrhart,
Berhtram and Gerhart,

Hûnas [von Sanctes] und Witschart.
Hunas [of Saintes] and Witschart.

der tôt si des niht irte:
the death them of-that not hindered:

die ze helfe disem wirte
those-who as help to-this host

kômn ûz iwerm geslähte,
came out-of your lineage,

die belibn gar wan dise ähte,
they remained wholly except these eight,

259,1 dar zuo rîche und arme.
there to rich and poor.

sît mich, hêrre, daz erbarme,
since me, lord, that moves-to-pity,

daz lât in iweren hulden sîn.
that let in your goodwill be.

diz wârn die besten vriunde mîn,
these were the best friends mine,

259,5 die dâ beliben in dem strîte.
who there remained in the battle.

ir kirchhof ist gesegent wîte,
their churchyard is blessed widely,

von den engelen wîhe enphangen.
from the angels consecration received.

sus ist ez dâ ergangen.
thus is it there gone.

ir heilic verch und iriu bein,
their holy life and their bones,

in manegem schœnen sarkestein, 259,10
in many-a fair coffin-stone,

die nie geworhten menschen hant,
which never wrought human hand,

man die getouften alle vant.'
one the baptized all found.'

niemen dâ sô herte saz,
no-one there so hard sat,

ir necheines herze des vergaz,
of-them none's heart of-that forgot,

ez engæbe den ougen stiure 259,15
unless-it gave to-the eyes aid

mit wazzer. dâ was tiure
with water. there was rare

der man der niht enklagete
the man who not lamented

daz diu künegîn dâ sagete.
what the queen there said.

grôz vreude in doch dar an geschach,
great joy to-them yet there in happened,

do sis pfallenzgrâven lebens verjach, 259,20
when she-of-the count-palatine life declared,

und ander siben der mâge sîn.
and other seven of-the kinsmen his.

dô truoc man tischlachen în.
then bore one tablecloths in.

der wirt selbe alrêrst vernam
the host himself first-of-all heard

daz der pfallenzgrâve Berhtram
that the count-palatine Berhtram

259,25 selb ahte was in lebenne.
himself eighth was in life.

er sprach 'got hât ze gebenne
he spoke 'God has to give

vreud und angest swem er wil:
joy and fear to-whom he will:

er mac mir lachebæriu zil
he may to-me laughter-bearing goal

wol stôzen nâch dem weinen,
well thrust after the weeping,

wil mich sîn güete meinen.'
(if)-will me his goodness mean.'

260,1 Heimrîch und al die süne sîn
Heimrich and all the sons his

dancten dô der künegîn
thanked then the queen

daz si ir vater rât übergienc
that she her father's counsel passed-over

und von mâgen noh von sune enpfienc
and from kinsmen nor from son received

260,5 dehein ir sunder urbot:
any of-their separate offer:

und si hete den hœhsten got
and she had the highest God

und ir vil werden minne
and her very worthy love

mit wîplîchem sinne
with womanly mind

an dem marcrâven gêret
in the margrave honored

und ir sælekeit gemêret. 260,10
and her blessedness increased.

dô sprach Bernart von Brubant
then spoke Bernart of Brubant

'mînen sun man bî den vînden vant,
'my son one by the enemies found,

den pfalzgrâven manlîch:
the count-palatine manly:

die andern sibene, ir ieslîch
the other seven, of-them each

von arde mîne mâge sint, 260,15
by nature my kinsmen are,

der ahte ist für wâr mîn kint:
of-the eight is for true my child:

der deheinr ist mir sô trût,
of-them none is to-me so dear,

ich enlieze senewe ûz sîner hût
unless-I let sinew out-of his hide

snîden ê daz uns Tybalt
cut before that from-us Tybalt

Gyburge næme mit gewalt 260,20
Gyburc should-take with might

oder si ab uns erkoufte
or her from us should-buy

und des prîses uns bestroufte.'
and of-the prize us should-strip.'

'ich hœr wol, vrouwe,' sprach der wirt,
'I hear well, lady,' spoke the host,

'iwer blic die heiden niht verbirt,
'your glance the heathens not forgoes,

ir sît in in den ougen noch. 260,25
you are to-them in the eyes still.

si müezen mir des jehen doch,
they must to-me of-that declare yet,

swaz si mîner mâge hânt,
whatever they of-my kinsmen have,

an iu het ich wol für die phant.
in you would-have I well for them pledge.

si sulen abr anderen bürgen nemen,
they shall however other sureties take,

ob si strîtes kan gezemen.'
if them of-battle can befit.'

Heimrich Seats the Princes

LXII

The margrave regrets how few knights came in and blames his father-in-law for his kinsmen's deaths and his burned land. His stewards and cupbearers dead, he asks his father to command the feast as at Narbonne, and Gyburc entrusts all to Heimrich. He seats her and her ladies, sets the king of Tandarnas, the Schetis, Buove, and Bernart along one wall and the French after them, and says the food was kept by the ladies who defended Orange and left by the men fallen at Alischanz.

261,1 Der wirt dô klagete sêre,
The host then lamented sorely,

daz der rîter was niht mêre
that of-the knights was not more

ûzem here komen dar în.
out-of-the host come there in.

er sprach 'ûf dem palas mîn
he spoke 'on the palace mine

261,5 hân i'r etswenne mêr gesehen.
have I-of-them sometime more seen.

ir muget wol mîme sweher jehen
you may well to-my father-in-law ascribe

mîner mâge tôt, des landes brant:
my kinsmen's death, the land's burning:

sölhe heimstiur gît mir sîn hant.
such dowry gives me his hand.

ez ist manec mîn übergenôz geriten
it is many-a my over-peer ridden

ûf mînen schaden: daz wære vermiten, 261,10
onto my harm: that would-be avoided,

soldez Tybalt hân geworben.
should-it Tybalt have striven.

sölh hervart wære verdorben:
such campaign would-be perished:

âne Terramêrs gebot
without Terramer's command

hetes im geholfen kein sîn got.'
would-have-it him helped no his god.'

er sprach 'vater, nu nim war, 261,15
he spoke 'father, now take heed,

wie du die fürsten setzest gar.
how thou the princes seatest wholly.

gebiut hie als ze Narbôn,
command here as at Narbonne,

und tuo ez durch den gotes lôn,
and do it for the God's reward,

heiz dîn ambetliute
bid thy officials

uns hie ûf dienen hiute. 261,20
us here up serve today.

swaz ich truhsæzn und schenken pflac,
whatever I of-stewards and cupbearers had,

marschalke und kamerære belac,
marshals and chamberlains lay-dead,

dâ si den heiden schancten
where they to-the heathens poured

und niht dem vanen entwancten
and not from-the banner swerved

261,25 unz sich ir reinez bluot vergôz.
until itself their pure blood shed.

mîn flust ist âne mâze grôz
my loss is without measure great

an manegem herzen triwen vol.
in many-a heart of-faithfulness full.

ich klage se als ich ze rehte sol:
I lament them as I by right shall:

wan ich hân ir mangel nuo.
for I have of-them lack now.

heiz die dînen grîfen zuo.'
bid the thine grasp to.'

262,1 'Ich bedâhtz wol ê,' sprach Heimrîch.
'I bethought-it well before,' spoke Heimrich.

'die mîne, nu tuont dem gelîch:
'the mine, now do to-that alike:

ir bekennet wol des wirtes nôt:
you know well the host's distress:

gebt uns mit zühten sô sîn brôt
give us with courtesy so his bread

262,5 als ob die sîne solden lebn,
as if the his-ones should live,

diez dicke schône hânt gegebn
who-it often fairly have given

und rîlîche für getragen.
and richly before borne.

ih endarf iu nimêr drumbe sagen:
I need to-you no-more for-it say:

gebiet als wir dâ heime sîn.
command as we there at-home are.

mînes suns habe ist wol mîn: 262,10
my son's goods is well mine:

ich wæn mirs ouch mîn vrouwe gan,
I think me-it also my lady grants,

gein der ich zwîvel nie gewan.'
toward whom I doubt never gained.'

'jâ hêr,' sprach si, 'vil gerne.
'yes lord,' spoke she, 'very gladly.

unde ob al Todjerne
and if all Todjerne

Arâbîe und Arâbî 262,15
Arabie and Arabi

vor den heiden lægen frî
before the heathens should-lie free

und mir ze dienste wærn benant,
and to-me for service should-be named,

da bevilh ich allez iwerr hant.
there entrust I all to-your hand.

daz liez ich durch dise armuot:
that left I for this poverty:

unser habe, iurs sunes guot, 262,20
our goods, your son's goods,

daz wir vil kûme erwerten,
which we very barely defended,

ungerne wirz verzerten
unwillingly we-it would-consume

ân iuch und ân die den irz gebt.
without you and without those to-whom you-it give.

mîn herze in iwerm gebote lebt,
my heart in your command lives,

und mîner bruoder, iwerr kinde: 262,25
and of-my brothers, your children:

iwer aller ingesinde
of-you all household

wil ich nâch flust nu gerne sîn.
will I after loss now gladly be.

mit triwen helfe ist worden schîn;
with faithfulness help is become seen;

des ich mich dicke ze iu versach,
of-which I me often toward you expected,

so der heiden sturm Oransche brach.'
when the heathens' storm Orange broke.'

263,1 'Vrouwe,' sprach der grîse man,
'Lady,' spoke the gray man,

'swar an ich mag oder kan,
'wherever on I may or can,

dâ sît ir diens von mir gewert:
there are you of-service by me granted:

und ob iemen mînes râtes gert,
and if anyone of-my counsel desires,

263,5 al mîne mâge und mîniu kint
all my kinsmen and my children

mit triwen ze iwerm gebote sint.'
with faithfulness at your command are.'

die künegîn er dô sitzen bat,
the queen he then sit bade,

und jach, si solt die selben stat
and declared, she should the same place

habn und diu andern vröwelîn.
have and the other little-ladies.

263,10 'lât mich hiute wirt hie sîn:
'let me today host here be:

ich kum her wider zuo ziu dran.'
I come hither back to to-you thereon.'

mit urloub gieng er dô dan:
with leave went he then thence:

in sîner hende was ein stap.
in his hand was a staff.

daz sitzen er mit zühten gap
the seat he with courtesy gave

dem jungen künec von Tandarnas, 263,15
to-the young king of Tandarnas,

ein sîten ûf dem palas,
a side on the palace,

diu gein der künegîn über stuont.
which toward the queen opposite stood.

er tet dem schêtîse kuont,
he made to-the Schetis known,

er solte dem künege sitzen bî,
he should to-the king sit by,

und Buove von Kumarzî, 263,20
and Buove of Kumarzi,

und Bernart von Brubant.
and Bernart of Brubant.

die viere heten eine want.
the four had one wall.

die fürsten ûz Francrîche
the princes out-of France

er dô sazte rîterlîche,
he then seated knightly,

die der rœmsche künic sante dar. 263,25
whom the Roman king sent thither.

er bat ir schône nemen war:
he bade of-them fairly take heed:

ir muosen werde rîter phlegn.
of-them must worthy knights take-care.

er wunschte daz der gotes segn
he wished that the God's blessing

ir spîse in lieze wol gezemn.
their food to-them should-let well befit.

er bat siz willeclîchen nemn:
he bade them-it willingly take:

264,1 swaz wurde aldâ von in verzert,
whatever should-be there by them consumed,

daz heten vrouwen hende erwert
that had ladies' hands defended

gein starker vîende überlast.
against strong enemies' over-burden.

'vil manic ungetoufter gast
'very many-a unbaptized guest

264,5 hânt ir zorn hie niht gespart:
have their wrath here not spared:

Oransche was doch sô bewart,
Orange was yet so guarded,

daz vrouwen hânt hie prîs bejaget:
that ladies have here prize won:

die vant man werlîch unverzaget.
them found one warlike undaunted.

sît siz uns habent behalten,
since they-it for-us have kept,

264,10 nu sult irs alle walten,
now shall you-it all have-power-over,

ieslîch man reht als er ger;
each man right as he desire;

der fürste, der grâve, dirre unt der,
the prince, the count, this-one and that-one,

barûn unt d'andern rîter gar.
baron and the-other knights wholly.

nu nemet deheines zadels war:
now take of-no want heed:

264,15 Oransche ist wol berâten
Orange is well provided

von den diez vor uns tâten.
by those who-it before us did.

die sint ûf Alischanz belibn:
they are on Alischanz remained:

ir tôt uns hât dar zuo getribn:
their death us has there to driven:

nu zeren daz si uns liezen.
now consume what they to-us left.

ir vart sul wir geniezen: 264,20
their journey shall we profit:

dâ si hin sint gekêret,
where they away are turned,

ir habe ist dort gemêret.'
their goods is there increased.'

The Feast at Glorjet

LXIII

Heimrich seats Arnalt of Gerunde, Bertram, Gybert, and the margrave along one side, then eats beside Gyburc, and both eat little. He asks which heathens besides Tybalt hate her most. She spares only her son Ehmereiz and names the hosts of Thesereiz and Noupatris, ten of her brothers, her sister's son, and Tybalt's kin. When she weeps again, he asks her to hide her grief for the guests' sake and show high spirit, since good comfort emboldens many a coward.

der alde fürste niht ze laz
the old prince not too slack

gienc von den fürsten fürbaz.
went from the princes further.

ander fürsten, sîniu kint, 264,25
other princes, his children,

die dâ noch ungesetzet sint,
who there still unseated are,

er setzen dô begunde,
he to-seat then began,

Arnalden von Gerunde,
Arnalt of Gerunde,

Berhtram und Gybert
Berhtram and Gybert

und den wirt (die viere in dûhten wert)
and the host (the four him seemed worthy)

265,1 des palas an ein sîten.
of-the palace on a side.

wer an den selben zîten
who at the same times

bî der küngîn sæze,
by the queen should-sit,

und wer dâ mit ir æze?
and who there with her should-eat?

265,5 daz tet der alde Heimrîch.
that did the old Heimrich.

da ergienc ein dienest zühte rîch
there went-forth a service of-courtesy rich

von den diez für truogen.
from those who-it before bore.

an nihte si gewuogen
in nothing they mentioned

daz dâ kein zadel möhte sîn.
that there any want might be.

265,10 môraz, clâret unde wîn
mulberry-wine, claret and wine

si heten, unde spîse guot.
they had, and food good.

doch was ir williger muot
yet was their willing spirit

vil bezzer dan diu spîse gar.
very better than the food wholly.

dâ sâzen vrouwen lieht gevar
there sat ladies brightly colored

in minneclîcher ahte: 265,15
in lovely manner:

der selben undertrahte
of-the same intermingling

Heimrîch der alde gerte nieht.
Heimrich the old desired not.

ir necheiniu was dâ sô lieht,
of-them none was there so bright,

der sô wol an im gelunge
to-whom so well on him should-succeed

daz si sînen muot betwunge, 265,20
that she his spirit should-conquer,

wan sîns suns wîp al eine.
except his son's woman all alone.

diu zwei âzen kleine,
the two ate little,

von maneger vrâg diu dâ geschach
from many-a question which there happened

umb der künegîn ungemach,
about the queen's discomfort,

daz er von herzen klagete 265,25
which he from heart lamented

dô siz im undersagete.
when she-it to-him told.

niht anders si sich nerte,
not otherwise she herself nourished,

wan dazs et vreude zerte
except that-she just joy consumed

mêre danne ir selber spîse.
more than her own food.

daz widerriet ir der wîse.
that counseled-against her the wise-one.

Dô man ûf dem palas
When one on the palace

vil gap unt gnuoc gegeben was,
much gave and enough given was,

Heimrîch der alders blanke
Heimrich the of-age white

und niht der muotes kranke
and not the of-spirit weak-one

az minner denne ein ander man.
ate less than an other man.

sît er vrâgen began
since he to-ask began

die künegîn die wîl man az,
the queen the while one ate,

welch heiden dâ den grœsten haz
which heathen there the greatest hatred

âne Tybalden trüeg gein ir,
except Tybalt should-bear toward her,

si sprach ‘die werden alle mir
she spoke ‘the worthy-ones all to-me

erzeigeten zorn, swaz i’r dâ weiz,
showed wrath, whatever I-of-them there know,

niwan mîn sun Ehmereiz.
except my son Ehmereiz.

der hete doch rîter hie genuoc:
he had yet knights here enough:

von sîme rinc man nie getruoc
from his ring one never bore

gein mir bogen schilt noch swert.
against me bow shield nor sword.

dar zuo dûhte er sich ze wert,
there to seemed he himself too worthy,

swaz volkes im ist undertân,
whatever of-people to-him is subject,

solt ich angest gein den hân.
should I fear toward them have.

zwêne künege ûf Alischanz den lîp
two kings on Alischanz the body

verlurn: die santen dar diu wîp. 266,20
lost: them sent thither the women.

her ze Oransch kom ir klagende her:
hither to Orange came their lamenting host:

mîne porten, wîchûs und diu wer
my gates, blockhouse and the rampart

erleit von in decheinen pîn.
suffered from them no pain.

von Oraste Gentesîn
of Oraste Gentesin

brâht ir ein teil Nöupatrîs. 266,25
brought of-them a part Noupatris.

Thesereizes her durch sînen prîs
Thesereiz's host for his prize

jah, ez wære der wîbe gebot,
declared, it were the women's command,

dâ von ir hêrre læge tôt,
there from their lord should-lie dead,

gein mir und al der wîpheit
toward me and all the womanhood

solt ungerochen sîn ir leit:
should unavenged be their sorrow:

swa der marcrâve in bræhte strît, 267,1
wherever the margrave them should-bring battle,

dâ kœme alrêrst ir râche zît.
there should-come first-of-all their vengeance's time.

Nöupatrîses rîterschaft
Noupatris's knighthood

was hie mit grôzer heres kraft:
was here with great host's strength:

267,5 die der minne gerende ûz brâhte,
those the love's desiring-one out brought,

sêr daz den versmâhte,
sorely that him disdained,

der sich gein mir armen vrouwen
who himself toward me poor lady

in sturme lieze beschouwen.
in storm should-let be-seen.

sît diss landes hêrr was überstritn
since of-this land lord was overcome

267,10 und der nâch helfe was geritn,
and he after help was ridden,

si jâhen, gein werden wîben
they said, toward worthy women

solten werde man belîben
should worthy men remain

dazs se immer diens werten
that-they them ever of-service should-grant

und ir lônes wider gerten.
and of-their reward back desired.

267,15 hie was vil hers hêrrenlôs,
here was much host lordless,

von den ich starken haz erkôs:
from whom I strong hatred perceived:

wan Nöupatrîses diet
for Noupatris's people

und Thesereizes her sich schiet
and Thesereiz's host itself parted

ûz den andern, als ich hân gesagt.
out-of the others, as I have said.

ich wæn, si wârn doch unverzagt. 267,20
I think, they were yet undaunted.

hie tâten zehen bruoder mîn
here did ten brothers mine

ir ungenâde gein mir schîn.
their disfavor toward me seen.

von Griffâne und von Frîende
from Griffane and from Friende

manec rîter ellende
many-a knight exiled

was hie durch mîner swester suon: 267,25
was here for my sister's son:

swaz die mohten mir getuon,
whatever they might to-me do,

[Poydjus] und anderr mîner mâge haz
[*Poydjus*] *and other my kinsmen's hatred*

was et gein mir niht ze laz.
was just toward me not too slack.

hie was al Tybaldes art
here was all Tybalt's nature

mit krefteclîcher hervart.
with mighty campaign.

ich hete dâ gerne vriunde mêr: 268,1
I had there gladly friends more:

nu sprechents ûf mich herzesêr.'
now speak-they on me heart-sore.'

Sus saz diu klagende vrouwe
Thus sat the lamenting lady

mit dem herzen touwe,
with the heart's dew,

268,5 daz ûzer brust durch d'ougen vlôz,
which out-of-the breast through the-eyes flowed,

ir liehten blicke ein teil begôz.
her bright glances a part watered.

dô sprach ir gedienter vater
then spoke her deserving father

hin ze ir alsus. mit zühten bater
away to her thus. with courtesy bade-he

daz si ir weinen liez verholen:
that she her weeping let hidden:

268,10 dâ solten kurzwîle dolen
there should pastime suffer

der wirt und sîne geste
the host and his guests

âne jâmers überleste.
without misery's overburden.

si sprach 'swenn ir gebietet,
she spoke 'whenever you command,

mîn munt sich lachens nietet:
my mouth itself of-laughing takes-pleasure:

268,15 wirt aber hie schimf von mir getân,
(if)-becomes however here sport by me done,

sô muoz dochz herze jâmer hân.'
so must yet-the heart misery have.'

er sprach 'nu nemt sô jâmers war,
he spoke 'now take so of-misery heed,

daz iwer site rehte var
that your manner rightly fare

und daz niemen drab erschrecke.
and that no-one there-off be-frightened.

der zage unt der quecke 268,20
the coward and the lively-one

eteswenne bî ein ander sint.
sometimes by one another are.

ich geloube wol daz mîniu kint
I believe well that my children

dem ellen niht entwîchen.
from-the valor not give-way.

dar mag ich niht gelîchen.
there-to may I not liken.

die man mir für genôze zelt, 268,25
those-whom one to-me as peers counts,

etslîch fürste ist niht erwelt
some prince is not chosen

ze der scharpfen rîterlîchen tât.
for the sharp knightly deed.

wir sulen hôhmuotes rât
we shall of-high-spirit counsel

den liuten künden unde sagn.
to-the people proclaim and say.

guot trôst erküenet mangen zagn.'
good comfort emboldens many-a coward.'